

# **IO-Link Safety System Extensions**

## **Specification**

**Version 1.0  
April 2017**

**Order No: 10.092**

**File name: IO-Link\_Safety\_System-Extensions\_10092\_V10\_Apr17.doc**

This specification has been prepared by the IO-Link Safety technology subgroup. It achieved a concept approval by TÜV-SÜD.

Any comments, proposals, requests on this document are appreciated through the IO-Link CR database [www.io-link-projects.com](http://www.io-link-projects.com). Please provide name and email address.

**Login:** *IOL-Safety10*

**Password:** *Report*

**Important notes:**

NOTE 1 The IO-Link Community Rules shall be observed prior to the development and marketing of IO-Link products. The document can be downloaded from the [www.io-link.com](http://www.io-link.com) portal.

NOTE 2 Any IO-Link device shall provide an associated IODD file. Easy access to the file and potential updates shall be possible. It is the responsibility of the IO-Link device manufacturer to test the IODD file with the help of the IODD-Checker tool available per download from [www.io-link.com](http://www.io-link.com).

NOTE 3 Any IO-Link devices shall provide an associated manufacturer declaration on the conformity of the device with this specification, its related IODD, and test documents, available per download from [www.io-link.com](http://www.io-link.com).


**Disclaimer:**

The attention of adopters is directed to the possibility that compliance with or adoption of IO-Link Community specifications may require use of an invention covered by patent rights. The IO-Link Community shall not be responsible for identifying patents for which a license may be required by any IO-Link Community specification, or for conducting legal inquiries into the legal validity or scope of those patents that are brought to its attention. IO-Link Community specifications are prospective and advisory only. Prospective users are responsible for protecting themselves against liability for infringement of patents.

The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice. The material in this document details an IO-Link Community specification in accordance with the license and notices set forth on this page. This document does not represent a commitment to implement any portion of this specification in any company's products.

WHILE THE INFORMATION IN THIS PUBLICATION IS BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE, THE IO-LINK COMMUNITY MAKES NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH REGARD TO THIS MATERIAL INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY WARRANTY OF TITLE OR OWNERSHIP, IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR USE.

In no event shall the IO-Link Community be liable for errors contained herein or for indirect, incidental, special, consequential, reliance or cover damages, including loss of profits, revenue, data or use, incurred by any user or any third party. Compliance with this specification does not absolve manufacturers of IO-Link equipment, from the requirements of safety and regulatory agencies (TÜV, BIA, UL, CSA, etc.).

 **IO-Link** ® is registered trade mark. The use is restricted for members of the IO-Link Community. More detailed terms for the use can be found in the IO-Link Community Rules on [www.io-link.com](http://www.io-link.com).

**Conventions:**

In this specification the following key words (in **bold** text) will be used:

**may:** indicates flexibility of choice with no implied preference.

**should:** indicates flexibility of choice with a strongly preferred implementation.

**shall:** indicates a mandatory requirement. Designers **shall** implement such mandatory requirements to ensure interoperability and to claim conformity with this specification.

Publisher:

**IO-Link Community**

Haid-und-Neu-Str. 7

76131 Karlsruhe

Germany

Phone: +49 721 / 96 58 590

Fax: +49 721 / 96 58 589

E-mail: [info@io-link.com](mailto:info@io-link.com)

Web site: [www.io-link.com](http://www.io-link.com)

© No part of this publication may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and microfilm, without permission in writing from the publisher.

CONTENTS

- 0 Introduction ..... 12
  - 0.1 General ..... 12
  - 0.2 Patent declaration ..... 13
- 1 Scope ..... 14
- 2 Normative references ..... 15
- 3 Terms, definitions, symbols, abbreviated terms and conventions ..... 16
  - 3.1 Common terms and definitions ..... 16
  - 3.2 IO-Link Safety: Additional terms and definitions ..... 19
  - 3.3 Symbols and abbreviated terms ..... 20
  - 3.4 Conventions ..... 21
    - 3.4.1 Behavioral descriptions ..... 21
    - 3.4.2 Memory and transmission octet order ..... 21
- 4 Overview of IO-Link Safety ..... 22
  - 4.1 Purpose of the technology and feature levels ..... 22
    - 4.1.1 Base IO-Link Safety technology ..... 22
    - 4.1.2 From "analog" and "switching" to communication ..... 23
    - 4.1.3 Minimized paradigm shift from FS-DI to FS-Master ..... 24
    - 4.1.4 Following the IO-Link paradigm (SIO vs. OSSDe) ..... 24
    - 4.1.5 Port class B (Classic and Combi) ..... 26
    - 4.1.6 "USB-Master" with safety parameterization ..... 27
    - 4.1.7 Interoperability matrix of safety devices ..... 27
  - 4.2 Positioning within the automation hierarchy ..... 28
  - 4.3 Wiring, connectors, and power supply ..... 29
  - 4.4 Relationship to IO-Link ..... 29
  - 4.5 Communication features and interfaces ..... 29
  - 4.6 Parameterization ..... 29
  - 4.7 Role of FS-Master and FS-Gateway ..... 30
  - 4.8 Mapping to upper level systems ..... 30
  - 4.9 Structure of the document ..... 30
- 5 Extensions to the Physical Layer (PL) ..... 31
  - 5.1 Overview ..... 31
  - 5.2 Extensions to PL services ..... 31
    - 5.2.1 PL\_SetMode ..... 31
    - 5.2.2 PL\_Ready ..... 31
  - 5.3 Transmitter/receiver ..... 32
    - 5.3.1 Assumptions for the expansion to OSSDe ..... 32
    - 5.3.2 OSSDe specifics ..... 32
    - 5.3.3 Start-up of an FS-Device (Ready pulse) ..... 35
    - 5.3.4 Electric characteristics of a receiver in FS-Device and FS-Master ..... 35
  - 5.4 Electric and dynamic characteristics of an FS-Device ..... 36
  - 5.5 Electric and dynamic characteristics of an FS-Master port (OSSDe) ..... 38
  - 5.6 FS-Master port FS-DI interface ..... 39
  - 5.7 Wake-up coordination ..... 40
  - 5.8 Fast start-up ..... 40
  - 5.9 Power supply ..... 40

5.10	Medium.....	41
5.10.1	Constraints .....	41
5.10.2	Connectors .....	41
5.10.3	Cable characteristics .....	41
6	Extensions to SIO.....	41
7	Extensions to data link layer (DL) .....	41
7.1	Overview .....	41
7.2	State machine of the FS-Master DL-mode handler .....	41
7.3	State machine of the FS-Device DL-mode handler .....	43
8	Extensions to system management (SM) .....	44
9	Extensions of the FS-Device.....	44
9.1	Principle architecture and models .....	44
9.1.1	FS-Device architecture .....	44
9.1.2	FS-Device model .....	44
9.2	Parameter Manager (PM).....	45
9.3	Process Data Exchange (PDE) .....	45
9.4	Data Storage (DS) .....	45
9.4.1	General considerations including safety.....	45
9.4.2	User point of view.....	46
9.4.3	Operations and preconditions for Device replacement .....	46
9.4.4	Commissioning .....	47
9.4.5	Backup Levels .....	47
9.4.6	Use cases .....	50
10	Extensions of the FS-Master.....	51
10.1	Principle architecture .....	51
10.2	Safety Layer Manager (SLM) .....	51
10.2.1	Purpose.....	51
10.2.2	FS_PortModes.....	51
10.2.3	FSP parameter blocks .....	52
10.3	Process Data Exchange (PDE) .....	54
10.4	Data Storage (DS) .....	54
11	Safety communication layer (SCL).....	55
11.1	Functional requirements.....	55
11.2	Communication faults and safety measures .....	55
11.3	SCL services .....	56
11.3.1	Positioning of safety communication layers (SCL).....	56
11.3.2	FS-Master SCL services .....	56
11.3.3	FS-Device SCL services .....	58
11.4	SCL protocol.....	59
11.4.1	Protocol phases to consider.....	59
11.4.2	FS-Device faults .....	60
11.4.3	Safety PDU (SPDU).....	60
11.4.4	FS-Input and FS-Output data.....	60
11.4.5	Status and control .....	61
11.4.6	CRC signature.....	61
11.4.7	Data types for IO-Link Safety.....	62
11.5	SCL behavior .....	64
11.5.1	General .....	64

11.5.2	SCL state machine of the FS-Master .....	64
11.5.3	SCL state machine of the FS-Device .....	66
11.5.4	Sequence charts for several use cases.....	69
11.5.5	Monitoring of safety times.....	75
11.5.6	Reaction in the event of a malfunction .....	75
11.5.7	Start-up (communication).....	78
11.6	SCL management .....	78
11.6.1	Parameter overview (FSP and FST).....	78
11.6.2	Parameterization approaches .....	79
11.7	Integrity measures .....	80
11.7.1	IODD integrity.....	80
11.7.2	Tool integrity .....	80
11.7.3	Transmission integrity.....	80
11.7.4	Verification and validation.....	81
11.7.5	Authenticity .....	81
11.7.6	Storage integrity .....	81
11.7.7	FS I/O data structure integrity.....	82
11.7.8	Technology parameter (FST) based on IODD .....	82
11.7.9	Technology parameter (FST) based on existing dedicated tool (IOPD) .....	83
11.8	Creation of FSP and FST parameters .....	84
11.9	Integration of dedicated tools (IOPD) .....	85
11.9.1	IOPD interface.....	85
11.9.2	Standard interfaces .....	85
11.9.3	Backward channel .....	86
11.10	Passivation .....	86
11.10.1	Motivation and means.....	86
11.10.2	Port selective (FS-Master) .....	87
11.10.3	Signal selective (FS-Terminal).....	87
11.10.4	Qualifier settings in case of communication .....	87
11.10.5	Qualifier handling in case of OSSDe.....	87
11.11	SCL diagnosis.....	89
12	Functional safe processing (FS-P).....	89
12.1	Recommendations for efficient I/O mappings .....	89
12.2	FS logic control.....	89
Annex A	(normative, safety-related) Extensions to parameters .....	90
A.1	Indices and parameters for IO-Link Safety .....	90
A.2	Parameters in detail.....	91
A.2.1	FSCP_Authenticity.....	91
A.2.2	FSP_Port.....	91
A.2.3	FSP_AuthentCRC .....	91
A.2.4	FSP_ProtVersion .....	91
A.2.5	FSP_ProtMode .....	92
A.2.6	FSP_Watchdog.....	92
A.2.7	FSP_TechParCRC.....	92
A.2.8	FSP_ProtParCRC .....	92
A.2.9	FSP_IO_StructCRC .....	92
A.2.10	FS_Password .....	93
A.2.11	Reset_FS_Password .....	94
A.2.12	FSP_ParamDescCRC.....	94

Annex B (normative, non-safety related) Extensions to EventCodes .....	95
B.1 Additional EventCodes .....	95
Annex C (normative, safety related) Extensions to Data Types .....	96
C.1 Data types for IO-Link Safety .....	96
C.2 BooleanT (bit) .....	96
C.3 IntegerT (16).....	97
C.4 IntegerT (32).....	97
C.5 Safety Code .....	98
Annex D (normative, safety related) CRC generator polynomials .....	99
D.1 Overview of CRC generator polynomials .....	99
D.2 Residual error probabilities .....	99
D.3 Implementation considerations.....	101
D.3.1 Overview .....	101
D.3.2 Bit shift algorithm (16 bit).....	101
D.3.3 Lookup table (16 bit).....	101
D.3.4 Bit shift algorithm (32 bit).....	102
D.3.5 Lookup table (32 bit).....	103
D.3.6 Seed values.....	104
Annex E (normative, safety related) IODD extensions .....	105
E.1 General.....	105
E.2 Schema .....	105
E.3 IODD constraints .....	105
E.3.1 Overview and general rules .....	105
E.3.2 Specific SystemCommands .....	106
E.3.3 Profile Characteristic .....	106
E.3.4 ProcessDataInput and ProcessDataOutput .....	106
E.4 IODD conventions.....	106
E.4.1 Naming.....	106
E.4.2 Process Data (PD).....	107
E.4.3 IODD conventions for user interface .....	107
E.4.4 Master Tool features.....	107
E.5 Securing .....	108
E.5.1 General .....	108
E.5.2 DefaultValues for FSP .....	108
E.5.3 FSP_Authenticity .....	109
E.5.4 FSP_Protocol .....	109
E.5.5 FSP_IO_Description .....	109
E.5.6 Sample serialization for FSP_ParamDescCRC .....	109
E.5.7 FST and FSP parameters and Data Storage .....	111
E.5.8 Sample IODD of an FS-Device.....	111
Annex F (normative, non-safety related) Device Tool Interface (DTI) for IO-Link .....	119
F.1 Purpose of DTI.....	119
F.2 Base model.....	119
F.3 Invocation interface.....	120
F.3.1 Overview .....	120
F.3.2 Detection of Device Tool.....	120
F.3.3 Program Interface Description – PID.....	123
F.3.4 Temporary Parameter File – TPF.....	126

F.3.5	Temporary Backchannel File – TBF .....	131
F.3.6	Temporary Acknowledgment File – TAF .....	133
F.3.7	Invocation behavior .....	134
F.4	Device data objects (DDO) .....	134
F.4.1	General .....	134
F.4.2	Creating DDOs .....	134
F.4.3	Copying DDOs .....	136
F.4.4	Moving DDOs .....	136
F.4.5	Deleting DDOs .....	136
F.5	Communication Interface .....	136
F.5.1	General .....	136
F.5.2	Principle of DTI communications .....	137
F.5.3	Gateways .....	139
F.5.4	Configuration of the Communication Server .....	139
F.5.5	Definition of the Communication Interface .....	139
F.5.6	Sequence for establishing a communication relation .....	139
F.5.7	Usage of the Communication Server in stand-alone mode .....	140
F.5.8	IO-Link specifics .....	141
F.5.9	Changing communication settings .....	142
F.6	Reaction on incorrect Tool behavior .....	142
F.7	Compatibility .....	142
F.7.1	Schema validation .....	142
F.7.2	Version policy .....	143
F.8	Scalability .....	143
F.8.1	Scalability of a Device Tool .....	143
F.8.2	Scalability of a Master Tool .....	144
F.8.3	Interactions at conformance class combinations .....	144
F.9	Schema definitions .....	144
F.9.1	General .....	144
F.9.2	Schema of the PID .....	144
F.9.3	Schema of the TPF .....	146
F.9.4	Schema of the TBF .....	148
F.9.5	Schema of the TAF .....	149
F.9.6	Schema of DTI primitives .....	149
Annex G (normative)	Main scenarios of IO-Link Safety .....	152
Annex H (normative)	System requirements .....	153
H.1	Indicators .....	153
H.1.1	General .....	153
H.1.2	OSSDe .....	153
H.1.3	Safety communication .....	153
H.1.4	Acknowledgment request .....	153
H.2	Installation guidelines, electrical safety, and security .....	153
H.3	Safety function response time .....	154
H.4	Duration of demands .....	154
H.5	Maintenance and repair .....	154
H.6	Safety manual .....	154
Annex I (normative)	Assessment .....	155
I.1	General .....	155
I.2	Safety policy .....	155

- I.3 Obligations ..... 155
- I.4 Concept approval..... 155
- Annex J (normative) Details of "Classic" port class B ..... 156
  - J.1 "Classic" power supply option ..... 156
  - J.2 Rules ..... 157
- Annex K (normative) Test of FS-Master and FS-Device ..... 158
- Bibliography**..... 159

- Figure 1 – Relationship of this document to standards ..... 12
- Figure 2 – IO-Link Safety on single platform ..... 14
- Figure 3 – Memory and transmission octet order..... 22
- Figure 4 – IO-Link Safety communication layer model..... 22
- Figure 5 – Port interface extensions for IO-Link Safety ..... 23
- Figure 6 – Migration to IO-Link Safety..... 23
- Figure 7 – Minimized paradigm shift from FS-DI to FS-Master ..... 24
- Figure 8 – FS-Master types and feature levels ..... 25
- Figure 9 – Original pin layout of IO-Link (port class A) ..... 25
- Figure 10 – Optimized OSSDe commissioning with FS-Master ..... 26
- Figure 11 – Level "d" of an FS-Master (Combi – class B) ..... 27
- Figure 12 – Off-site configuration and parameterization ..... 27
- Figure 13 – IO-Link Safety within the automation hierarchy..... 28
- Figure 14 – The IO-Link physical layer of an FS-Master (class A) ..... 31
- Figure 15 – The IO-Link physical layer of an FS-Device (class A) ..... 31
- Figure 16 – Cross compatibility OSSD and OSSDe ..... 32
- Figure 17 – Principle OSSDe function ..... 33
- Figure 18 – Test pulses to detect cross connection faults ..... 34
- Figure 19 – OSSD timings ..... 34
- Figure 20 – Typical start-up of an OSSD sensor ..... 35
- Figure 21 – Start-up of an FS-Device..... 35
- Figure 22 – Switching thresholds for FS-Device and FS-Master receivers..... 36
- Figure 23 – Reference schematics (one OSSDe channel) ..... 36
- Figure 24 – Voltage level definitions ..... 37
- Figure 25 – Charge capability at power-up..... 39
- Figure 26 – OSSDe input filter conflict resolution ..... 40
- Figure 27 – Start-up of an FS-Device..... 40
- Figure 28 – Required fast start-up timings ..... 40
- Figure 29 – State machine of the FS-Master DL-mode handler ..... 42
- Figure 30 – State machine of the FS-Device DL-mode handler ..... 43
- Figure 31 – Principle architecture of the FS-Device ..... 44
- Figure 32 – The FS-Device model..... 45
- Figure 33 – Active and backup parameter ..... 47
- Figure 34 – Off-site commissioning ..... 47
- Figure 35 – Principle architecture of the FS-Master ..... 51
- Figure 36 – FSP parameter use cases ..... 52



Figure 37 – Positioning of the IO-Link Safety Communication Layer (SCL) .....	56
Figure 38 – FS-Master Safety Communication Layer services .....	57
Figure 39 – FS-Device Safety Communication Layer services .....	58
Figure 40 – Protocol phases to consider .....	59
Figure 41 – Safety PDUs of FS-Master and FS-Device .....	60
Figure 42 – The 1 % share rule of IEC 61784-3 .....	62
Figure 43 – SCL state machine of the FS-Master .....	64
Figure 44 – SCL state machine of the FS-Device .....	66
Figure 45 – FS-Master and FS-Device both with power ON .....	69
Figure 46 – FS-Master power OFF → ON .....	70
Figure 47 – FS-Device with delayed SCL start .....	71
Figure 48 – FS-Device with power OFF and ON .....	72
Figure 49 – FS-Master detects CRC signature error .....	73
Figure 50 – FS-Device detects CRC signature error .....	74
Figure 51 – Monitoring of the SCL cycle time .....	75
Figure 52 – Parameter types and assignments .....	79
Figure 53 – FSCP-Host-centric system .....	80
Figure 54 – Structure of the protocol parameter (FSP) record .....	81
Figure 55 – Start-up of IO-Link safety .....	82
Figure 56 – Securing of FST parameters via dedicated tool .....	83
Figure 57 – Modification of FST parameters via Device Tool .....	83
Figure 58 – Creation of FSP and FST parameters .....	84
Figure 59 – Example of a communication hierarchy .....	85
Figure 60 – Motivation for Port selective passivation .....	86
Figure 61 – Qualifier handler (communication) .....	87
Figure 62 – Qualifier handler (OSSDe) .....	88
Figure 63 – Qualifier behavior per FS-Master port .....	88
Figure 64 – Mapping efficiency issues .....	89
Figure A.1 – Instance of an FS I/O data description .....	93
Figure A.2 – Example FS I/O data structure with non-safety data .....	93
Figure A.3 – Securing of safety parameters .....	94
Figure C.1 – Example of a BooleanT data structure .....	96
Figure C.2 – Safety Code of an output message .....	98
Figure C.3 – Safety Code of an input message .....	98
Figure D.1 – CRC-16 generator polynomial .....	100
Figure D.2 – CRC-32 generator polynomial .....	100
Figure D.3 – Bit shift algorithm in "C" language (16 bit) .....	101
Figure D.4 – CRC-16 signature calculation using a lookup table .....	101
Figure D.5 – Bit shift algorithm in "C" language (32 bit) .....	103
Figure D.6 – CRC-32 signature calculation using a lookup table .....	103
Figure E.1 – Algorithm to build the FSP parameter CRC signatures .....	108
Figure F.1 – Principle of DTI invocation interface .....	120
Figure F.2 – Structure of the registry .....	121

Figure F.3 – Example of a DTI registry..... 121

Figure F.4 – Detection of a Device Tool in registry..... 123

Figure F.5 – Menu for Device Tool invocation ..... 124

Figure F.6 – Structure of the PID file..... 124

Figure F.7 – Structure of a TPF ..... 127

Figure F.8 – Structure of the TBF..... 132

Figure F.9 – Activity diagram for the DDO handling..... 135

Figure F.10 – Communication routes between Device Tool and Device..... 137

Figure F.11 – Routing across networks and IO-Link ..... 138

Figure F.12 – Communication Server ..... 138

Figure F.13 – Sequence chart for establishing communication ..... 140

Figure F.14 – Create Communication Server instance..... 140

Figure F.15 – Example of a Connect Request XML document for IO-Link..... 141

Figure F.16 – XML schema of the PID file ..... 144

Figure F.17 – XML schema of the TPF..... 146

Figure F.18 – XML schema of a TBF..... 148

Figure J.1 – "Classic" port Class B definitions..... 156

Figure J.2 – Possible layout of cable with Power1 and Power2 ..... 157

Table 1 – Operational modes of feature level "a" to "c" (port class A)..... 26

Table 2 – Interoperability matrix of safety devices..... 27

Table 3 – PL\_Ready ..... 31

Table 4 – OSSD states and conditions ..... 33

Table 5 – Cross connection faults ..... 33

Table 6 – Electric characteristics of a receiver ..... 35

Table 7 – Electric and dynamic characteristics of the FS-Device (OSSDe)..... 37

Table 8 – Electric and dynamic characteristics of the Port interface ..... 38

Table 9 – Cable characteristics..... 41

Table 10 – State transition tables of the FS-Master DL-mode handler ..... 42

Table 11 – State transition tables of the FS-Device DL-mode handler ..... 43

Table 12 – Recommended Data Storage Backup Levels ..... 48

Table 13 – Criteria for backing up parameters ("Backup/Restore") ..... 49

Table 14 – Criteria for backing up parameters ("Restore") ..... 49

Table 15 – Use case reference table..... 52

Table 16 – Communication errors and safety measures ..... 55

Table 17 – SCL services of FS-Master ..... 57

Table 18 – SCL services of FS-Device ..... 58

Table 19 – Protocol phases to consider ..... 59

Table 20 – Control and counting (Control&MCnt) ..... 61

Table 21 – Status and counting mirror (Status&DCnt) ..... 61

Table 22 – MCount and DCount\_i values ..... 61

Table 23 – FS process I/O data types ..... 63

Table 24 – Rules for the layout of values and qualifiers ..... 63

Table 25 – Order of values and qualifier .....	63
Table 26 – Definition of terms used in SCL state machine of the FS-Master.....	64
Table 27 – FS-Master SCL states and transitions .....	64
Table 28 – Definition of terms used in SCL state machine of the FS-Device.....	66
Table 29 – FS-Device SCL states and transitions .....	67
Table 30 – Timing constraints .....	75
Table 31 – Qualifier bits "GOOD/BAD" .....	87
Table 32 – State transition table for the qualifier behavior.....	88
Table A.1 – Indices for IO-Link Safety.....	90
Table A.2 – Coding of protocol version .....	91
Table A.3 – Coding of protocol mode .....	92
Table A.4 – Generic FS I/O data structure description .....	93
Table B.1 – SCL specific EventCodes .....	95
Table C.1 – Data types for IO-Link Safety.....	96
Table C.2 – BooleanT for IO-Link Safety.....	96
Table C.3 – Example of BooleanT within a RecordT.....	96
Table C.4 – IntegerT(16).....	97
Table C.5 – IntegerT(16) coding .....	97
Table C.6 – IntegerT(32).....	97
Table C.7 – IntegerT(32) coding .....	97
Table D.1 – CRC generator polynomials for IO-Link Safety .....	99
Table D.2 – Definition of variables used in Figure D.3.....	101
Table D.3 – Definition of variables used in Figure D.4.....	101
Table D.4 – Lookup table for CRC-16 signature calculation .....	102
Table D.5 – Definition of variables used in Figure D.5.....	103
Table D.6 – Definition of variables used in Figure D.4.....	103
Table D.7 – Lookup table for CRC-32 signature calculation .....	103
Table E.1 – Constrained Index assignment of data objects for IO-Link Safety .....	105
Table E.2 – Specific behavior of "Restore factory settings" .....	106
Table E.3 – User actions to replace DefaultValues.....	108
Table E.4 – RecordItems of FSP_Protocol where allowed values shall be serialized .....	109
Table E.5 – Sample serialization for FSP_ParamDescCRC.....	109
Table F.1 – Description of PID file elements .....	125
Table F.2 – Elements of a TPF .....	127
Table F.3 – Elements of the TBF.....	132
Table F.4 – Invocation cases and behaviors .....	134
Table F.5 – Communication Schema mapping .....	141
Table F.6 – Reaction on incorrect Tool behavior .....	142
Table F.7 – DTI conformance classes .....	143
Table F.8 – DTI feature levels of Device Tools.....	143
Table F.9 – Interactions at conformance class combinations.....	144
Table G.1 – Main scenarios of IO-Link Safety .....	152
Table J.1 – Electric characteristic of Power2.....	156

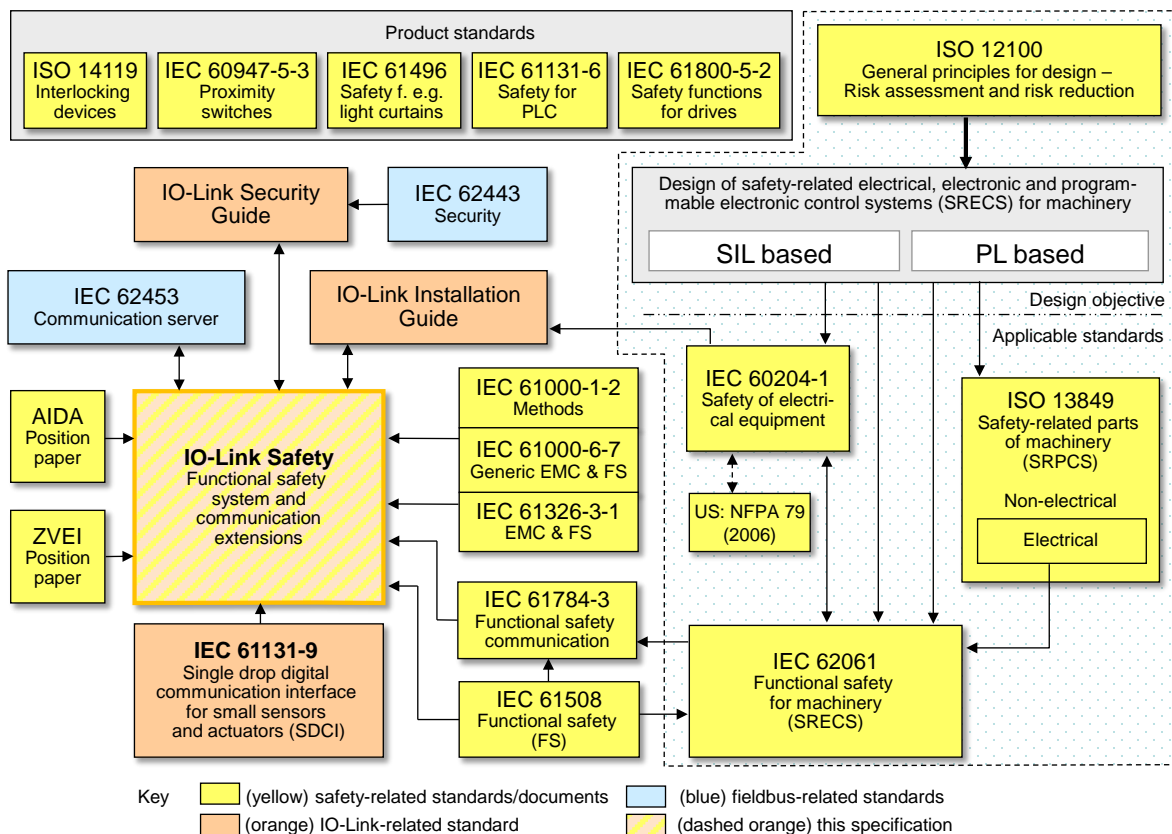
1 **0 Introduction**

2 **0.1 General**

3 The base technology of IO-Link™<sup>1</sup> is subject matter of the international standard IEC 61131-9  
 4 (see [2]). IEC 61131-9 is part of a series of standards on programmable controllers and the  
 5 associated peripherals and should be read in conjunction with the other parts of the series.

6 It specifies a single-drop digital communication interface technology for small sensors and  
 7 actuators – named SDCI, which extends the traditional switching input and output interfaces  
 8 as defined in IEC 61131-2 towards a point-to-point communication link using coded switching.  
 9 This technology enables the cyclic exchange of digital input and output process data between  
 10 a Master and its associated Devices (sensors, actuators, I/O terminals, etc.). The Master can  
 11 be part of a fieldbus communication system or any stand-alone processing unit. The  
 12 technology enables also the acyclic transfer of parameters to Devices and the propagation of  
 13 diagnosis information from the Devices to the upper-level automation system (controller, host)  
 14 via the Master.

15 Physical topology is point-to-point from each Device to the Master using 3 wires over  
 16 distances up to 20 m. The SDCI physical interface is backward compatible with the usual  
 17 24 V I/O signalling specified in IEC 61131-2. Transmission rates of 4,8 kbit/s, 38,4 kbit/s and  
 18 230,4 kbit/s are supported.



19 **Figure 1 – Relationship of this document to standards**

20 The main advantages of the IO-Link technology are:

- 21
- 22 • international standard for dual use of either switching signals (DI/DO) or coded switching
  - 23 communication respectively;

<sup>1</sup> IO-Link™ is a trade name of the "IO-Link Community". This information is given for the convenience of users of this specification and does not constitute an endorsement by the IO-Link Community of the trade name holder or any of its products. Compliance to this standard does not require use of the registered logos for IO-Link™. Use of the registered logos for IO-Link™ requires permission of the "IO-Link Community".

- 24 • traditional switching sensors and actuators now providing alternatively single drop digital  
25 communication within the same Device;
- 26 • one thin, robust, very flexible cable without shielding for power supply and signalling;
- 27 • lowest-cost digital communication down to the lowest end sensors and actuators.

28 As a consequence, the market demand for the extension of this technology towards functional  
29 safety has been raised.

30 This document provides the necessary extensions to the basic IO-Link interface and system  
31 standard for *functional safety communication* including compatibility to OSSDe based sensors  
32 and the necessary configuration management. Figure 1 shows its relationships to internatio-  
33 nal fieldbus and safety standards as well as to relevant specifications.

34 This document does not yet provide the necessary specifications for a functional safety  
35 interface ("Combi") for actuators based on Port class B and for optional features such as func-  
36 tional safety signal processing as required in [11]. This part has been postponed to a later  
37 release.

38 The design objective for IO-Link Safety is up to SIL3 according to IEC 61508 and/or up to PL<sub>e</sub>  
39 according to ISO 13849.

40 Parameterization within the domain of safety for machinery requires a "Dedicated Tool" per  
41 FS-Device or FS-Device family. The Device Tool Interface (DTI) technology has been chosen  
42 for the links between FS-Master Tool, FS-Device, and its "Dedicated Tool" (Device Tool).

43 The structure of this document is described in 4.9.

44 Conformity with this document cannot be claimed unless the requirements of Annex I are met.

45 Terms of general use are defined in IEC 61131-1 or in the IEC 60050 series. More specific  
46 terms are defined in each part.

## 47 **0.2 Patent declaration**

48 The IO-Link Community draws attention to the fact that compliance with this document may  
49 involve the use of patents concerning the functional safety point-to-point serial communication  
50 interface for small sensors and actuators.

51 Attention is drawn to the possibility that some of the elements of this document may be the  
52 subject of patent rights. The IO-Link Community shall not be held responsible for identifying  
53 any or all such patent rights.

54 The IO-Link Community maintains on-line data bases of patents relevant to their standards.  
55 Users are encouraged to consult the databases for the most up to date information  
56 concerning patents.

## IO-Link Safety – Functional safety communication and system extensions – based on IEC 61131-9 (SDCI)

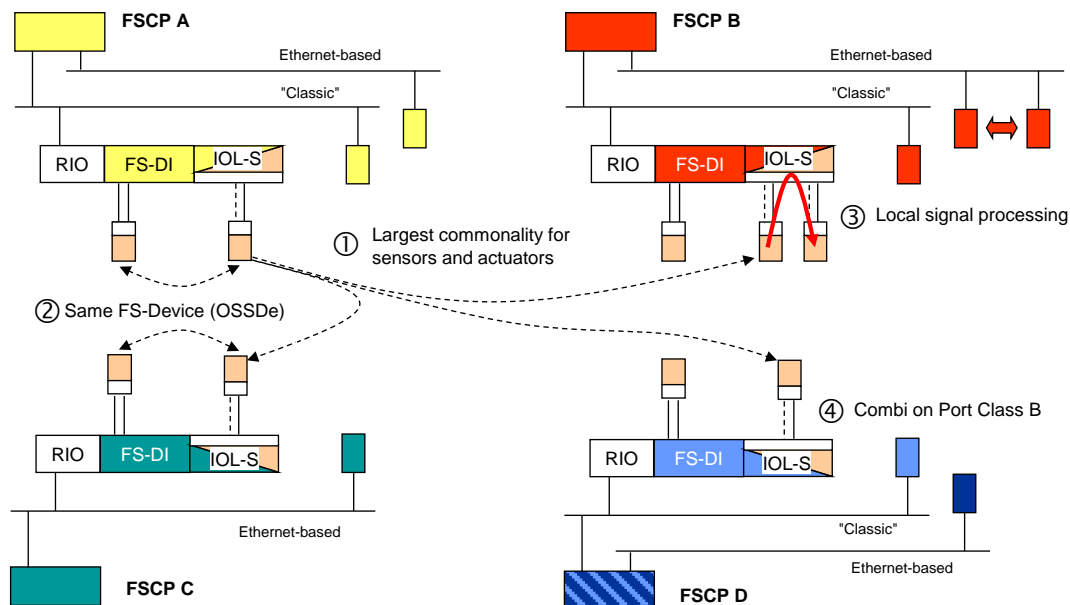
### 1 Scope

For the design of functional safety communication on IO-Link there exist mainly three options:

- existing functional safety communication profiles (FSCP) specified within the IEC 61784-3-x series, *tunnelling* across IO-Link;
- a *new universal FSCP* suitable for all fieldbuses standardized in IEC 61158, also tunnelling across IO-Link;
- a *new lean dedicated functional safety communication interface* (IO-Link Safety) solely between Device and Master requiring a safety gateway for the connection to FSCPs.

This document specifies only the new lean functional safety communication interface including connectivity of OSSDe type safety sensors (FS-Devices).

Figure 2 shows four typical fieldbus/FSCP configurations A to D with remote I/Os (RIO) and attached FS-DIs as well as gateways to IO-Link Safety ("IOL-S"). The gateways contain FSCP-specific FS-Masters. FS-Devices with OSSDe can be connected to FS-DIs or FS-Masters. All IO-Link safety sensors (FS-Device) can communicate with any IO-Link Safety Master (FS-Master) using the IO-Link Safety protocol regardless of the upper level FSCP-system. The same is true for IO-Link safety actuators (FS-Devices) such as drives with integrated safety. This means the largest component commonality<sup>①</sup> for sensors and actuators similar to the DI and DO interfaces standardized within IEC 61131-2.



**Figure 2 – IO-Link Safety on single platform**

Safety sensors with OSSDe interfaces – equipped with IO-Link communication – can be parameterized via auxiliary tools such as "USB-Masters", then connected to an FS-DI and operated in OSSDe mode. They also can be operated in OSSDe mode on an FS-Master supporting OSSDe. In case these safety sensors are equipped with IO-Link Safety communication in addition, they can be operated in both modes<sup>②</sup>, either OSSDe or IO-Link Safety. This corresponds to the IO-Link SIO paradigm.

The concept of IO-Link Safety allows for local safety signal processing (safety functions) if the FS-Master provides a local safety controller<sup>③</sup>. This document specifies the interfaces if required.

90 The IO-Link specifications [1] and [2] define a Master Port class B with an extra 24 V power  
91 supply for actuators using a 5 pin M12 connector. The list of requirements in [11] suggests an  
92 extension – called "Combi-Port" –, where the power-down of the extra power supply can be  
93 controlled by the FS-Master itself<sup>④</sup>. This document does not yet specify this kind of Master  
94 Port class B. It is postponed until a later version.

95 NOTE The illustrations ① to ④ be valid for all FSCPs.

96 This document does not cover communication interfaces or systems incorporating multi-point  
97 or multi-drop linkages, or integration of IO-Link Safety into upper level systems such as  
98 fieldbuses.

## 99 2 Normative references

100 The following documents, in whole or in part, are normatively referenced in this document and  
101 are indispensable for its application. For dated references, only the edition cited applies. For  
102 undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any  
103 amendments) applies.

104 IEC 60947-5-3, *Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear – Part 5-3: Control circuit devices*  
105 *and switching elements – Requirements for proximity devices with defined behaviour under*  
106 *fault conditions (PDDB)*

107 IEC 61000-1-2, *Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) - Part 1-2: General - Methodology for the*  
108 *achievement of functional safety of electrical and electronic systems including equipment with*  
109 *regard to electromagnetic phenomena*

110 IEC 61000-6-7, *Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) - Part 6-7: Generic standards - Immunity*  
111 *requirements for equipment intended to perform functions in a safety-related system*  
112 *(functional safety) in industrial locations*

113 IEC 61131-2, *Programmable controllers – Part 2: Equipment requirements and tests*

114 IEC 61131-9, *Programmable controllers – Part 9: Single-drop digital communication interface*  
115 *for small sensors and actuators (SDCI)*

116 IEC 61496-1, *Safety of machinery – Electro-sensitive protective equipment – Part 1: General*  
117 *requirements and tests*

118 IEC 61508-2:2010, *Functional safety of electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety-*  
119 *related systems - Part 2: Requirements for electrical/electronic/programmable electronic*  
120 *safety-related systems*

121 IEC 61508-3:2010, *Functional safety of electrical/electronic/programmable electronic safety-*  
122 *related systems - Part 3: Software requirements*

123 IEC 61784-3:2016, *Industrial communication networks - Profiles - Part 3: Functional safety*  
124 *fieldbuses - General rules and profile definitions*

125 IEC 62061, *Safety of machinery – Functional safety of safety-related electrical, electronic and*  
126 *programmable electronic control systems*

127 IEC 62443 all, *Security for industrial automation and control systems*

128 IEC 62453, *Field device tool (FDT) interface specification*

129 ISO 12100:2010, *Safety of machinery – General principles for design – Risk assessment and*  
130 *risk reduction*

131 ISO 13849-1:2015, *Safety of machinery – Safety-related parts of control systems – Part 1:*  
132 *General principles for design*

133 ISO 14119:2013, *Safety of machinery – Interlocking devices associated with guards –*  
134 *Principles for design and selection*

### 135 **3 Terms, definitions, symbols, abbreviated terms and conventions**

#### 136 **3.1 Common terms and definitions**

137 For the purposes of this document, the terms and definitions given in IEC 61131-1 and IEC  
138 61131-2, as well as the following apply.

##### 139 **3.1.1**

##### 140 **address**

141 part of the M-sequence control to reference data within data categories of a communication  
142 channel

##### 143 **3.1.2**

##### 144 **application layer**

145 AL

146 <SDCI><sup>2</sup> part of the protocol responsible for the transmission of Process Data objects and  
147 On-request Data objects

##### 148 **3.1.3**

##### 149 **block parameter**

150 consistent parameter access via multiple Indices or Subindices

##### 151 **3.1.4**

##### 152 **checksum**

153 <SDCI> complementary part of the overall data integrity measures in the data link layer in  
154 addition to the UART parity bit

##### 155 **3.1.5**

##### 156 **CHKPDU**

157 integrity protection data within an ISDU communication channel generated through XOR  
158 processing the octets of a request or response

##### 159 **3.1.6**

##### 160 **coded switching**

161 SDCI communication, based on the standard binary signal levels of IEC 61131-2

##### 162 **3.1.7**

##### 163 **COM1**

164 SDCI communication mode with transmission rate of 4,8 kbit/s

##### 165 **3.1.8**

##### 166 **COM2**

167 SDCI communication mode with transmission rate of 38,4 kbit/s

##### 168 **3.1.9**

##### 169 **COM3**

170 SDCI communication mode with transmission rate of 230,4 kbit/s

##### 171 **3.1.10**

##### 172 **COMx**

173 one out of three possible SDCI communication modes COM1, COM2, or COM3

##### 174 **3.1.11**

##### 175 **communication channel**

176 logical connection between Master and Device

177 Note 1 to entry: Four communication channels are defined: process channel, page and ISDU channel (for  
178 parameters), and diagnosis channel.

##### 179 **3.1.12**

##### 180 **communication error**

181 unexpected disturbance of the SDCI transmission protocol

---

<sup>2</sup> Angle brackets indicate validity of the definition for the SDCI (IO-Link) technology



- 182 **3.1.13**  
183 **cycle time**  
184 time to transmit an M-sequence between a Master and its Device including the following idle  
185 time
- 186 **3.1.14**  
187 **Device**  
188 single passive peer to a Master such as a sensor or actuator
- 189 Note 1 to entry: Uppercase "Device" is used for SDCI equipment, while lowercase "device" is used in a generic  
190 manner.
- 191 **3.1.15**  
192 **Direct Parameters**  
193 directly (page) addressed parameters transferred acyclically via the page communication  
194 channel without acknowledgement
- 195 **3.1.16**  
196 **dynamic parameter**  
197 part of a Device's parameter set defined by on-board user interfaces such as teach-in buttons  
198 or control panels in addition to the static parameters
- 199 **3.1.17**  
200 **Event**  
201 instance of a change of conditions in a Device
- 202 Note 1 to entry: Uppercase "Event" is used for SDCI Events, while lowercase "event" is used in a generic manner.  
203 Note 2 to entry: An Event is indicated via the Event flag within the Device's status cyclic information, then acyclic  
204 transfer of Event data (typically diagnosis information) is conveyed through the diagnosis communication channel.
- 205 **3.1.18**  
206 **fallback**  
207 transition of a port from coded switching to switching signal mode
- 208 **3.1.19**  
209 **inspection level**  
210 degree of verification for the Device identity
- 211 **3.1.20**  
212 **interleave**  
213 segmented cyclic data exchange for Process Data with more than 2 octets through  
214 subsequent cycles
- 215 **3.1.21**  
216 **ISDU**  
217 indexed service data unit used for acyclic acknowledged transmission of parameters that can  
218 be segmented in a number of M-sequences
- 219 **3.1.22**  
220 **legacy (Device or Master)**  
221 Device or Master designed in accordance with [8]
- 222 **3.1.23**  
223 **M-sequence**  
224 sequence of two messages comprising a Master message and its subsequent Device  
225 message
- 226 **3.1.24**  
227 **M-sequence control**  
228 first octet in a Master message indicating the read/write operation, the type of the  
229 communication channel, and the address, for example offset or flow control
- 230 **3.1.25**  
231 **M-sequence error**  
232 unexpected or wrong message content, or no response

- 233 **3.1.26**  
234 **M-sequence type**  
235 one particular M-sequence format out of a set of specified M-sequence formats
- 236 **3.1.27**  
237 **Master**  
238 active peer connected through ports to one up to n Devices and which provides an interface  
239 to the gateway to the upper level communication systems or PLCs
- 240 Note 1 to entry: Uppercase "Master" is used for SDCI equipment, while lowercase "master" is used in a generic  
241 manner.
- 242 **3.1.28**  
243 **message**  
244 <SDCI> sequence of UART frames transferred either from a Master to its Device or vice versa  
245 following the rules of the SDCI protocol
- 246 **3.1.29**  
247 **On-request Data**  
248 acyclically transmitted data upon request of the Master application consisting of parameters  
249 or Event data
- 250 **3.1.30**  
251 **physical layer**  
252 first layer of the ISO-OSI reference model, which provides the mechanical, electrical,  
253 functional and procedural means to activate, maintain, and de-activate physical connections  
254 for bit transmission between data-link entities
- 255 Note 1 to entry: Physical layer also provides means for wake-up and fallback procedures.  
256 [SOURCE: ISO/IEC 7498-1, 7.7.2, modified – text extracted from subclause, note added]
- 257 **3.1.31**  
258 **port**  
259 communication medium interface of the Master to one Device
- 260 **3.1.32**  
261 **port operating mode**  
262 state of a Master's port that can be either INACTIVE, DO, DI, FIXEDMODE, or SCANMODE
- 263 **3.1.33**  
264 **Process Data**  
265 input or output values from or to a discrete or continuous automation process cyclically  
266 transferred with high priority and in a configured schedule automatically after start-up of a  
267 Master
- 268 **3.1.34**  
269 **Process Data cycle**  
270 complete transfer of all Process Data from or to an individual Device that may comprise  
271 several cycles in case of segmentation (interleave)
- 272 **3.1.35**  
273 **single parameter**  
274 independent parameter access via one single Index or Subindex
- 275 **3.1.36**  
276 **SIO**  
277 port operation mode in accordance with digital input and output defined in IEC 61131-2 that is  
278 established after power-up or fallback or unsuccessful communication attempts
- 279 **3.1.37**  
280 **static parameter**  
281 part of a Device's parameter set to be saved in a Master for the case of replacement without  
282 engineering tools

283 **3.1.38**  
284 **switching signal**  
285 binary signal from or to a Device when in SIO mode (as opposed to the "coded switching"  
286 SDCI communication)

287 **3.1.39**  
288 **system management**  
289 SM  
290 <SDCI> means to control and coordinate the internal communication layers and the  
291 exceptions within the Master and its ports, and within each Device

292 **3.1.40**  
293 **UART frame**  
294 <SDCI> bit sequence starting with a start bit, followed by eight bits carrying a data octet,  
295 followed by an even parity bit and ending with one stop bit

296 **3.1.41**  
297 **wake-up**  
298 procedure for causing a Device to change its mode from SIO to SDCI

299 **3.1.42**  
300 **wake-up request**  
301 WURQ  
302 physical layer service used by the Master to initiate wake-up of a Device, and put it in a  
303 receive ready state

304

## 305 **3.2 IO-Link Safety: Additional terms and definitions**

306 For the purposes of this document, the following additional terms and definitions apply.

307 **3.2.1**  
308 **error**  
309 discrepancy between a computed, observed or measured value or condition and the true,  
310 specified or theoretically correct value or condition

311 Note 1 to entry: Errors may be due to design mistakes within hardware/software and/or corrupted information due  
312 to electromagnetic interference and/or other effects.

313 Note 2 to entry: Errors do not necessarily result in a *failure* or a *fault*.

314 SOURCE: [IEC 61508-4:2010], [IEC 61158]

315 **3.2.2**  
316 **failure**  
317 termination of the ability of a functional unit to perform a required function or operation of a  
318 functional unit in any way other than as required

319 Note 1 to entry: The definition in IEC 61508-4 is the same, with additional notes.

320 Note 2 to entry: Failure may be due to an error (for example, problem with hardware/software design or message  
321 disruption)

322 SOURCE: [IEC 61508-4:2010, modified], [ISO/IEC 2382-14.01.11, modified]

323 **3.2.3**  
324 **fault**  
325 abnormal condition that may cause a reduction in, or loss of, the capability of a functional unit  
326 to perform a required function

327 Note 1 to entry: IECV 191-05-01 defines "fault" as a state characterized by the inability to perform a required  
328 function, excluding the inability during preventive maintenance or other planned actions, or due  
329 to lack of external resources.

330 SOURCE: [IEC 61508-4:2010, modified], [ISO/IEC 2382-14.01.10, modified]

331 **3.2.4**  
 332 **FS-Device**  
 333 single passive peer such as a functional safety sensor or actuator to a Master with functional  
 334 safety capabilities

335 **3.2.5**  
 336 **FS-Master**  
 337 active peer with functional safety capabilities connected through ports to one up to n Devices  
 338 or FS-Devices and which provides an interface to the gateway to the upper level  
 339 communication systems (NSR or SR) or controllers with functional safety capabilities

340 **3.2.6**  
 341 **FSP parameter**  
 342 parameter set for the administration and operation of the IO-Link Safety protocol

343 **3.2.7**  
 344 **FST parameter**  
 345 parameter set for the safety-related technology of an FS-Device, for example light curtain

346 **3.2.8**  
 347 **Safety Protocol Data Unit**  
 348 SPDU  
 349 protocol data unit transferred through the safety communication channel

350 [SOURCE: IEC 61784-3:2015 modified]

351

### 352 **3.3 Symbols and abbreviated terms**

AIDA	Automatisierungsinitiative Deutscher Automobilhersteller	
AL	application layer	
BEP	bit error probability	
C/Q	connection for communication (C) or switching (Q) signal (SIO)	
CRC	cyclic redundancy check	
DDO	Device data object	
DI	digital input	
DL	data link layer	
DO	digital output	
DTI	Device Tool Interface	
FDI	Field Device Integration	[IEC 62769]
FDT	Field Device Tool	[IEC 62453]
FS	functional safety	
FSCP	functional safety communication profile (for example IEC 61784-3-x series)	
FS-AI	functional safety analog input	
FS-DI	functional safety digital input	
I/O	input / output	
IODD	IO Device Description	
IOPD	IO-Link Parameterization & Diagnostic tool	
IOL-S	IO-Link Safety	
L-	power supply (-)	
L+	power supply (+)	
N24	24 V extra power supply (-); Port class B	
NSR	non safety-related	
OD	On-request Data	

OK	"OK", values or state correct	
OSSD	output signal switching device (self-testing electronic device with built-in OSSD)	[IEC 61496-1]
OSSDe	output signal switching device (self-testing electronic device with built-in OSSD)	[This document]
OSSD1/2e	pin assignment of both OSSDe signals according to [14]	
OSSDm	output signal switching device (relay and solid state outputs)	[IEC 60947-5-5]
P24	24 V extra power supply (+); Port class B	
PD	Process Data	
PDin	functional safety input process data (from an FS-Master's view)	
PDout	functional safety output process data (from an FS-Master's view)	
PDCT	port and Device configuration tool	
PFH	(average) probability of a dangerous failure per hour	
PID	program interface description	
PL	physical layer	
PLC	programmable logic controller	
PS	power supply (measured in V)	
RIO	remote I/O	
SCL	safety communication layer	
SDCI	single-drop digital communication interface	[IEC 61131-9]
SIO	standard input output (digital switching mode)	[IEC 61131-2]
SM	system management	
SPDU	safety protocol data unit	
SR	safety-related	
SSI	synchronous serial interface (usually for encoders)	
TAF	temporary acknowledgment file	
TBF	temporary backchannel file	
TPF	temporary parameter file	
UART	universal asynchronous receiver transmitter	
UML 2	unified modeling language, edition 2	[ISO/IEC 19505-2]
WURQ	wake-up request pulse	
XML	extensible markup language	

353

### 354 3.4 Conventions

#### 355 3.4.1 Behavioral descriptions

356 For the behavioral descriptions, the notations of UML 2 are used, mainly for state and  
357 sequence diagrams (see [3], [6], or [7]).

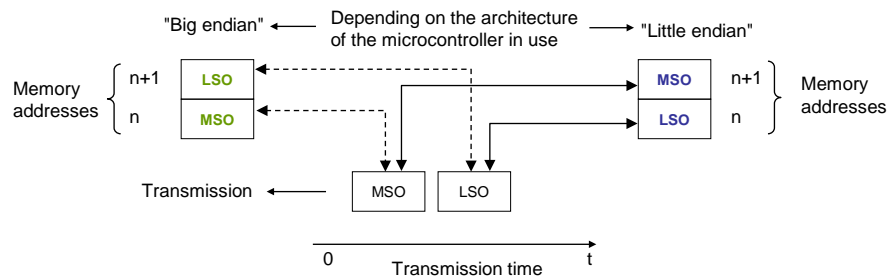
358 Events to trigger a transition usually can be a signal, service call, or timeout. Logic conditions  
359 (true/false) shall be the result of a [guard]. To alleviate the readability and the maintenance of  
360 the state machines, the diagrams do not provide the actions associated with a transition.  
361 These actions are listed within a separate state-transition table according to IEC 62390 [8].

362 The state diagrams shown in this document are entirely abstract descriptions. They do not  
363 represent a complete specification for implementation.

#### 364 3.4.2 Memory and transmission octet order

365 Figure 3 demonstrates the order that shall be used when transferring WORD based data types  
366 from memory to transmission and vice versa.

367 NOTE Existing microcontrollers can differ in the way WORD based data types are stored in memory: "big endian"  
368 and "little endian". If designs are not taking into account this fact, octets can be erroneously permuted for  
369 transmission.



370

371

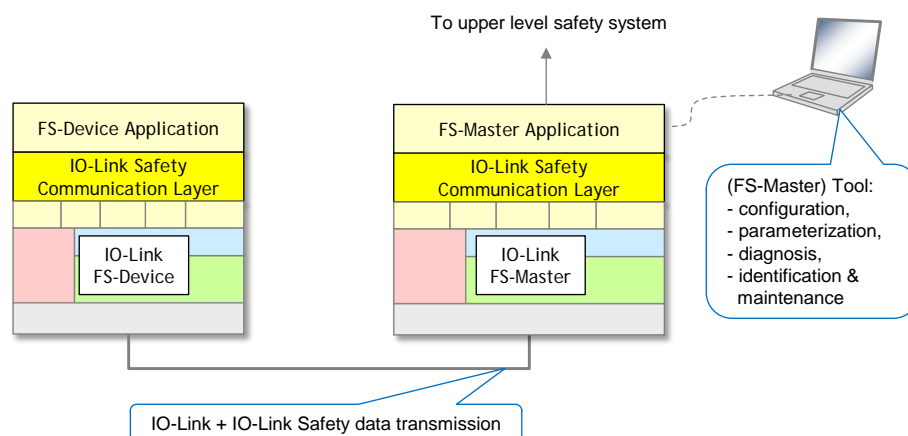
**Figure 3 – Memory and transmission octet order**

## 372 4 Overview of IO-Link Safety

### 373 4.1 Purpose of the technology and feature levels

#### 374 4.1.1 Base IO-Link Safety technology

375 This document specifies a new lean functional safety communication protocol on top of the  
 376 existing IO-Link transmission system specified in [1] or within the international standard IEC  
 377 61131-9 [2]. Figure 4 illustrates how the corresponding IO-Link Safety communication layers  
 378 are located within the architectural models of Master and Device such that they become FS-  
 379 Master and FS-Device. Most of the original IO-Link design remains unchanged for this  
 380 specification.



381

382

**Figure 4 – IO-Link Safety communication layer model**

383 The IO-Link Safety communication layer accommodates the functional safe transmission  
 384 protocol. This protocol generates a safety PDU consisting of the FS-I/O data, protocol control  
 385 or status data, and a CRC signature. The safety PDU together with optionally non-safety-  
 386 related data is transmitted as IO-Link Process Data between an FS-Master and one single FS-  
 387 Device (point-to-point).

388 IO-Link Safety increases the number of Port modes and thus requires changes to the Physical  
 389 Layer and System Management.

390 Changes are required for the Master-(Software)-Tool to provide the necessary safety-related  
 391 configuration and parameterization of the protocol (FSP-Parameter) as well as of the  
 392 particular FS-Device technology (FST-Parameter).

393 IO-Link Safety comprises not only the digital communication; it also supports OSSDe (class A)  
 394 in this version, similar to the SIO mode.

395 IO-Link Safety does not support

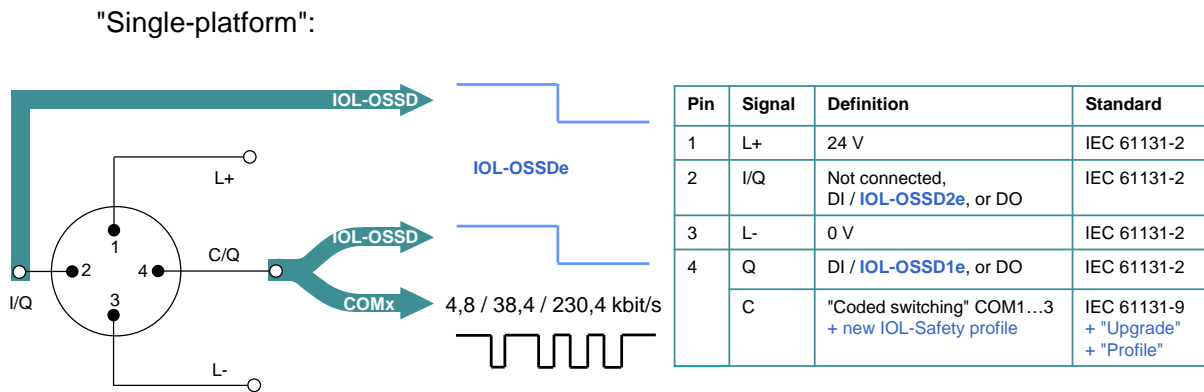
- 396 • wireless connections between FS-Master and FS-Device (see Annex H.2);
- 397 • cascaded FS-Master/FS-Device systems.

398 **4.1.2 From "analog" and "switching" to communication**

399 In "Safety-for-Machinery", usually the switch states (on/off) of relays or sensors are  
 400 transmitted similar to standard IO-Link (SIO) as a 24 V or 0 V signal to FS-DI-Modules within  
 401 remote I/Os. In contrast to standard IO-Link, due to safety requirements, these signals are  
 402 redundant, either equivalent (OSSDe = 11→00) or antivalent (OSSDm = 01→10) switching.

403 NOTE OSSDe stands for IEC 61496-1 and OSSDm for IEC 60947-5-5 concepts.

404 The electrical characteristics for the OSSDe interface are following IEC 61131-2, type 1 (see  
 405 Figure 5).

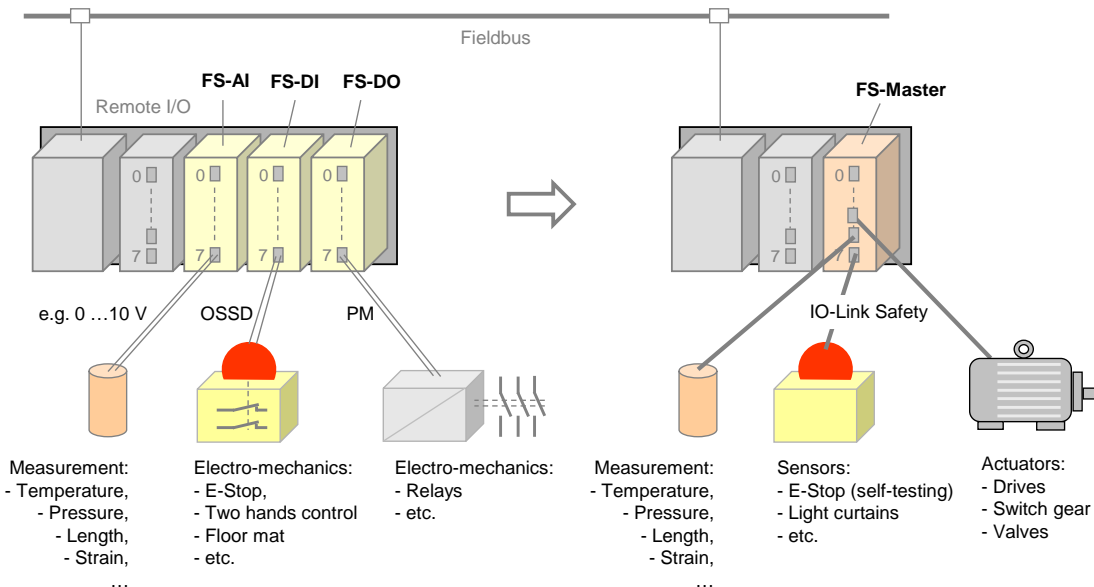


406 Key: IOL-OSSDe = Equivalent switching redundant signals

407 **Figure 5 – Port interface extensions for IO-Link Safety**

408 Measurement of physical quantities such as temperature, pressure, position, or strain (FS-AI-  
 409 Modules) has several interface solutions such as 4 to 20 mA, 0 to 10 V, or SSI, but no  
 410 common signal transmission technology (see Figure 6, left).

411 Actuators such as motors can be de-energized via FS-DO-Modules and connected relays as  
 412 shown in Figure 6 (left).



413  
 414 **Figure 6 – Migration to IO-Link Safety**

415 Without additional interfaces, it was not possible in all cases to configure or parameterize the  
 416 safety devices or to receive diagnosis information.

417 IO-Link Safety can now provide a functional safe and reliable solution for process data  
 418 exchange (signal states and measurement values) via single drop digital communication  
 419 (SDCI), as well as parameterization and diagnosis (see Figure 6, right).

#### 420 4.1.3 Minimized paradigm shift from FS-DI to FS-Master

421 Similar to nowadays safety devices for FS-DI modules (see Figure 7) and in contrast to  
 422 FSCP-based safety devices, it is not necessary to

423 setup an *authenticity code switch* or *adequate software solution*;

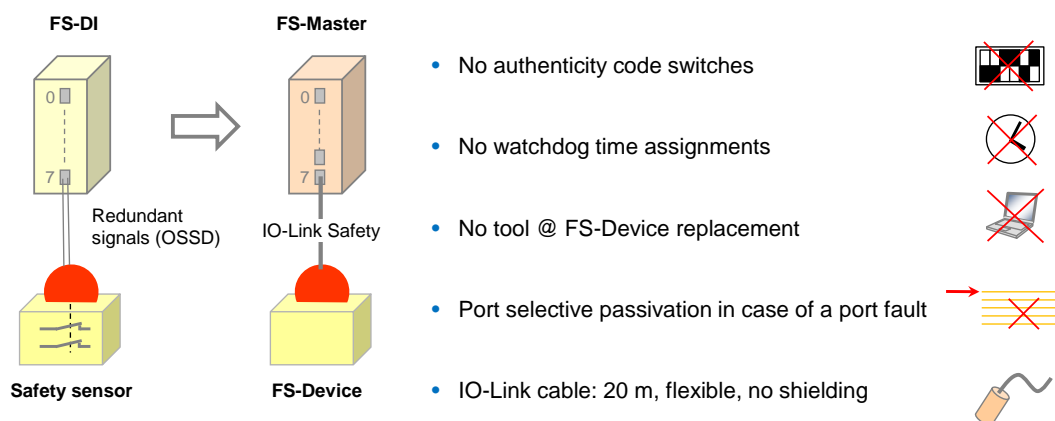
424 assign a *watchdog time*;

425 use any software tool in case of *FS-Device replacement*.

426 Authenticity is guaranteed through checking of the correct FS-Device to the assigned FS-  
 427 Master Port during commissioning similar to FS-DI modules. However, IO-Link Safety  
 428 provides means to discover any incorrect plugging.

429 IO-Link Safety uses a watchdog timer for the transmission of safety data in time (Timeliness).  
 430 The system is able to calculate the required watchdog time automatically due to the point-to-  
 431 point nature of the transmission.

432 FS-Device replacement without tools can be achieved using the original IO-Link Data Storage  
 433 mechanism.



434

435

**Figure 7 – Minimized paradigm shift from FS-DI to FS-Master**

436 The FS-Master supports *port selective passivation* in case of a port fault and *signal granular*  
 437 *passivation* in case of a channel fault within for example a remote I/O terminal ("Hub")  
 438 connected to an FS-Master Port.

439 Cables are the same as with IO-Link, i.e. unshielded with a maximum of 20 m. However, due  
 440 to the higher permitted power supply current of 1000 mA per Port, the overall loop resistance  
 441  $RL_{\text{eff}}$  can only be 1,2 Ohm (see Table 9).

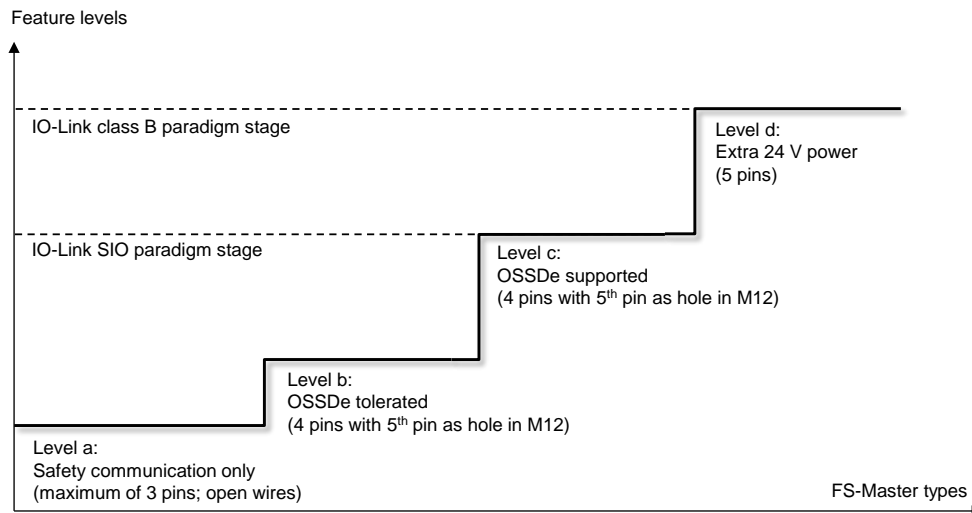
442 NOTE Compliance to AIDA rules requires cable color to be any except yellow. However, the connector color shall  
 443 be yellow (RAL 1004).

444

#### 445 4.1.4 Following the IO-Link paradigm (SIO vs. OSSDe)

446 Standard IO-Link supports a port type A (4 pin) without extra power supply and a port type B  
 447 (5 pin) with extra 24 V power supply (see [1] or [2]). IO-Link Safety takes care of several  
 448 specification levels "a" to "d" (see Figure 8). The number of pins refers to the possible FS-  
 449 Master pins.



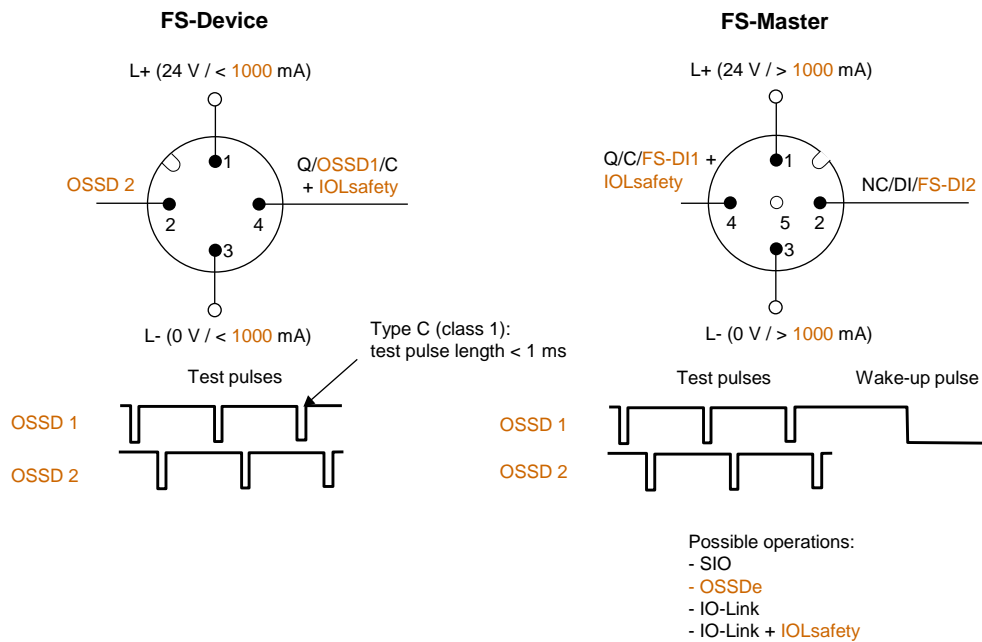


450

451

**Figure 8 – FS-Master types and feature levels**

452 The original pin layouts of IO-Link for port class A are shown in Figure 9 together with the  
 453 extensions for level "a" through "c". Table 1 shows the details of these levels.



454

455

**Figure 9 – Original pin layout of IO-Link (port class A)**

456 Level "a" provides communication only (Pin 1, 3, and 4). That means support for sensor-type  
 457 FS-Devices and actuator-type FS-Devices.

458 Due to the redundant nature of most of the safety device interfaces, IO-Link Safety considers  
 459 pin 2 for the redundant signal path (e.g. OSSD2e) besides pin 4 for the primary signal path  
 460 (e.g. OSSD1e)<sup>3</sup>. Thus, level "b" allows FS-Devices to provide OSSDe outputs besides the IO-  
 461 Link Safety communication capability. They can be parameterized with the help of a "USB-  
 462 Master" and be connected to any FS-DI module in switching mode. When connected to an FS-  
 463 Master, safety and standard non-safety communication is possible.

464 Level "c" corresponds to the SIO level of standard IO-Link Master. In this case, the FS-Master  
 465 supports an OSSDe mode besides communication (Pin 1, 3, 4 and 2).

<sup>3</sup> FS-Devices are based on electronics and not on relays. Thus, the electronic version OSSDe is considered.

466 Table 1 shows the pin layout and possible operational modes for the feature levels "a" to "c"  
 467 of the port class A FS-Device and FS-Master.

468 **Table 1 – Operational modes of feature level "a" to "c" (port class A)**

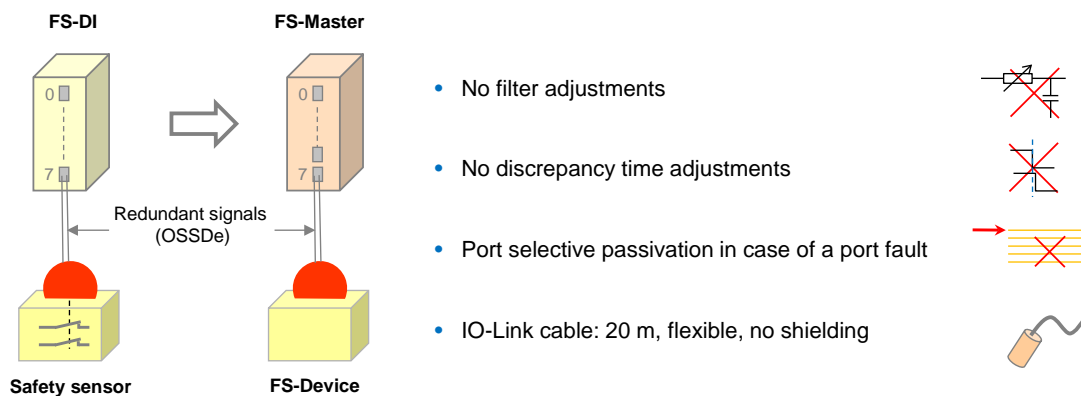
Feature level	FS-Device		FS-Master	
	Pin 2	Pin 4	Pin 2	Pin 4
"a"	- NC, DI, DO	- DI, DO - IO-Link - IO-Link + IOL-S	- NC, DI, DO	- DI, DO - IO-Link - IO-Link + IOL-S
"b"	- NC, DI, DO - OSSD2e	- DI, DO - OSSD1e - IO-Link - IO-Link + IOL-S	- NC, DI, DO	- DI, DO - IO-Link - IO-Link + IOL-S
"c"	- NC, DI, DO - OSSD2e	- DI, DO - OSSD1e - IO-Link - IO-Link + IOL-S	- NC, DI, DO - FS-DI	- DI, DO - FS-DI - IO-Link - IO-Link + IOL-S

Key IOL-S = IO-Link Safety

469

470 Figure 10 shows the optimized OSSDe commissioning with FS-Masters:

- 471 • No filter adjustments due to fixed maximum test pulse length of 1 ms according to type C  
 472 and class 1 in [12], and
- 473 • No discrepancy time adjustments due to fixed maximum discrepancy.



474

475 **Figure 10 – Optimized OSSDe commissioning with FS-Master**

476 **4.1.5 Port class B (Classic and Combi)**

477 The original strategy for a port class B provides for an extra 24 V power supply for actuators  
 478 supplementing the main 24 V power supply of IO-Link (see [1]). This extra power supply was  
 479 already considered in external functional safety concepts. According to these concepts, it is  
 480 possible to switch off the extra power supply via FSCP controls and thus de-energize the  
 481 actuator [11]. Annex J specifies details for this "classic" approach.

482 The new strategy suggests incorporating the P24- and N24-safety switches into the FS-  
 483 Master port and controlling them via signals within the FSCP message or by local safety  
 484 controls. The required technology corresponds to level "d" in Figure 8.

485 It is intended to specify the additional port electronics and control features in a later version of  
 486 this document.

487 Figure 11 shows the pin layout, signal, and power supply assignment as well as the internal  
 488 switches for L+, P24, and N24.



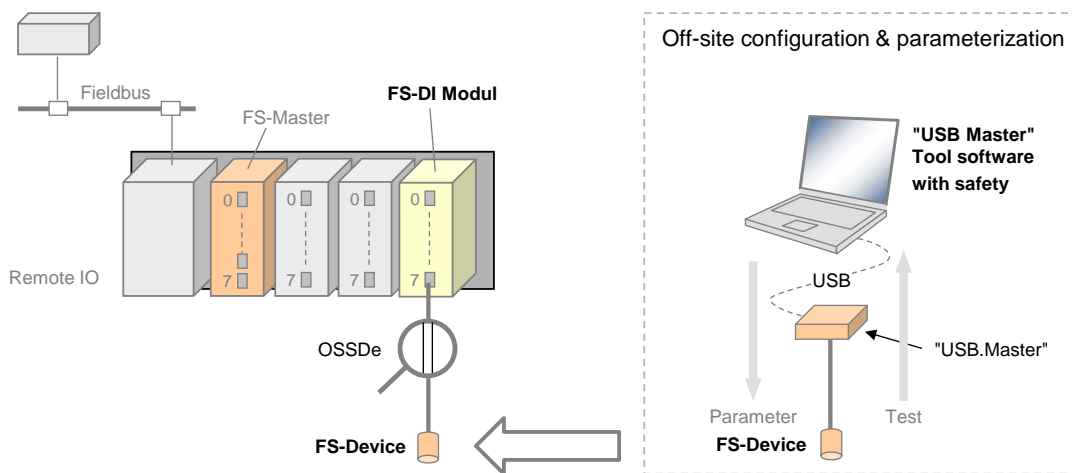
489

490

**Figure 11 – Level "d" of an FS-Master (Combi – class B)**

**4.1.6 "USB-Master" with safety parameterization**

492 It is possible to use upgraded "USB-Masters" for off-site configuration, parameterization and  
 493 test as shown in Figure 12. Due to functional safety requirements, it will be necessary to  
 494 extend the Master-Tool software for the functional safe configuration and parameterization of  
 495 the FS-Device technology (FST-Parameters).



496

497

**Figure 12 – Off-site configuration and parameterization**

498 Table 2 shows the device types that can be supported by such a "USB-Master".

**4.1.7 Interoperability matrix of safety devices**

500 Table 2 provides an overview of typical safety sensors and actuators and their interoperability  
 501 with FS-Masters of different feature levels, a "USB-Master" upgraded to safety parameteri-  
 502 zation, and conventional FS-DI modules connected to FSCPs.

503

**Table 2 – Interoperability matrix of safety devices**

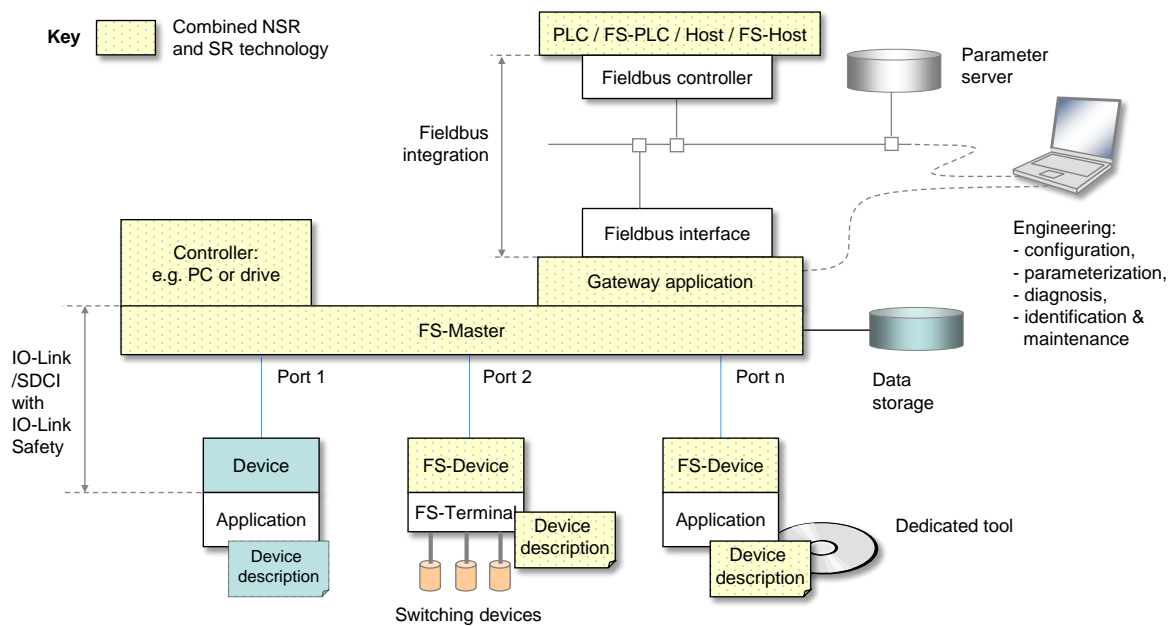
Device type	FS-Master			"USB-Master" with safety parameterization	FS-DI module (FSCP)
	Communi- cation "a"	OSSDe tolerated "b"	OSSDe supported "c"		
Sensor with OSSDe <sup>a</sup>	-	-	OSSDe	-	OSSDe
Sensor with OSSDe and IO-Link	-	-	OSSDe	IO-Link <sup>b</sup>	OSSDe
Sensor with OSSDe and IOL-S	IOL-S	IOL-S	OSSDe or IOL-S	IO-Link	OSSDe
Sensor with IOL-S communication only, e.g. light curtain	IOL-S	IOL-S	IOL-S	IO-Link	-
Sensor with OSSDm, e.g. E-Stop	-	-	-	-	OSSDm

Device type	FS-Master			"USB-Master" with safety parameterization	FS-DI module (FSCP)
	Communication "a"	OSSDe tolerated "b"	OSSDe supported "c"		
Actuator with IOL-S, e.g. 400 V power drive, low voltage switch gear	IOL-S	IOL-S	IOL-S	IO-Link	-
Key IOL-S = IO-Link Safety including non-safety a Pin layout according to [14]. b Pin layout may differ			USB = Universal Serial Bus, currently the most common interface amongst possible others for offsite parameterization tools due to fast communication combined with power supply		

504

505 **4.2 Positioning within the automation hierarchy**

506 Figure 13 shows the positioning of IO-Link Safety within the automation hierarchy.



507

508 **Figure 13 – IO-Link Safety within the automation hierarchy**

509 Classic safety is relay based and thus seemed to be straightforward, easily manageable, and  
 510 reliable. However, the same criteria that led to the success of fieldbuses, led to the success of  
 511 functional safety communication profiles (FSCP) on top of the fieldbuses also: reduced wiring,  
 512 variable parameterization, detailed diagnosis, and more flexibility. IO-Link is the perfect  
 513 complement to the fieldbus communication and bridges the gap to the lowest cost sensors  
 514 and actuators. It not only provides communication, but power supply on the same flexible and  
 515 unshielded cable. One type of sensor can be used in the traditional switching mode or in the  
 516 coded switching mode (communication). IO-Link Safety follows exactly this paradigm.

517 It aims for two main application areas. One is building up safety functions across the IO-Link  
 518 Safety communications and the functional safety communications across fieldbuses. The  
 519 other builds up safety functions "locally" between a safety controller and safety  
 520 sensors/actuators using IO-Link Safety communication.

521 IO-Link Safety allows for building up power saving FS-Devices ("green-line"), for self-testing  
 522 safety sensors in order to avoid yearly testing, for the reduction of interface types (e.g. 0 to  
 523 10 V, 4 to 20 mA, etc.), and for robust and reliable transmission of safety information.

524 Last but not least it is a precondition for new automation concepts such as Industry 4.0 or the  
 525 Internet-of-Things (IoT).

### 526 **4.3 Wiring, connectors, and power supply**

527 Port class A types (3 to 4 wires): Cables and connectors as specified in [1] for Class A can be  
528 used for IO-Link Safety also. However, due to the higher permitted power supply current of up  
529 to 1000 mA per Port, the overall loop resistance  $RL_{\text{eff}}$  can only be 1,2 Ohm. No shielding is  
530 required.

531 Port class B types (5 wires): Cable, wire gauges, shielding, maximum switched currents,  
532 interference, signal levels, etc. are not specified within this document.

### 533 **4.4 Relationship to IO-Link**

534 The IO-Link communication and its SIO mode are used as the base vehicle ("black channel")  
535 for IO-Link Safety. Besides IO-Link Safety, any FS-Master Port can be configured for standard  
536 IO-Link operation also.

537 The independent signal inputs of the SIO mode on Pin 2 and Pin 4 are scanned by an FS-  
538 Master simultaneously to achieve an OSSDe interface. The result is propagated to the upper  
539 level safety system as one safety signal. A new Safety Layer Manager supports this feature.

540 Another new Port configuration mode enables the IO-Link Safety communication. Standard  
541 state machines are slightly extended to support

- 542 • detection of a Ready pulse from the FS-Device on Pin 4
- 543 • power supply (Pin 1) switching OFF/ON in case an FS-Device missed the Wake-up  
544 sequence and started its OSSDe operation
- 545 • transmission of functional safety protocol parameters (FSP) during PREOPERATE from  
546 FS-Master to the FS-Device
- 547 • activation of the IO-Link safety communication layer (SCL)
- 548 • activation of the FS Process Data Exchange within the Safety Layer Manager

549

### 550 **4.5 Communication features and interfaces**

551 FS Process Data from and to an FS-Device are always packed into a safety code envelop  
552 consisting of a safety PDU counter, protocol Control/Status information, and a 16/32 bit CRC  
553 signature. The minimum safety PDU size is 3 octets in case of no FS Process Data. IO-Link  
554 Safety uses M-Sequence TYPE\_2\_V.

555 Only a subset of the IO-Link data types is permitted: Boolean (packed as record),  
556 IntegerT(16), and IntegerT(32).

557 Parameterization within the domain of safety for machinery requires a "Dedicated Tool" per  
558 FS-Device or FS-Device family. The Device Tool Interface (DTI) based on proven technology  
559 has been chosen for the links between FS-Master Tool, FS-Device, and its "Dedicated Tool".  
560 The FS-Master Tool shall provide communication means for a "Dedicated Tool" to allow for  
561 the transmission of safety technology parameters (FST parameters) to and from an FS-  
562 Device. The "Dedicated Tool" and the FS-Device are both responsible for sufficient means to  
563 secure the transmitted data, for example via CRC signature or read-back.

### 564 **4.6 Parameterization**

565 IO-Link Safety comprises a three-tier concept. The first tier is IODD based and contains all  
566 basic non-safety parameters for a Device or FS-Device.

567 The second tier requires an extension of the IODD for the fixed set of protocol parameters  
568 (FSP). These parameters are safety-related and secured via CRC signature against  
569 unintended changes of the IODD file. The interpreter of the FS-Master Tool provides a safety-  
570 related extension for the handling of the FSP parameters. Usually, the FS-Master Tool is able  
571 to determine and suggest the FSP parameter assignments (instance values) automatically  
572 and thus relieves the user from assigning these values initially. He can check the plausibility  
573 of the values and modify them if required.

574 The third tier deals with technology specific safety parameters (FST) of an FS-Device. IO-Link  
575 Safety classifies two types of FS-Devices. Type "basic" requires only a few orthogonal FST  
576 parameters, whereas type "complex" can have a number of FST parameters requiring  
577 business rules and verification or validation wizards. Usually, the latter comes already with  
578 existing PC software ("Dedicated Tool") used for several functional safety communication  
579 profiles for fieldbuses.

580 The FST parameters for type "basic" are coded as any non-safety parameter within the IODD.  
581 They can be modified and downloaded to the FS-Device as usual. However, a diverse second  
582 path allows for checking these assignments for correctness. At the end of a parameterization  
583 session, the user launches a safety-related "Dedicated Tool" (FS-IOPD) for the calculation of  
584 a CRC signature across all FST instance values provided by the FS-Master Tool.

585 For both types of FS-Devices, the "Dedicated Tool" presents a CRC signature, which the user  
586 can copy into one of the FSP parameters. Upon reception of the FSP parameters at start-up,  
587 the FS-Device calculates a CRC signature across the locally stored instance values and  
588 compares it with the received CRC signature.

589 This method is used also for the check after using the IO-Link Data Storage mechanism.

#### 590 **4.7 Role of FS-Master and FS-Gateway**

591 The role of the FS-Master is extended to safe monitoring of Process Data, transferred to and  
592 from FS-Devices with respect to timeliness, authenticity, and data integrity according to IEC  
593 61784-3. Concerning authenticity, it uses the authenticity code assigned to the FS-Master by  
594 the upper level FSCP system and the port number. This prevents from local port related mis-  
595 connections and misconnections whenever several FS-Masters are located side by side.

596 An FS-Master can be equipped by a safety controller, for example according to IEC 61131-6,  
597 or vice versa, and thus build-up a stand-alone safety system with its own complete safety  
598 functions.

599 With the help of an FS-Gateway in conjunction with the FS-Master, safety functions can be  
600 build-up across the upper level FSCP system using the safety sensors and actuators  
601 connected to the FS-Master.

#### 602 **4.8 Mapping to upper level systems**

603 Specification of the mapping to an upper level FSCP system is the responsibility of the  
604 particular fieldbus organization. IO-Link Safety made provisions to meet the majority of  
605 FSCPs for example via reduced number of data types, descriptions of safety IO data, port  
606 selective passivation, and operator acknowledgment signals to prevent from automatic restart  
607 of machines.

#### 608 **4.9 Structure of the document**

609 The structure of this document complies mostly with the structure of [1]. Clause 5 specifies  
610 the extensions to the Physical Layer (PL), mainly the OSSDe issues, the wake-up behavior,  
611 and the additional Port modes. Extensions to SIO are specified in clause 6, those to data link  
612 layer (DL) in clause 7, those to system management (SM) in clause 8, those to the FS-Device  
613 in clause 9, and those to the FS-Master in clause 10.

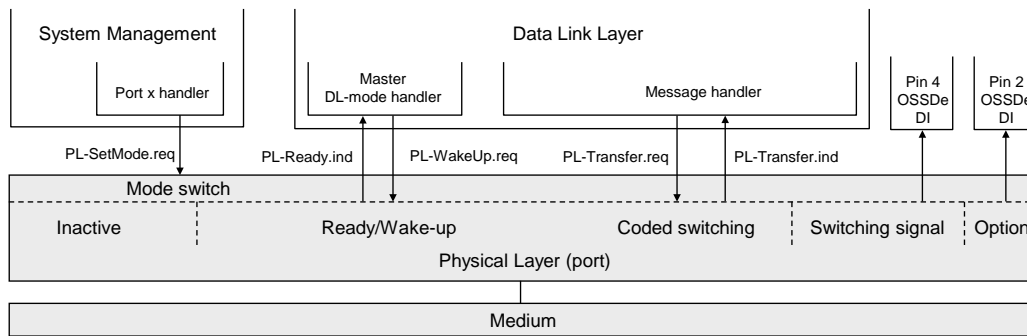
614 The core part of this document is the safety communication layer (SCL) in clause 11. It  
615 comprises the SCL services, protocol, state machines, and management. In addition it deals  
616 with integrity measures, with protocol (FSP) and technology (FST) parameters, with the  
617 integration of "Dedicated Tools" via Tool Calling Interface technology, with port selective  
618 passivation, and with SCL diagnosis. Clause 12 complements the core part by functional  
619 safety processing either through mapping to the upper level system or local.

620 Extensions to parameters and commands are specified in Annex A, those to EventCodes in  
621 Annex B, and those to data types in Annex C. CRC polynomial issues are presented in  
622 Annex D, the IODD aspects in Annex E, the Device Tool Interface technology in Annex F,  
623 main scenarios in Annex G, and the system requirements in Annex H. Assessment issues are  
624 described in Annex I. Annex J specifies in more detail the "classic" port B and Annex K test  
625 issues.

626 **5 Extensions to the Physical Layer (PL)**

627 **5.1 Overview**

628 Figure 14 shows the adapted physical layer of an FS-Master (class A).

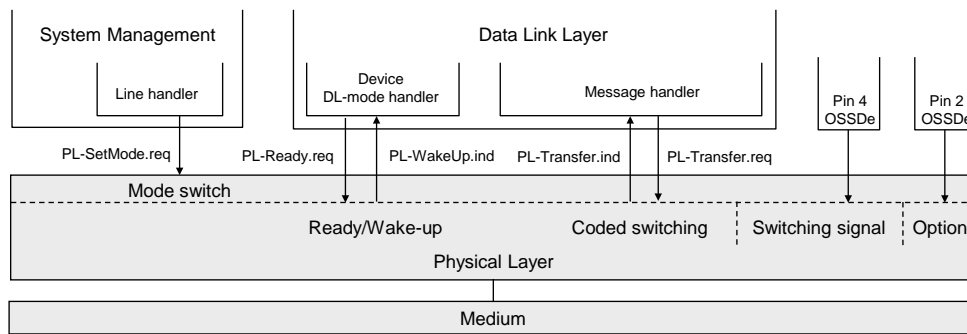


629

630 **Figure 14 – The IO-Link physical layer of an FS-Master (class A)**

631 Pin 2 and 4 shall be scanned simultaneously to achieve OSSDe functionality. The FS-Master  
632 shall scan the C/Q line for the Ready signal of the FS-Device.

633 Figure 15 shows the adapted physical layer of an FS-Device (class A).



634

635 **Figure 15 – The IO-Link physical layer of an FS-Device (class A)**

636 Pin 2 and 4 carry the OSSDe signals. The FS-Device shall set the Ready signal after internal  
637 safety testing.

638 **5.2 Extensions to PL services**

639 **5.2.1 PL\_SetMode**

640 The PL-SetMode service is extended by the additional TargetMode "OSSDe" (C/Q line and I/Q  
641 line in digital input mode).

642 **5.2.2 PL\_Ready**

643 The PL-Ready service initiates or indicates a Ready signal on the C/Q line. Whenever the FS-  
644 Device finished its internal safety-related hardware and software tests, it sets this signal. The  
645 FS-Master polls this signal and upon reception initiates the wake-up sequence. This  
646 unconfirmed service has no parameters. The service primitives are listed in Table 3.

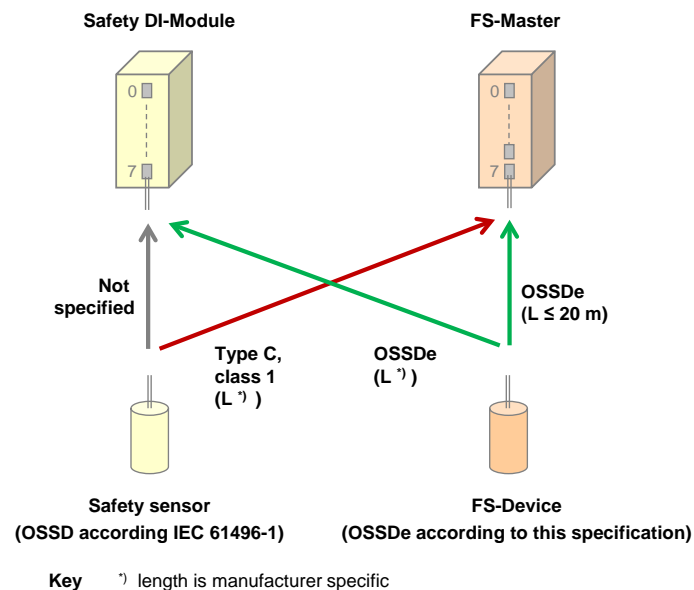
647 **Table 3 – PL\_Ready**

Parameter name	.req	.ind
<none>		

648

649 **5.3 Transmitter/receiver**650 **5.3.1 Assumptions for the expansion to OSSDe**

651 Figure 16 shows the cross compatibility between OSSD based safety sensors and OSSDe  
 652 based FS-Devices.



653

654

**Figure 16 – Cross compatibility OSSD and OSSDe**

655 The following assumptions are the basis for the design of the OSSDe expansion:

- 656
- 657 • The SIO paradigm of IO-Link shall apply for IO-Link Safety in order to allow manufacturers the combined function of OSSDe and IO-Link Safety communication within one FS-Device.
  - 658 • A Port on the FS-Master (with "FS-DI" according to Figure 9) shall have fixed configurations as either IO-Link Safety or OSSDe interface with no or minor adjustments in respect to addressing, watchdog times, discrepancy times, or filter times.
  - 659
  - 660
  - 661 • In order to allow OSSD based sensors on the market to be connected to the FS-Master, the FS-DI interface shall support the necessary adjustments for Type "C", class "1" devices according to [12].
  - 662
  - 663
  - 664 • The OSSDe interface shall only be designed as input for the FS-Master port (safety sensors, Class A connectors). Most actuators are supplied by three-phase alternating current such as power drives, low voltage switch gears, motor starters, etc.
  - 665
  - 666
  - 667 • Actuators such as valves with diversity and relays shall be supported by FS-Master with Ports "level d" (see clause 6).
  - 668

669 **5.3.2 OSSDe specifics**670 **5.3.2.1 General**

671 Similar to the SIO approach, FS-Master according to level "c" support connectivity to existing functional safety devices with OSSDe. OSSDe in this document is defined as two outputs with signals that are both switching in equivalent manner as opposed to antivalent manner, where one signal is normally off and the other normally on (OSSDm).

672

673

674

675 The FS-Master port is designed to achieve a maximum of possible compatibility to existing OSSD devices using interface type C, class 1 defined in [12].

676

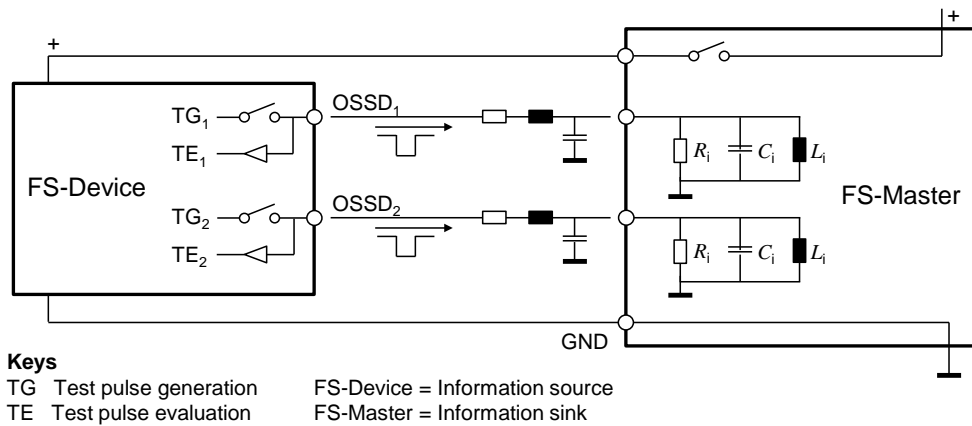
677 Figure 17 shows a corresponding reference model from [12], adapted to IO-Link Safety. The information-"source" on the left corresponds for example to a sensor device, whereas the information-"sink" on the right side represents an input of the FS-Master Port class A. Power is supplied by the sink.

678

679

680





681

682

**Figure 17 – Principle OSSDe function**

683 The worst case values for the line resistance and capacitance are defined in Table 9. In case  
 684 of IO-Link Safety, line inductance is negligible at a length of 20 m. The design of the FS-  
 685 Master Port shall ensure values for  $R_i$ ,  $C_i$ , and  $L_i$  guaranteeing proper signal behavior  
 686 according to Table 8.

687 Table 4 shows the OSSD states and conditions defined in IEC 61496-1:2012.

688

**Table 4 – OSSD states and conditions**

State	Cause	Voltage range	Current
OFF	Demand	- 3 V to + 2 V r.m.s (+ 5 V peak)	< 2 mA (leakage) NOTE
ON	No demand	+ 11 V to + 30 V	> 6 mA
NOTE IEC 61131-9 permits 5 mA for the voltage range of 5 V to 15 V			

689

690 *OFF state:*

691 For this interface, the OFF state is defined as the "powerless" state, where voltage and  
 692 current of at least one OSSDe shall be within (voltage) and below (current) defined limits (see  
 693 Table 4). If the safety function is demanded, or the source (the device) detects a fault, the  
 694 OSSDe signals shall go to the OFF state. Antivalent voltage levels, so-called discrepancy, on  
 695 both OSSDe outputs of the device shall be treated as OFF state. The duration of this state  
 696 shall be within a specified discrepancy tolerance time. If the tolerance time is exceeded the  
 697 port is considered to be faulty.

698 *ON state:*

699 For this interface, the ON state is defined as the "powered" state, where voltage and current  
 700 on both OSSDe outputs shall be within the voltage range and above defined current limits,  
 701 when sinked by IEC 61131-2 inputs (see Table 4). Test pulses within specified ranges in  
 702 voltage levels, durations and intervals are permitted. Antivalent voltage levels, so-called  
 703 discrepancy, on both OSSDe outputs of the device shall be treated as OFF state.

704 **5.3.2.2 Detection of cross connection faults**

705 Tests are required for the detection of the cross connection faults specified in IEC 61496-1  
 706 and shown in Table 5.

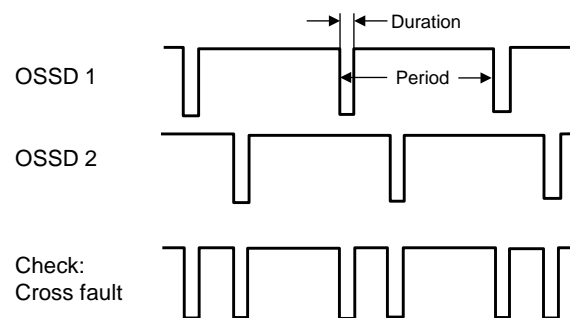
707

**Table 5 – Cross connection faults**

Fault	Diagnostics
Short circuit between OSSD 1 and OSSD 2	Test pulses (runtime diagnosis)

Fault	Diagnostics
Short circuit between OSSD 1 or OSSD 2 and V+	Test pulses (runtime diagnosis)
Short circuit between OSSD 1 or OSSD 2 and V-	Test pulses (runtime diagnosis)
Open circuit of the power supply return cable (V-)	Type test, maximum leakage current
Open circuit of the functional earth (bonding) conductor	Type test, no functional earth
Open circuit of the screen of screened cable	Not required due to no shielding
Incorrect wiring	Discrete wiring only, organizational issue (test during commissioning)

708 The means for detecting short circuits are test pulses at runtime. The means for testing the  
 709 behavior in case of open circuits is the type test during the assessment. Figure 18 shows the  
 710 test pulses approach for the detection of cross connection faults.



711

712 **Figure 18 – Test pulses to detect cross connection faults**

713 Three methods of testing (intervals) are commonly used:

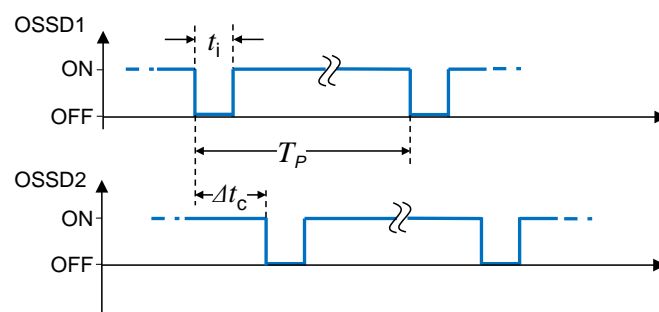
- 714 • Test pulses at each program cycle of the safety device (dependency on configuration)
- 715 • Test pulses at fixed times
- 716 • Test pulses after any commutation OFF → ON

717

### 718 5.3.2.3 FS-Device OSSDe output testing

719 The test pulses of this interface type for testing the transmission line are created and also  
 720 evaluated on the safety device side. This way the source is able to diagnose the correct  
 721 functioning of the output stage. In case of any detected error both OSSDe outputs shall be  
 722 switched to the safe state (Lock-out condition = OFF).

723 The test pulses are created in a periodic manner on both OSSD lines. In order to detect short  
 724 circuits between the lines or between the lines and power-supply, the test pulses of both lines  
 725 can be time-shifted to each other (see Figure 19).



726

727

728 **Figure 19 – OSSD timings**

729 The following parameters specify the characteristics of the test pulses on the OSSD interface:

- 729 • Period of test pulses ( $T_P$ )

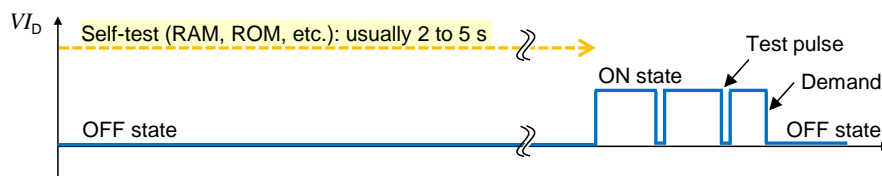
- 730 • Duration of test pulses ( $t_i$ )
- 731 • Time-shift between test pulses of both channels ( $\Delta t_c$ )

732 The characteristics of test pulses are classified in [12]. FS-Devices shall meet type C and  
733 class 1 requirements with a test pulse length  $t_i \leq 1000 \mu\text{s}$  (see Table 7).

### 734 5.3.3 Start-up of an FS-Device (Ready pulse)

735 Figure 20 shows the typical start-up sequence of an OSSD sensor without IO-Link Safety  
736 capability. During self-test for functional safety, both OSSD signals shall be OFF. When  
737 finished, the sensor switches to ON and starts test pulses. A demand causes the sensor to  
738 switch OFF. A fault causes the sensor to switch to lock-out condition (OFF) and to remain in  
739 this state until repair.

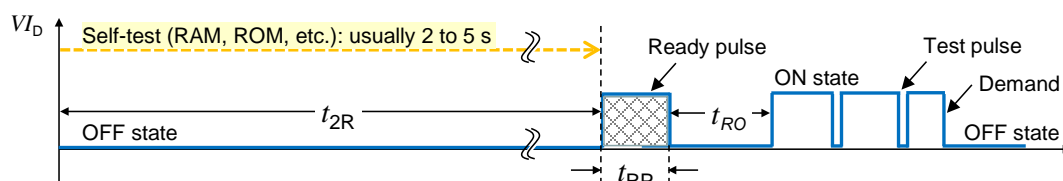
740 NOTE For simplicity, the figure shows only one OSSD channel.



741

742 **Figure 20 – Typical start-up of an OSSD sensor**

743 Figure 21 shows the start-up of an FS-Device with OSSDe capability connected to a classic  
744 FS-DI module.



745

746 **Figure 21 – Start-up of an FS-Device**

747 In contrast to a classic sensor, the FS-Device provides only on pin 4 (see Figure 9) a so-  
748 called Ready-pulse of a certain length to indicate the FS-Master its readiness after self-  
749 testing. After a certain recovery time, the FS-Device switches to ON and starts test pulses like  
750 a classic safety sensor.

751 Timings and Wake-up behavior of the FS-Device are specified in 5.7.

### 752 5.3.4 Electric characteristics of a receiver in FS-Device and FS-Master

753 The voltage range and switching threshold definitions are the same for FS-Master and FS-  
754 Device since FS-Master ports shall be able to operate with non-safety IO-Link Devices. The  
755 definitions in Table 6 apply.

756 **Table 6 – Electric characteristics of a receiver**

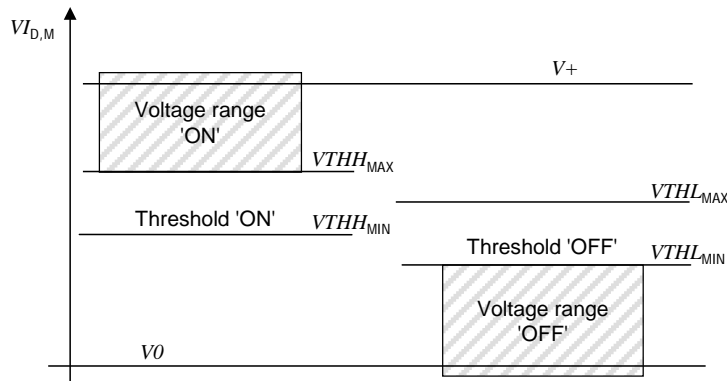
Property	Designation	Minimum	Typical	Maximum	Unit	Remark
$V_{THH_{D,M}}$	Input threshold 'ON'	10,5	n/a	13	V	See NOTE 1
$V_{THL_{D,M}}$	Input threshold 'OFF'	8	n/a	11,5	V	See NOTE 1
$V_{HYS_{D,M}}$	Hysteresis between input thresholds 'ON' and 'OFF'	0	n/a	n/a	V	Shall not be negative See NOTE 2
$V_{IL_{D,M}}$	Permissible voltage range 'OFF'	$V_{0_{D,M}} - 1,0$	n/a	n/a	V	With reference to relevant negative

Property	Designation	Minimum	Typical	Maximum	Unit	Remark
						supply voltage
$V_{IH_{D,M}}$	Permissible voltage range 'ON'	n/a	n/a	$V_{+_{D,M}} + 1,0$	V	With reference to relevant positive supply voltage.

NOTE 1 Thresholds are compatible with the definitions of type 1 digital inputs in IEC 61131-2.  
 NOTE 2 Hysteresis voltage  $V_{HYS} = V_{THH} - V_{THL}$

757 Figure 22 demonstrates the switching thresholds for the detection of OFF and ON signals.

758 NOTE 'OFF' and 'ON' correspond to 'L' (Low) and 'H' (High) in [1] and [2].



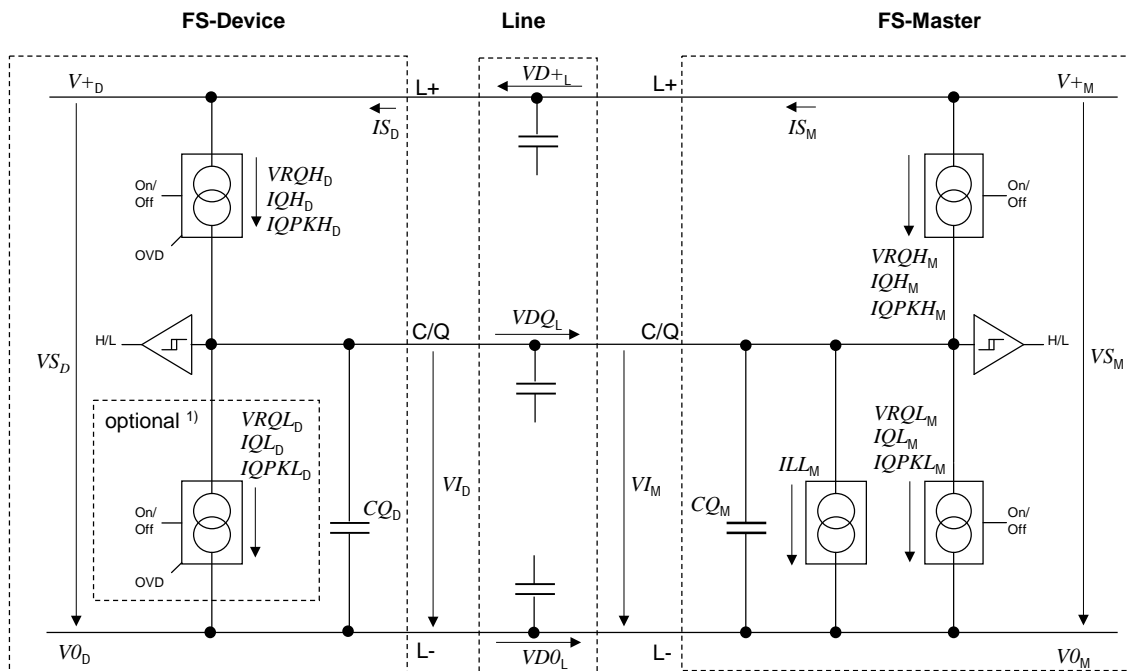
759

760 **Figure 22 – Switching thresholds for FS-Device and FS-Master receivers**

761 The FS-Master ignores pulses below 11 V (max. 15 mA or max. 30 mA) that are shorter than  
 762 1 ms.

763 **5.4 Electric and dynamic characteristics of an FS-Device**

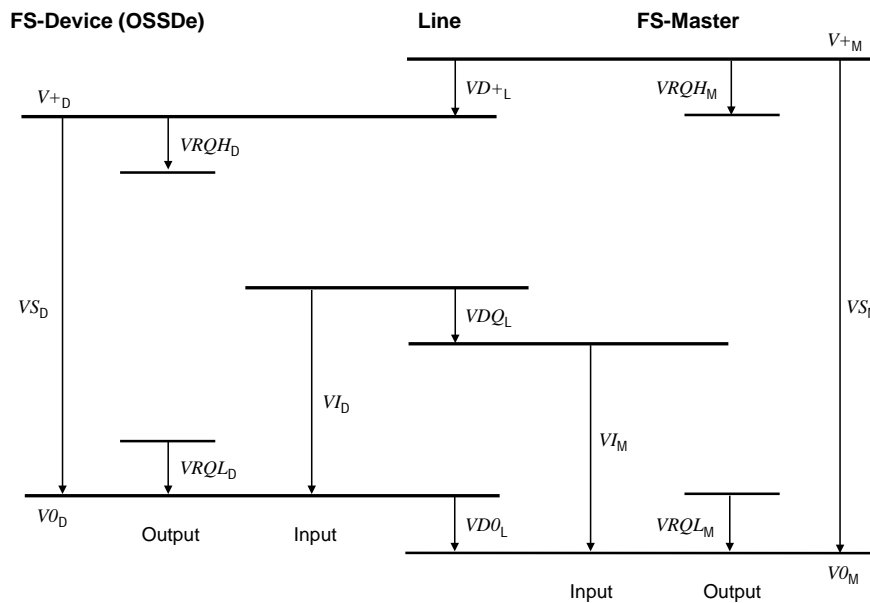
764 In general, the specified values and ranges of [1] or [2] apply (see Figure 23).



765

766 **Figure 23 – Reference schematics (one OSSDe channel)**

767 The subsequent illustrations and parameter tables refer to the voltage level definitions in  
 768 Figure 24.



769

770

**Figure 24 – Voltage level definitions**

771 The electric and dynamic parameters for the OSSDe interface of an FS-Device are specified  
772 in Table 7.

773

**Table 7 – Electric and dynamic characteristics of the FS-Device (OSSDe)**

Property	Designation	Minimum	Typical	Maximum	Unit	Remark
$V_{SD}$	Supply voltage	18	24	30	V	See Figure 24
$\Delta V_{SD}$	Ripple	n/a	n/a	1,3	V <sub>pp</sub>	Peak-to-peak absolute value limits shall not be exceeded. $f_{ripple} =$ DC to 100 kHz
$I_{SD}$	Supply current	n/a	n/a	1000	mA	See 5.9
$Q_{ISD}$	Power-up consumption	n/a	n/a	70	mAs	See equation (1) and associated text
$VRQH_D$	Residual voltage 'ON'	n/a	n/a	3	V	Voltage drop compared with $V_{+D}$ (IEC 60947-5-2)
$VRQL_D$	Residual voltage 'OFF'	n/a	n/a	3	V	Voltage drop compared with $V_{0D}$ NOTE 1
$I_{QH_D}$	DC driver current P-switching output ('ON' state)	50	n/a	minimum ( $I_{QPKL_M}$ )	mA	Minimum value due to fallback to digital input in accordance with IEC 61131-2, type 2
$I_{QL_D}$	DC driver current N-switching output ('ON' state)	0	n/a	minimum ( $I_{QPKH_M}$ )	mA	Only for push-pull output stages
$I_{QQ_D}$	Quiescent current to $V_{0D}$ ('OFF' state)	0	n/a	15	mA	Pull-down or residual current with deactivated output driver stages
$C_Q$	Input capacitance	0	n/a	1,0	nF	Effective capacitance between C/Q and L+ or L- of Device in receive state. See [1] for constraints on transmission rates.

Property	Designation	Minimum	Typical	Maximum	Unit	Remark
$t_{2R}$	Time to Ready-pulse	n/a	n/a	5	s	See Figure 21; Parameter in IODD
$t_{RP}$	Duration of Ready pulse	500	n/a	1000	$\mu$ s	See Figure 21
$t_{RW}$	End of Ready pulse to ready for Wake-up	n/a	n/a	50	$\mu$ s	See Figure 27 – Start-up of an FS-Device
$t_{RO}$	End of Ready pulse to OSSD mode	700	n/a	Data sheet	$\mu$ s	See Figure 21
$T_P$	Period of test pulses	10	n/a	Data sheet	ms	See [12] and Figure 19
$t_i$	Test pulse duration	n/a	n/a	1000	$\mu$ s	See Figure 19.
$t_{dis}$	Discrepancy time	n/a	n/a	3	ms	Demands may occur during tests
NOTE 1 Pull-down of residual voltage with deactivated high-side output driver stage and activated low-side driver stages (if available e.g. push-pull drivers) with externally limited DC driver current of 50 mA maximum						
NOTE 2 Characteristics in this table assume OSSD type "C", class "1" according to [12] and interface type 1 according to IEC 61131-2						

774

775 It is the responsibility of the FS-Device designer to select appropriate ASICs according to [1]  
776 and/or to provide mitigating circuitry to meet the requirements of IEC 61496-1.

777 The FS-Device shall be able to reach a stable operational state (ready for Wake-up:  $T_{RDL}$ )  
778 while consuming the maximum charge (see equation (1)).

$$QIS_D = ISIR_M \times 50ms + (T_{RDL} - 50ms) \times IS_M \quad (1)$$

779

## 780 5.5 Electric and dynamic characteristics of an FS-Master port (OSSDe)

781 In general, the specified values and ranges of [1] or [2] apply (see Figure 23 and Figure 24).  
782 The definitions in Table 8 are valid for the electrical characteristics of an FS-Master port.

783

**Table 8 – Electric and dynamic characteristics of the Port interface**

Property	Designation	Minimum	Typical	Maximum	Unit	Remark
$V_{SM}$	Supply voltage for FS-Devices	20	24	30	V	See Figure 24
$IS_M$	Supply current for FS-Devices	200	n/a	1000	mA	Rules in 5.9. shall be considered
$ISIR_M$	Current pulse capability for FS-Devices	400	n/a	n/a	mA	See Figure 25
$ILL_M$	Load or discharge current for $0V < VI_M < 5V$ $5V < VI_M < 15V$ $15V < VI_M < 30V$	0	n/a	15	mA	See NOTE 1
		5	n/a	15	mA	
		5	n/a	15	mA	
$VRQH_M$	Residual voltage 'H'	n/a	n/a	3	V	Voltage drop relating to $V_{+M}$ at maximum driver current $IQH_M$

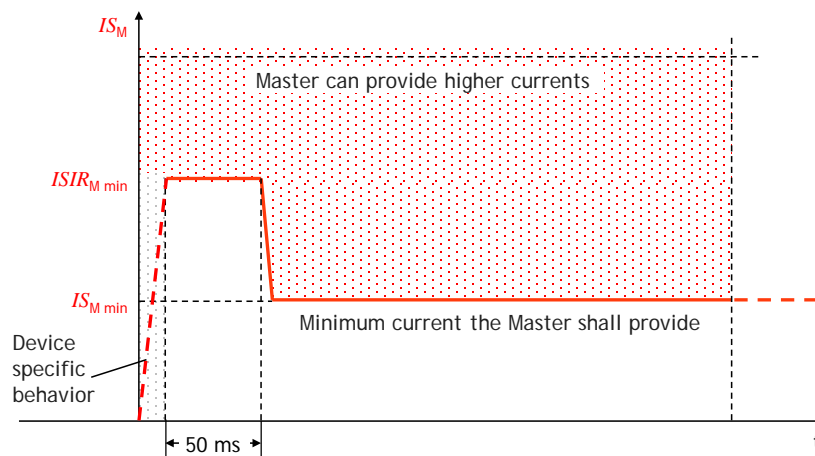
Property	Designation	Minimum	Typical	Maximum	Unit	Remark
$VRQL_M$	Residual voltage 'L'	n/a	n/a	3	V	Voltage drop relating to $V0_M$ at maximum driver current $IQL_M$
$IQH_M$	DC driver current 'H'	100	n/a	n/a	mA	
$IQPKH_M$	Output peak current 'H'	500	n/a	n/a	mA	Absolute value See NOTE 2
$IQL_M$	DC driver current 'L'	100	n/a	n/a	mA	
$IQPKL_M$	Output peak current 'L'	500	n/a	n/a	mA	Absolute value See NOTE 2
$CQ_M$	Input capacitance	n/a	n/a	1,0	nF	$f=0$ MHz to 4 MHz

NOTE 1 Currents are compatible with the definition of type 1 digital inputs in IEC 61131-2. However, for the range  $5\text{ V} < VI_M < 15\text{ V}$ , the minimum current is 5 mA instead of 2 mA in order to achieve short enough slew rates for pure p-switching Devices.

NOTE 2 Wake-up request current (See 5.3.3.3 in [1] or [2]).

784

785 The Master shall provide a charge of at least 20 mAs within the first 50 ms after power-on  
 786 without any overload-shutdown (see Figure 25). After 50 ms the current limitations for  $IS_M$  in  
 787 Table 8 apply.



788

789

**Figure 25 – Charge capability at power-up**

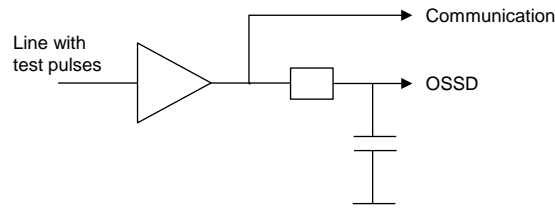
## 790 5.6 FS-Master port FS-DI interface

791 Since OSSD safety sensors can provide different test pulse patterns, the FS-Master Port shall  
 792 have a suitable input filter, or evaluation algorithm. For the sake of EMC considerations, by a  
 793 combination of both can be used. This means, that the time, in which the signal is below  
 794  $U_{Hmin}$  must be less than the maximum allowed test pulse duration.

795 Any state different to both signals "high", except test pulses, shall be interpreted as safe  
 796 state.

797 NOTE Achievable reaction times: IO-Link non safe: min. 600  $\mu$ s, PROFINET: 1 ms, non-synchronized system:  
 798 2 ms

799 The EMC levels shall be taken into account for the layout of an input filter. The  
 800 communication transmission rate 230 kbit/s conflicts with the input filter. Possible conflict  
 801 resolution is shown in Figure 26.



802

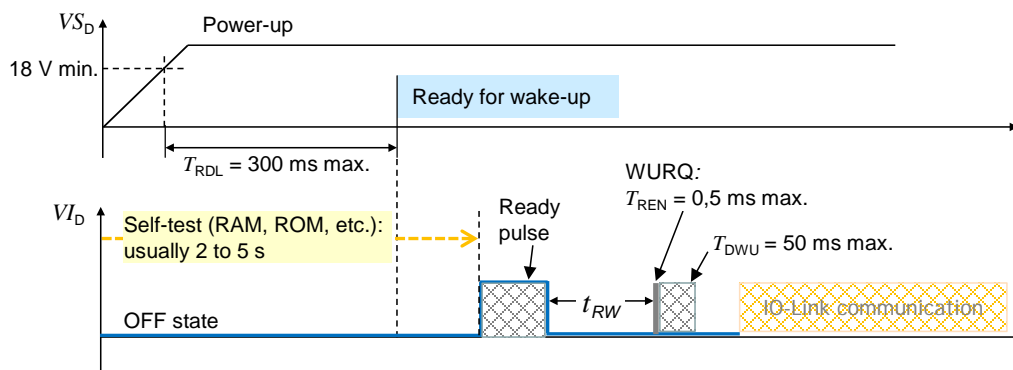
803

**Figure 26 – OSSDe input filter conflict resolution**

804 In general, the specified values and ranges of [1] or [2] apply. Basis is interface type 1 of IEC  
 805 61131-2. Deviating and supplementary electric and dynamic parameters for the FS-DI  
 806 interfaces are specified in Table 8.

807 **5.7 Wake-up coordination**

808 Figure 27 shows the start-up of an FS-Device (see [1] for standard timing definitions). After  
 809 accomplished self-tests, it indicates its readiness for Wake-up through an ON/Ready pulse on  
 810 the C/Q line. If no Wake-up occurs within a defined time frame, it starts with test pulses (see  
 811 Figure 20).



812

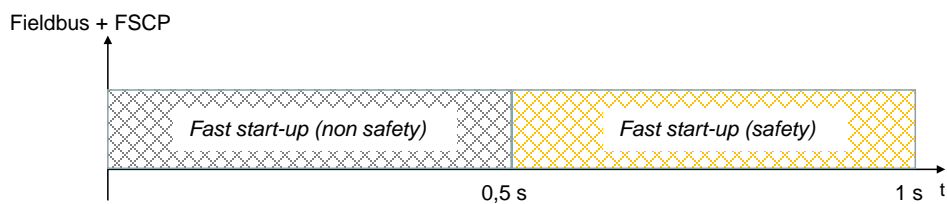
813

**Figure 27 – Start-up of an FS-Device**

814 NOTE Actually some safety light curtain vendors offer activation of functionality if some connection conditions are  
 815 activated during start-up phase (e.g. override)

816 **5.8 Fast start-up**

817 Figure 28 illustrates required fast start-up non-safety and safety timings.



818

819

**Figure 28 – Required fast start-up timings**

820 Current safety devices usually require 2 to 5 seconds for self-testing prior to functional safe  
 821 operation. The Ready-pulse concept allows for easier achievable realizations of these  
 822 requirements.

823 **5.9 Power supply**

824 An FS-Master port shall be able to switch its power supply on and off. This enables the FS-  
 825 Master to restart an FS-Device once it failed to establish communication and started OSSDe  
 826 operation instead.

827 The FS-Master port is the only power supply for IO-Link related parts of the FS-Device. Any  
 828 external power source of the FS-Device shall be totally nonreactive to these parts.



829 FS-Master shall provide all ports with a minimum supply of 200 mA and at least one port with  
 830 a minimum supply of 1000 mA. The FS-Master shall specify the total maximum current  
 831 consumption of all its ports and the derating rules.

832 Higher currents can conflict with the power switching components and cause interference with  
 833 the signal lines. The "ripple" requirement in Table 7 shall be considered. The overall cable  
 834 loop resistance shall be not more than 1,2  $\Omega$  (see Table 8 and Table 9).

## 835 5.10 Medium

### 836 5.10.1 Constraints

837 For the sake of simplicity in technology and commissioning, IO-Link Safety expects a wired  
 838 point-to-point connection or equivalent consistent transmission and powering between FS-  
 839 Master and an FS-Device. No storing elements in between are permitted.

### 840 5.10.2 Connectors

841 Connectors as specified in [1] for Class A are permitted.

### 842 5.10.3 Cable characteristics

843 Table 9 shows the cable characteristics for IO-Link Safety and non-safety Devices, if higher  
 844 power supply currents than 200 mA are applied.

845 **Table 9 – Cable characteristics**

Property	Designation	Minimum	Typical	Maximum	Unit
$L$	Cable length	0	n/a	20	m
$RL_{\text{eff}}$	Overall loop resistance	n/a	n/a	1,2	$\Omega$
$CL_{\text{eff}}$	Effective line capacitance	n/a	n/a	3,0	nF (<1 MHz)

NOTE These characteristics can deviate from the original characteristics defined in [1] or [2].

846

## 847 6 Extensions to SIO

848 SIO is only defined for Pin 4 of the Master/Device port in [1]. OSSDe requires inclusion of  
 849 Pin 2 as specified in clause 5. Configuration can be performed within the Master/Device  
 850 applications layer (see Figure 31 and Figure 35).

## 851 7 Extensions to data link layer (DL)

### 852 7.1 Overview

853 Figure 31 and Figure 35 show the DL building blocks of FS-Device and FS-Master. No new or  
 854 changed services are required. However, both DL-mode handlers are extended by the Ready-  
 855 pulse feature as shown in 7.2 and 7.3.

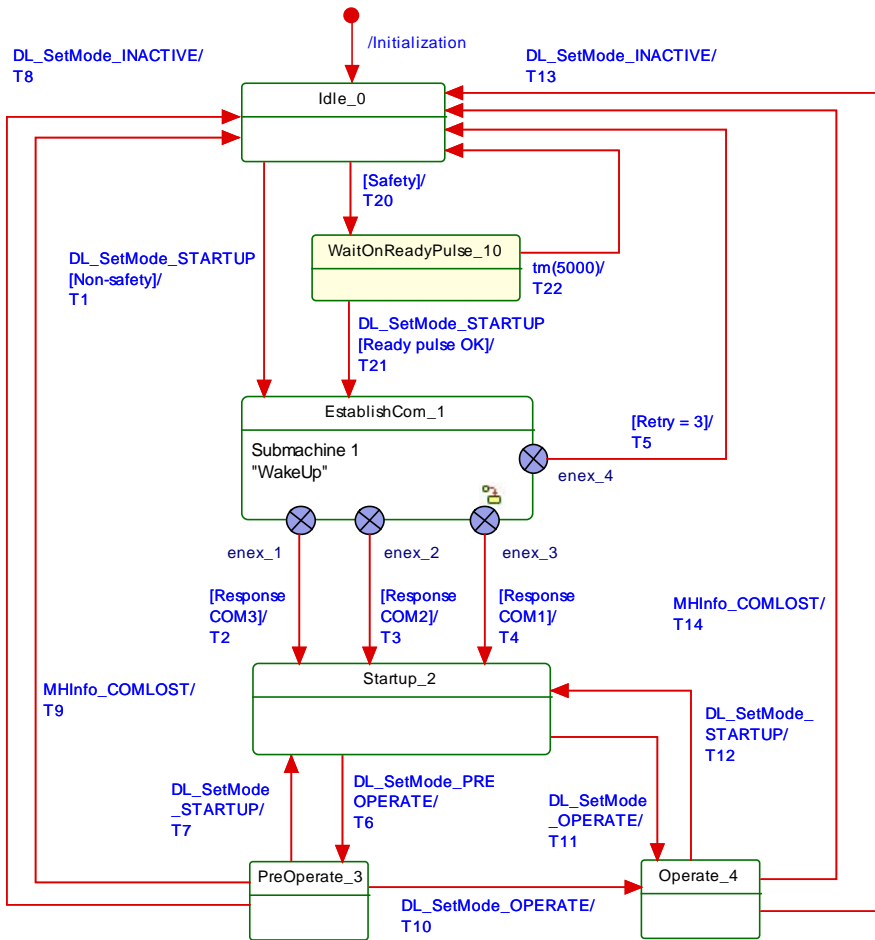
### 856 7.2 State machine of the FS-Master DL-mode handler

857 Figure 29 shows the modifications of the FS-Master DL-mode handler versus the Master DL-  
 858 mode handler in [1].

859 A new state "WaitOnReadyPulse\_10" considers the requirement for the FS-Master to wait on  
 860 the Ready-pulse of an FS-Device (see 5.7) prior to establish communication via  
 861 DL\_SetMode\_STARTUP.

862 The maximum waiting time is  $t_{2R}$  as defined in Table 7. Whenever the time expired, the FS-  
 863 Master shall run a power-OFF/ON cycle for the connected FS-Device in order to initiate a  
 864 retry for another Ready-pulse.

865 The criterion to use the extra path is the guard [safety], which is derived from the new port  
 866 configuration "FS\_PortModes" (see 10.2.2).



867

**Figure 29 – State machine of the FS-Master DL-mode handler**

868

869 Table 10 shows the additional state and transitions as well as internal items considering the  
870 Ready-pulse feature.

**Table 10 – State transition tables of the FS-Master DL-mode handler**

871

STATE NAME		STATE DESCRIPTION	
Idle_0 to SM: Retry_9		See Table 42 in [1]	
WaitOnReadyPulse_10		Waiting on the Ready-pulse from the FS-Device. A timer of 5 s is started.	
TRANSITION	SOURCE STATE	TARGET STATE	ACTION
T1 to T19	*	*	See Table 42 in [1]
T20	0	10	This path is taken only if the new configuration parameter "Safety" has been assigned to "SafetyCom" or "MixedSafetyCom" respectively
T21	10	1	Set Retry = 0.
T22	10	0	FS-Master was not able to detect a Ready-pulse within 5 s. It will initiate a power OFF/ON cycle for the FS-Device to retry the Ready-pulse.
INTERNAL ITEMS	TYPE	DEFINITION	
MH_xxx to xx_Conf...	Call	See Table 42 in [1]	
Safety	Guard	New configuration parameter "Safety": either value "SafetyCom" or "MixedSafetyCom"	
Ready pulse OK	Guard	Ready-pulse detected	

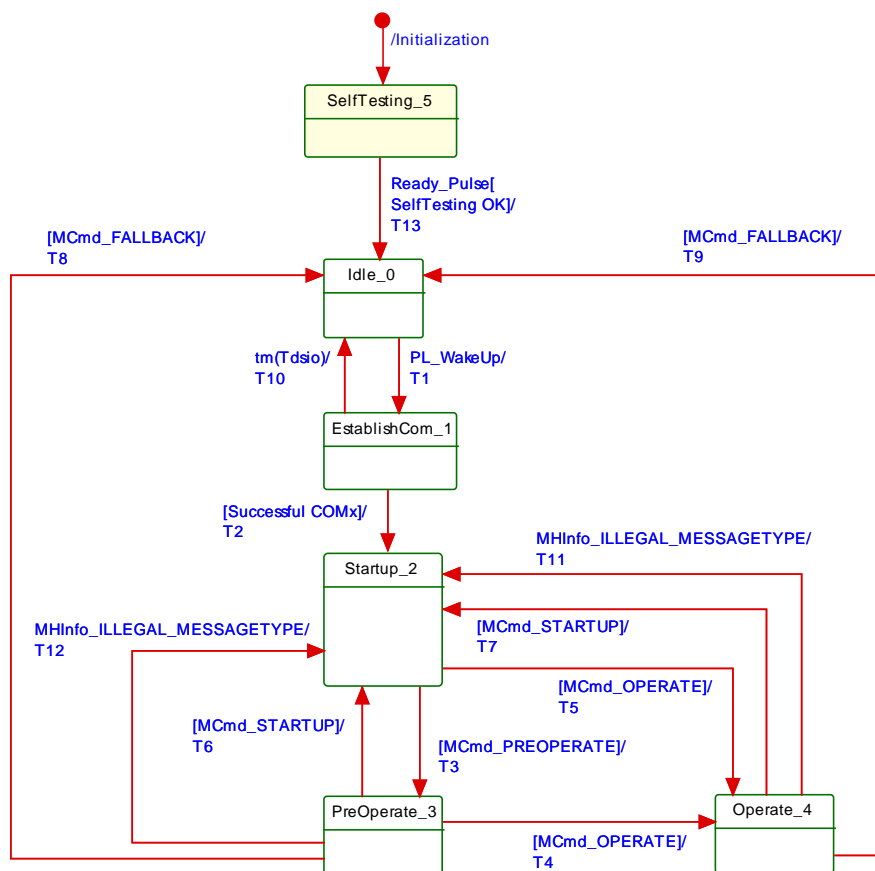
872

873

874

875 **7.3 State machine of the FS-Device DL-mode handler**

876 Figure 30 shows the modifications of the FS-Device DL-mode handler versus the Device DL-  
 877 mode handler in [1].



878

879 **Figure 30 – State machine of the FS-Device DL-mode handler**

880 A new state "SelfTesting\_5" considers the requirement for the FS-Device to indicate its  
 881 readiness for a wake-up procedure after its internal safety self-testing via a test pulse in pin 4.  
 882 Self-testing may actually take more than the maximum permitted start-up time  $T_{RDL}$  of a non-  
 883 safety Device (see 5.7).

884 **Table 11 – State transition tables of the FS-Device DL-mode handler**

STATE NAME		STATE DESCRIPTION	
Idle_0 to Operate_4		See Table 43 in [1]	
SelfTesting_5		Safety check through self-testing of $\mu$ C, RAM, etc. This may take more than the permitted start-up time $T_{RDL}$ of a non-safety Device.	
TRANSITION	SOURCE STATE	TARGET STATE	ACTION
T1 to T12	*	*	See Table 43 in [1]
T13	5	0	Create a signal (Ready_Pulse) on pin 4 for duration of $t_{RP}$ , when self-testing is completed.
INTERNAL ITEMS	TYPE	DEFINITION	
$T_{RDL}$	Time	See Table 7 10 in [1]	
$t_{RP}$	Time	See Table 7	
Self-testing OK	Guard	Self-testing completed	

885

886

887 **8 Extensions to system management (SM)**

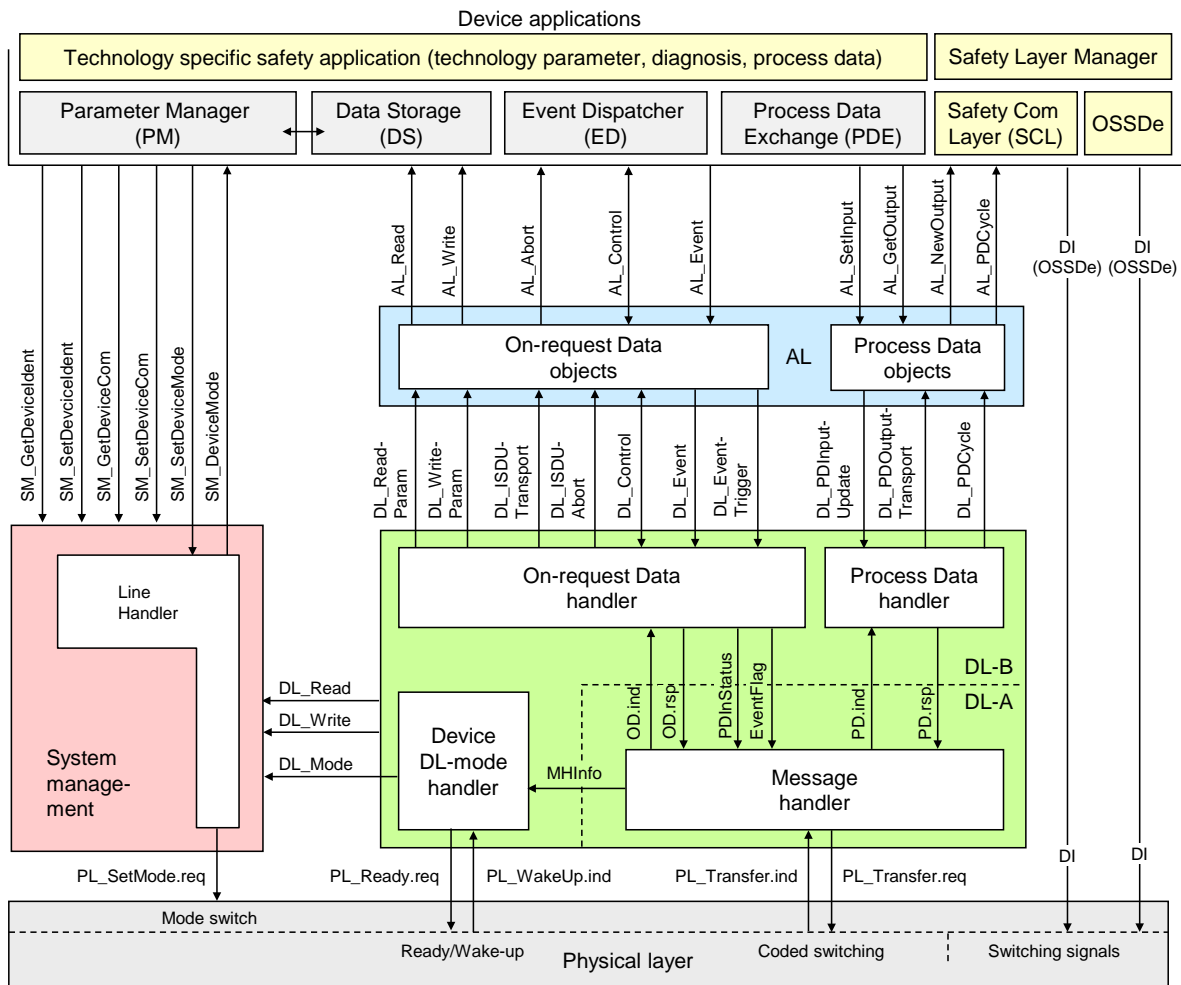
888 There are no extensions to system management.

889 **9 Extensions of the FS-Device**

890 **9.1 Principle architecture and models**

891 **9.1.1 FS-Device architecture**

892 Figure 31 shows the principle architecture of the FS-Device. It does not include safety  
 893 measures for implementation such as redundancy for the safety-related parts.



894

895 **Figure 31 – Principle architecture of the FS-Device**

896 An FS-Device comprises first of all the technology specific functional safety application.  
 897 "Emergency switching off" safety devices for example can be designed such that "classic"  
 898 OSSDe operation or safety communication can be configured. A Safety Layer Manager is  
 899 responsible for the handling of a safety bit via the OSSDe building block or a safety PDU  
 900 using the Safety Communication Layer (see clause 11).

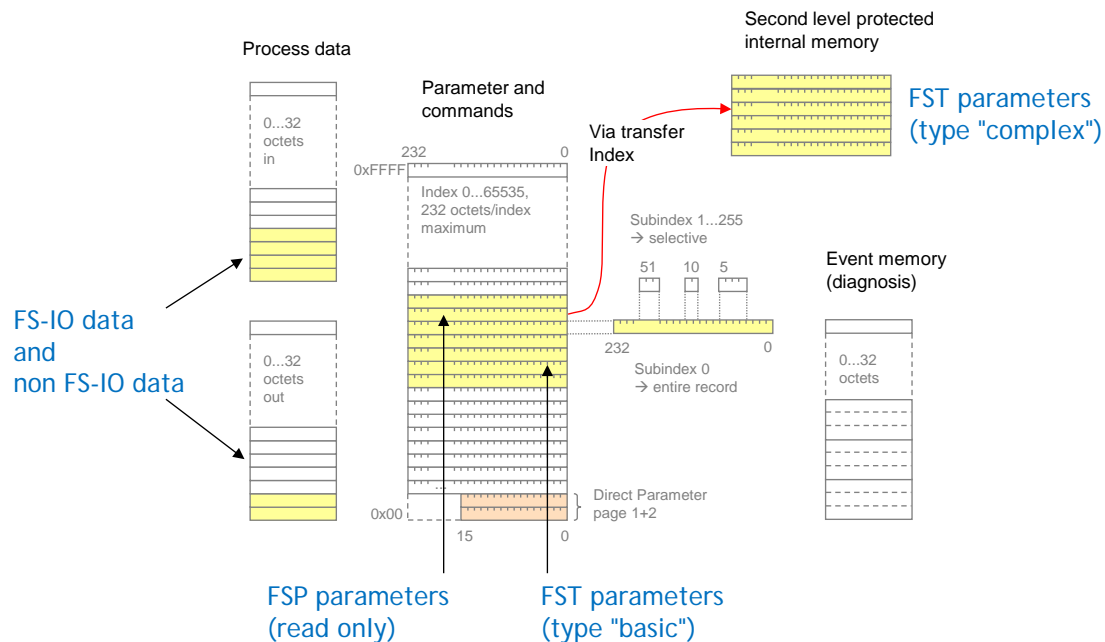
901 **9.1.2 FS-Device model**

902 According to the requirement of mixed NSR and SR parameter and process data, the FS-  
 903 Device model has been modified and adapted.

904 That means the FS-Device Index model is split into an NSR and an SR part. Figure 32 shows  
 905 the areas of concern. The allocation of the SR part ("FSP" parameter) is defined within the  
 906 IO-Link Safety

907 During commissioning, the assignment of FSP parameter values take place. These instance  
 908 values are secured by CRC signatures and transferred as a block to the FS-Master and to the  
 909 FS-Device (see 11.7.5). At each start-up of an FS-Device, the stored FSP block in the FS-  
 910 Master is transferred again and the FS-Device can check the locally stored instance  
 911 parameter values for integrity via CRC signatures. This check includes technology specific  
 912 "FST" parameters, which are not transferred at each start-up. The FS-Device displays its FSP  
 913 parameters at predefined Indices read-only.

914 Technology specific parameters (FST) could be handled either in an open manner to a certain  
 915 extend as standard non-safety parameters (see 11.7.8) or in a protected manner in hidden  
 916 internal memory (see 11.7.9).



917

918

**Figure 32 – The FS-Device model**

919 The maximum space for FS-I/O data and non FS-I/O data to share is 32 octets. The space  
 920 shall be filled with FS-I/O data first followed by the non FS-I/O data. The border is variable.  
 921 Assuming a maximum safety protocol trailer of 5 octets, the maximum possible space for FS-  
 922 I/O data is 27 octets.

## 923 9.2 Parameter Manager (PM)

924 There are no extensions or modifications of the Parameter Manager required.

## 925 9.3 Process Data Exchange (PDE)

926 Depending on "Safety" configuration, Process Data Exchange takes over or passes FS-  
 927 Process Data (see 11.4.3 Safety PDU) from/to the Safety Layer Manager.

## 928 9.4 Data Storage (DS)

### 929 9.4.1 General considerations including safety

930 The technology specific (FST) parameters are secured by a particular CRC signature  
 931 (FSP\_TechParCRC) included in the FSP parameter set. Additional Authenticity parameters  
 932 are used in case of FS-Device replacement. Thus, the standard Data Storage mechanism can  
 933 be used for FS-Device replacement. This document specifies a straighter forward version of  
 934 standard Data Storage compliant with [1].

935 This version of Data Storage requires that Device Access Lock (Index 0x000C) bit "0" and "1"  
 936 shall always be unlocked (= "0").

## 937 **9.4.2 User point of view**

938 The Data Storage mechanism for FS-Devices is based on the general mechanism for non-  
939 safety-related Devices. It is described here from a holistic user's point of view as best practice  
940 pattern (system description). This is in contrast to current [1] or [2], where Device and Master  
941 are described separately and with more features than used within this concept.

## 942 **9.4.3 Operations and preconditions for Device replacement**

### 943 **9.4.3.1 Purpose and objectives**

944 Main purpose of the IO-Link Data Storage mechanism is the replacement of obviously defect  
945 Devices or Masters by spare parts (new or used) without using configuration, parameteriza-  
946 tion, or other tools. The scenarios and associated preconditions are described in the following  
947 clauses.

### 948 **9.4.3.2 Preconditions for the activation of the Data Storage mechanism**

949 The following preconditions shall be observed prior to the usage of Data Storage:

- 950 (1) Data Storage is only available for *Devices* and *Masters* implemented according to [1] or  
951 [2] or later releases (> V1.1).
- 952 (2) The *Inspection Level* of that Master port the Device is connected to shall be adjusted to  
953 "type compatible" (corresponds to "TYPE\_COMP" within Table 78 in [1]).
- 954 (3) The *Backup Level* of that Master port the Device is connected to shall be either "Back-  
955 up/Restore" or "Restore", which corresponds to DS\_Enabled in 11.2.2.6 in [1]. See 9.4.5  
956 within this document for details on *Backup Level*.

### 957 **9.4.3.3 Preconditions for the types of Devices to be replaced**

958 After activation of a Backup Level (Data Storage mechanism) a "faulty" Device can be re-  
959 placed by a type equivalent or compatible other Device. In some exceptional cases, for exam-  
960 ple non-calibrated Devices, a user manipulation is required such as teach-in, to guarantee the  
961 same functionality and performance.

962 Thus, two types of Devices exist in respect to exchangeability, which shall be described in the  
963 user manual of the particular Device:

964 Data Storage class 1: automatic DS

965 The configured Device supports Data Storage in such a manner that the replacement Device  
966 plays the role of its predecessor fully automatically and with the same performance.

967 Data Storage class 2: semi-automatic DS

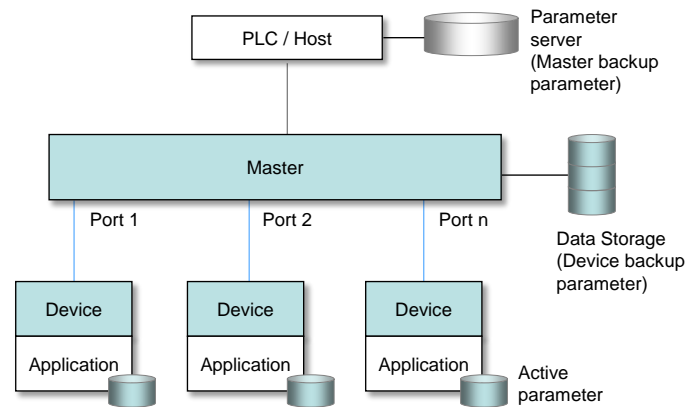
968 The configured Device supports Data Storage in such a manner that the replacement Device  
969 requires user manipulation such as teach-in prior to operation with the same performance.

### 970 **9.4.3.4 Preconditions for the parameter sets**

971 Each Device operates with the configured set of active parameters. The associated set of  
972 backup parameters stored within the system (Master and upper level system, for example  
973 PLC) can be different from the set of active parameters (see Figure 33).

974 A replacement of the Device in operation will result in an overwriting of the existing  
975 parameters within the newly connected Device by the backup parameters.

976



977

978

**Figure 33 – Active and backup parameter**

## 979 9.4.4 Commissioning

### 980 9.4.4.1 On-line commissioning

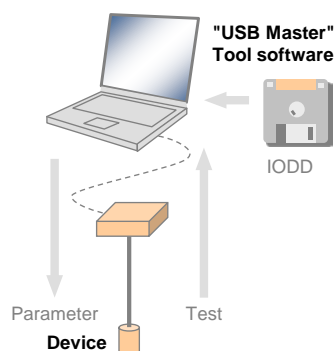
981 Usually, the Devices are configured and parameterized along with the configuration and pa-  
 982 rameterization of the fieldbus and PLC system with the help of engineering tools. After the  
 983 user assigned values to the parameters, they are downloaded into the Device and become  
 984 active parameters. Upon a system command, these parameters are uploaded (copied) into the  
 985 Data Storage within the Master, which in turn will initiate a backup of all its parameters de-  
 986 pending on the features of the upper level system.

987 In case of functional safety, commissioning cannot be completed without verification and  
 988 validation of FSP and FST parameters as well as of entire safety functions according to the  
 989 relevant safety manuals.

### 990 9.4.4.2 Off-site commissioning

991 Another possibility is the configuration and parameterization of Devices with the help of extra  
 992 tools such as "USB-Masters" and the IO-Link of the Device away (off-site) from the machine/  
 993 facility (see Figure 34).

994 The "USB-Master" tool will arm the parameter set after configuration, parameterization, and  
 995 validation (to become "active") and mark it via a non-volatile flag (see Table 13). After in-  
 996 stallation in the machine/facility these parameters are uploaded (copied) automatically into  
 997 the Data Storage within the Master (backup).



998

999

**Figure 34 – Off-site commissioning**

## 1000 9.4.5 Backup Levels

### 1001 9.4.5.1 Purpose

1002 Within an automation project with IO-Link usually three situations with different user require-  
 1003 ments for backup of parameters via Data Storage can be identified:

- 1004 • commissioning ("Disable");

- 1005 • production ("Backup/Restore");
  - 1006 • production ("Restore").
- 1007 Accordingly, three different "Backup Levels" are defined allowing the user to adjust the sys-  
 1008 tem to the particular functionality such as for Device replacement, off-site commissioning, pa-  
 1009 rameter changes at runtime, etc.
- 1010 These adjustment possibilities lead for example to drop-down menu entries for "Backup Lev-  
 1011 el".

#### 1012 9.4.5.2 Overview

1013 Table 12 shows the recommended practice for Data Storage within an IO-Link system. It sim-  
 1014 plifies the activities and their comprehension since activation of the Data Storage implies  
 1015 transfer of the parameters.

1016 **Table 12 – Recommended Data Storage Backup Levels**

Backup Level	Data Storage adjustments	Behavior
Commissioning ("Disable")	Master port: Activation state: "DS_Cleared"	Any change of active parameters within the Device will <i>not</i> be copied/saved. Device replacement <i>without</i> automatic/semi-automatic Data Storage.
Production ("Backup/Restore")	Master port: Activation state: "DS_Enabled" Master port: UploadEnable Master port: DownloadEnable	Changes of active parameters within the Device will be copied/saved. Device replacement <i>with</i> automatic/semi-automatic Data Storage supported.
Production ("Restore")	Master port: Activation state: "DS_Enabled" Master port: UploadDisable Master port: DownloadEnable	Any change of active parameters within the Device will <i>not</i> be copied/saved. If the parameter set is marked to be saved, the "frozen" parameters will be restored by the Master.  However, Device replacement <i>with</i> automatic/semi-automatic Data Storage of <i>frozen parameters</i> is supported.

1017 Legacy rules and presetting:

- 1018 • For Devices according to [1] with preset *Inspection Level* "NO\_CHECK" only the *Backup*  
 1019 *Level* "Commissioning" shall be supported. This should also be the default presetting in  
 1020 this case.
- 1021 • For Devices according to [1] with preset *Inspection Level* "TYPE\_COMP", all three *Backup*  
 1022 *Levels* shall be supported. Default presetting in this case should be "Backup/Restore".
- 1023 • For Devices according to [1] with preset *Inspection Level* "IDENTICAL", only the *Backup*  
 1024 *Level* "Commissioning" shall be supported.

1025 The following clauses describe the phases in detail.

#### 1026 9.4.5.3 Commissioning ("Disable")

1027 The Data Storage is disabled while in commissioning phase, where configurations, parameter-  
 1028 izations, and PLC programs are fine-tuned, tested, and verified. This includes the involved IO-  
 1029 Link Masters and Devices. Usually, saving (upload) the active Device parameters makes no  
 1030 sense in this phase. As a consequence, the replacement of Master and Devices with au-  
 1031 tomatic/semi-automatic Data Storage is not supported.

#### 1032 9.4.5.4 Production ("Backup/Restore")

1033 The Data Storage will be enabled after successful commissioning. Current active parameters  
 1034 within the Device will be copied (saved) into backup parameters. Device replacement with  
 1035 automatic/semi-automatic Data Storage is now supported via download/copy of the backup  
 1036 parameters to the Device and thus turning them into active parameters.



1037 Criteria for the particular copy activities are listed in Table 13. These criteria are the condi-  
 1038 tions to trigger a copy process of the active parameters to the backup parameters, thus  
 1039 ensuring the consistency of these two sets.

1040

**Table 13 – Criteria for backing up parameters ("Backup/Restore")**

User action	Operations	Data Storage
Commissioning session (see 9.4.4.1)	Parameterization of the Device via Master tool (on-line). Transfer of active parameter(s) to the Device will cause backup activity.	Master tool sends ParamDownloadStore; Device sets "DS_Upload" flag and then triggers upload via "DS_UPLOAD_REQ" Event. "DS_Upload" flag is deleted as soon as the upload is completed.
Switching from commissioning to production	Restart of Port and Device because Port configuration has been changed	During system startup, the "DS_Upload" flag triggers upload (copy). "DS_Upload" flag is deleted as soon as the upload is completed
Local modifications	Changes of the active parameters through teach-in or local parameterization at the Device (on-line)	Device technology application sets "DS_Upload" flag and then triggers upload via "DS_UPLOAD_REQ" Event. "DS_Upload" flag is deleted as soon as the upload is completed.
Off-site commissioning (see 9.4.4.2)	Phase 1: Device is parameterized off-site via "USB-Master" tool (see Figure 34). Phase 2: Connection of that Device to a Master port.	Phase 1: "USB-Master" tool sends ParamDownloadStore; Device sets "DS_Upload" flag (in non-volatile memory) and then triggers upload via "DS_UPLOAD_REQ" Event, which is ignored by the "USB-Master". Phase 2: During system start-up, the "DS_Upload" flag triggers upload (copy). "DS_Upload" flag is deleted as soon as the upload is completed.
Changed port configuration (in case of "Backup/Restore" or "Restore")	Whenever port configuration has been changed via Master tool (on-line): e.g. Configured VendorID (CVID), Configured DeviceID (CDID), see 11.2.2 in [1].	Change of port configuration to different VendorID and/or DeviceID as stored within the Master triggers "DS_Delete" followed by an upload (copy) to Data Storage (see 11.8.2, 11.2.1 and 11.3.3 in [1]).
PLC program demand	Parameter change via user program followed by a SystemCommand	User program sends SystemCommand ParamDownloadStore; Device sets "DS_Upload" flag and then triggers upload via "DS_UPLOAD_REQ" Event. "DS_Upload" flag is deleted as soon as the upload is completed.

1041

#### 1042 9.4.5.5 Production ("Restore")

1043 Any changes of the active parameters through teach-in, tool based parameterization, or local  
 1044 parameterization shall not lead automatically to a download ("restore") of the entire parameter  
 1045 set; the upload can be disabled.

1046 Criteria for the particular copy activities are listed in Table 14. These criteria are the condi-  
 1047 tions to trigger a copy process of the active parameters to the backup parameters, thus ensu-  
 1048 ring the consistency of these two sets.

1049

**Table 14 – Criteria for backing up parameters ("Restore")**

User action	Operations	Data Storage
Change port configuration	Change of port configuration via Master tool (on-line): e.g. Configured VendorID (CVID), Configured DeviceID (CDID); see 11.2.2.5 in [1].	Change of port configuration triggers "DS_Delete" followed by an upload (copy) to Data Storage; see 11.8.2, 11.2.1 and 11.3.3 in [1].

1050

1051 **9.4.6 Use cases**

1052 **9.4.6.1 Device replacement (@ "Backup/Restore")**

1053 The stored (saved) set of back-up parameters overwrites the active parameters (e.g. factory  
1054 settings) within the replaced compatible Device of same type. This one operates after a re-  
1055 start with the identical parameters as its predecessor.

1056 The preconditions for this use case are

1057 (1) Devices and Master port adjustments according to 9.4.3.2;

1058 *Backup Level*: "Backup/Restore"

1059 The replacement Device shall be re-initiated to "factory settings" in case it is not a new  
1060 Device out of the box (for "factory reset" see 10.6.4 in [1])

1061 **9.4.6.2 Device replacement (@ "Restore")**

1062 The stored (saved) set of back-up parameters overwrites the active parameters (e.g. factory  
1063 settings) within the replaced compatible Device of same type. This one operates after a re-  
1064 start with the identical parameters as its predecessor.

1065 The preconditions for this use case are

1066 (1) Devices and Master port adjustments according to 9.4.3.2;

1067 *Backup Level*: "Restore"

1068 **9.4.6.3 Master replacement**

1069 **9.4.6.3.1 General**

1070 This feature depends heavily on the implementation and integration concept of the Master de-  
1071 signer and manufacturer as well as on the features of the upper level system (fieldbus).

1072 **9.4.6.3.2 Without fieldbus support (base level)**

1073 Principal approach for a replaced (new) Master using a Master tool:

1074 (1) Set port configurations: amongst others the *Backup Level* to "Backup/Restore" or "Re-  
1075 store"

1076 Master "reset to factory settings": clear backup parameters of all ports within the Data Storage  
1077 in case it is not a new Master out of the box

1078 Active parameters of all Devices are automatically uploaded (copied) to Data Storage  
1079 (backup)

1080 **9.4.6.3.3 Fieldbus support (comfort level)**

1081 Any kind of fieldbus specific mechanism to back up the Master parameter set including the  
1082 Data Storage of all Devices is used. Even though these fieldbus mechanisms are similar to  
1083 the IO-Link approach, they are following their certain paradigm which may conflict with the  
1084 described paradigm of the IO-Link back up mechanism (see Figure 33).

1085 **9.4.6.3.4 PLC system**

1086 The Device and Master parameters are stored within the system specific database of the PLC  
1087 and downloaded to the Master at system startup after replacement.

1088 This top down concept may conflict with the active parameter setting within the Devices.

1089 **9.4.6.4 Project replication**

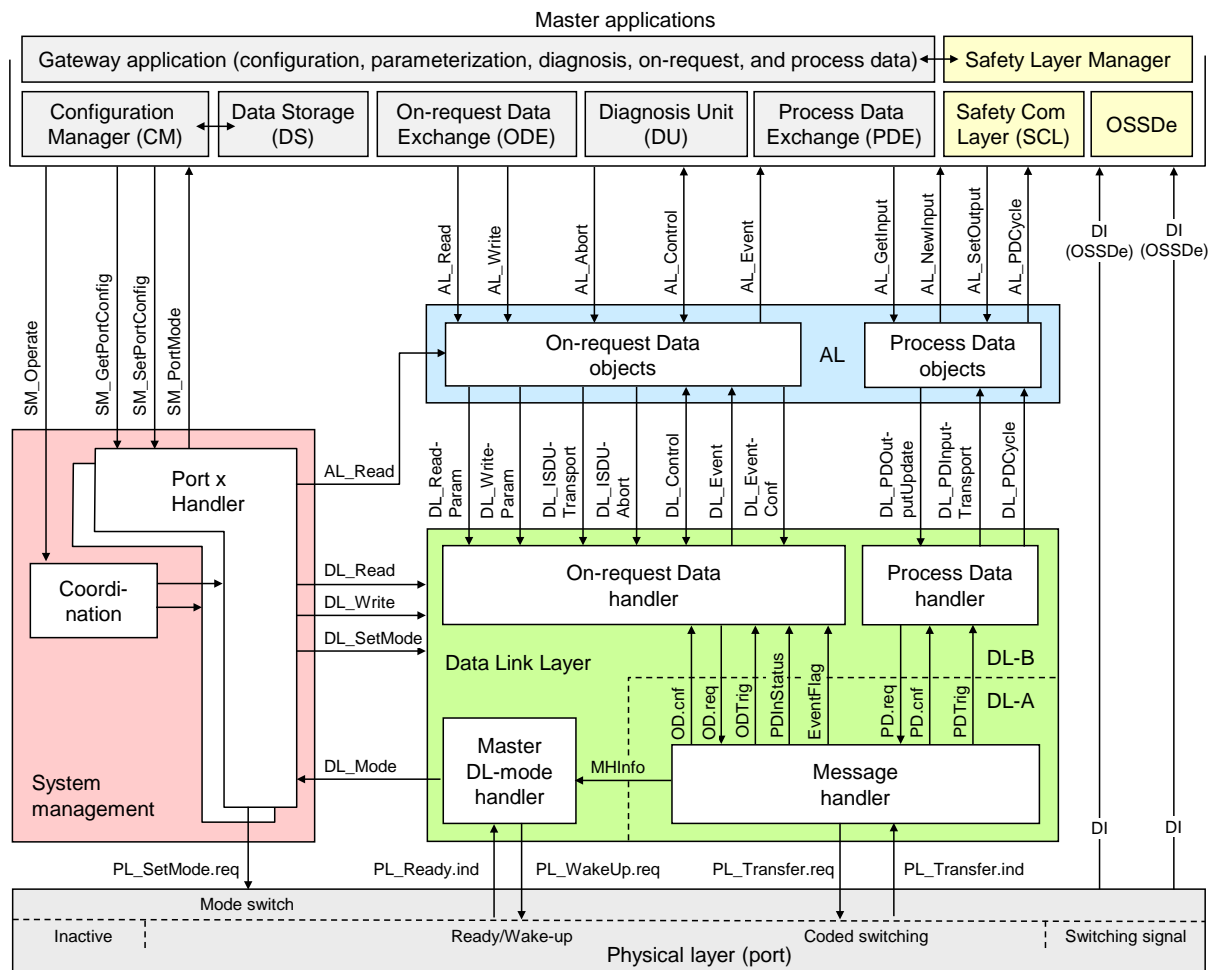
1090 Following the concept of 9.4.6.3.3, the storage of complete Master parameter sets within the  
1091 parameter server of an upper level system can automatically initiate the configuration of Ma-  
1092 sters and Devices besides any other upper level components and thus support the automatic  
1093 replication of machines.

1094 Following the concept of 9.4.6.3.4, after supply of the Master by the PLC, the Master can  
1095 supply the Devices.

1096 **10 Extensions of the FS-Master**

1097 **10.1 Principle architecture**

1098 Figure 35 shows the principle architecture of the FS-Master.



1099

1100 **Figure 35 – Principle architecture of the FS-Master**

1101 Core part of an FS-Master is the original standard Master except for the Ready-pulse and its  
 1102 handling (see 5.3.3 and 7.2). The Master applications have been extended by a Safety Layer  
 1103 Manager dealing with safety communication (see clause 11) and OSSDe.

1104 **10.2 Safety Layer Manager (SLM)**

1105 **10.2.1 Purpose**

1106 The Safety Layer Manager takes care of the safety PDU, whenever safety communication has  
 1107 been configured or of one safety bit, whenever OSSDe has been configured for a particular  
 1108 port.

1109 It holds the FSP parameter block consisting of the authenticity record and the protocol record  
 1110 (see 11.7.5) as well as the FS I/O structure description (see Table A.1 and E.5.5).

1111 **10.2.2 FS\_PortModes**

1112 The FS-Master shall support five FS\_PortModes adjustable via the FS-Master Tool.

1113 **NonSafetyCom**

1114 This setting enables pure IO-Link communication with only NSR Process Data of a port.

1115 **SafetyCom**

1116 This setting enables pure safety communication without NSR Process Data of a port.

1117 **MixedSafetyCom**  
 1118 This setting enables safety communication of SR and NSR Process Data of a port.

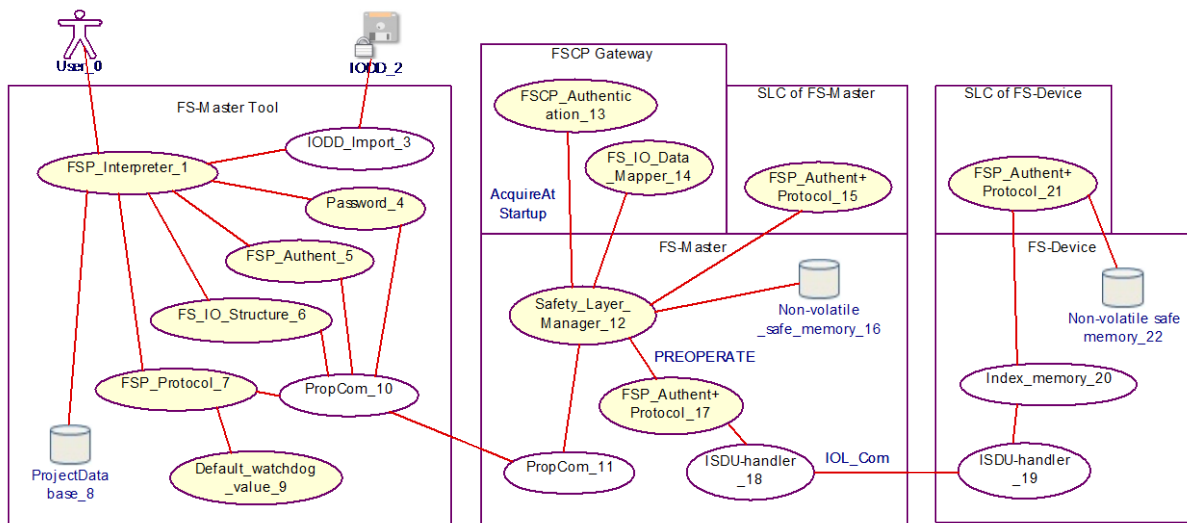
1119 **OSSDe**  
 1120 This setting enables OSSDe operation of a port.

1121 **SIO**  
 1122 This setting enables SIO operation of a port.

1123 **10.2.3 FSP parameter blocks**

1124 **10.2.3.1 FSP parameter use cases**

1125 Figure 36 illustrates some use cases related to the FSP parameters (see A.1).



1126  
 1127 **Figure 36 – FSP parameter use cases**

1128 Table 15 shows a listing of the items in Figure 36 and references to clauses within this  
 1129 document or to other IO-Link specifications (bibliography).

1130 **Table 15 – Use case reference table**

No.	Item	Type	Reference	Remarks
0	User	Roles: - Observer - Maintenance - Specialist	-	Responsibility of the software tool manufacturer
1	FSP_Interpreter	GUI-functions	E.g. Figure 56	
2	IODD (secured)	Device description	Annex E	
3	IODD_Import	Activity	Annex E	
4	Password	Activity	Clause 10.2.3.2	Role dependent
5	FSP_Authent	Activity	Clause 11.7.5	
6	FS_IO_Structure	FS I/O description	Annex A.1	
7	FSP_Protocol	Activity	Clause 11.7.6	
8	ProjectDatabase	FS-Master Tool	-	Proprietary
9	Default_watchdog_value	Activity	Annex A.2.6	
10	PropCom (not standardized)	Communication	Clause 10.2.3.1	Proprietary
11	PropCom (not standardized)	Communication	Clause 10.2.3.1	Proprietary
12	Safety_Layer_Manager	Activity	Clause 10.2	
13	FSCP_Authentication	Activity	Clause 11.7.5	

No.	Item	Type	Reference	Remarks
14	FS_IO_Data_Mapper	Gateway application	Clause 12.1	FSCP Integration
15	FSP_Authent+Protocol	FS-Master SCL	Clause 11.5.2	
16	Non-volatile memory	FS-Master	–	Implementation
17	FSP_Authent+Protocol	Transfer	Clause 11.5.3	
18	ISDU-Handler	FS-Master DL	[1]	IO-Link standard
19	ISDU-Handler	FS-Device DL	[1]	IO-Link standard
20	Index_memory	Activity	[1]	IO-Link standard
21	FSP_Authent+Protocol	Activity	Clause 11.5.3	
22	Non-volatile memory	FS-Device	–	Implementation

1131

1132 In the following, a typical parameterization session of a project in the ProjectDatabase is  
 1133 described, where a new FS-Device is planned, configured, and parameterized for a particular  
 1134 port. After installation of IODD and associated Dedicated Tool, the user of an FS-Master Tool  
 1135 opens the parameter tab page (see illustration in Figure 56). After entry of the password for  
 1136 safety projects (see 10.2.3.2), FSP parameters are enabled to be displayed and Dedicated  
 1137 Tools are enabled to be launched.

1138 The *authenticity parameter* values carry "0" as default within the IODD of an FS-Device. For  
 1139 details see 10.2.3.3.

1140 The IODD contains the *I/O data structure description* of the safety Process Data as a record  
 1141 secured by CRC signature (see A.2.9 and E.5.6).

1142 Most of the *protocol parameter* values are preset by default values provided by the FS-Device  
 1143 manufacturer within the IODD, except for the value of FSP\_TechParCRC, which has a  
 1144 particular responsibility. A value of "0" means commissioning/test (see Annex G). The  
 1145 consequences are

- 1146 • No validity check of technology parameters at start-up
- 1147 • No blocking of FSP authenticity parameter acceptance within the FS-Device
- 1148 • No Data Storage

1149 Any value not equal to "0" will arm all three activities. For details see 10.2.3.4.

1150 After parameter assignment, the FSP parameter instance values can be stored in the  
 1151 ProjectDatabase.

1152 When online, the FS-Master Tool uses a proprietary communication ("PropCom") to the FS-  
 1153 Master (not standardized in [1]). Any transmission error (see Table 16) can falsify the  
 1154 message bits and thus, each FSP parameter record is secured by CRC signature.

1155 NOTE Standardization of "PropCom" is responsibility of IO-Link integration into a fieldbus.

1156 Upon power-on, the Safety Layer Manager of the FS-Master acquires the FSCP authenticity  
 1157 code and stores the values. The FS-Master Tool reads these values and replaces the default  
 1158 "0" by the actual FSCP authenticity code and assigns a port number ≠0. A CRC signature  
 1159 calculation secures the entire FSP authenticity parameter record. All three records, FSP  
 1160 authenticity, FSP protocol, and I/O structure description can be transferred to the Safety  
 1161 Layer Manager of the FS-Master.

1162 NOTE The activities described above assume an FSP\_TechParCRC value of "0" (commissioning).

1163 The Safety Layer Manager propagates the I/O structure description record to the  
 1164 FS\_IO\_DataMapper. The FSP authenticity and FSP protocol records are propagated to the  
 1165 local FS-Master safety communication layer (SLC) and in PREOPERATE state to the FS-  
 1166 Device safety communication layer (SLC). The FS-Device accepts the authenticity code and  
 1167 stores it locally.

1168 From now on the IO-Link Safety system is able to run in "monitored operational mode". That  
 1169 means personnel are required to watch the machine.

1170 The user is now able to enter and test the technology specific parameters (see illustration in  
1171 Figure 56). After verification and validation, the user launches the Dedicated Tool, confirms  
1172 the value assignments and transfers the CRC signature to the FSP\_TechParCRC field. With a  
1173 value of ≠ "0", the system can be armed:

- 1174 • Data Storage
- 1175 • Blocking of FSP authenticity parameter acceptance within the FS-Device (comparison  
1176 only)
- 1177 • Validity check of authenticity and technology parameters at start-up

1178

### 1179 **10.2.3.2 Password**

1180 The password mechanism is only required for the FS-Master. It shall consider the roles of the  
1181 upper level FSCP system and inherit permissions from there if possible. Due to increased  
1182 security requirements (IEC 62443), the mechanism shall be based on encryption methods. For  
1183 details see Annex A.2.10.

1184 Dedicated Tools can have additional password mechanisms independent from the FS-Master.

### 1185 **10.2.3.3 FSP parameter block – authenticity**

1186 FSP authenticity parameters are specified in Annex A.2.1. The authenticity activities for an  
1187 FSCP-System are described in 10.2.3.1 including the CRC signature calculation.

1188 For stand-alone FS-Masters the entry of unique and unambiguous values per FS-Master is  
1189 required per machine or production center, if there is a possibility to misconnect FS-Device  
1190 amongst different FS-Masters. FS-Devices will accept and store FSP authenticity values only  
1191 when FSP\_TechParCRC = "0".

### 1192 **10.2.3.4 FSP parameter block – protocol**

1193 FSP protocol parameters are specified in Annex A.1. Manufacturer/vendor pre-sets values  
1194 and defines ranges within the IODD for protocol version and mode, port mode, watchdog, and  
1195 TechParCRC.

1196 Manufacturer/vendor shall determine the pre-set value for the watchdog timer considering the  
1197 FS-Device response time at the indicated transmission rate. The FS-Master Tool can  
1198 calculate and suggest a value based on the performance data of the used FS-Master and on  
1199 the pre-set value from the IODD.

1200 The FS-Master Tool calculates the CRC signature across the FSP protocol parameter record.

### 1201 **10.2.3.5 FS I/O structure description**

1202 With the help of this information, the mapping process within the FSCP gateway can be  
1203 controlled or monitored (see 11.7.7 and A.2.9).

1204 The FS-Device can check the validity of the safety PDin/PDout structure via the  
1205 FSP\_IO\_StructCRC signature within the FSP parameter record.

## 1206 **10.3 Process Data Exchange (PDE)**

1207 Safety Layer Manager is responsible to set-up the safety-related Process Data depending on  
1208 FS\_PortModes (see 10.2.2). It can be either a Safety PDU or single bits (one from OSSDe  
1209 and another one for the qualifier). Process Data Exchange takes over or passes SR Process  
1210 Data (see 11.4.3 Safety PDU) from/to the Safety Layer Manager.

## 1211 **10.4 Data Storage (DS)**

1212 In [1], Data Storage has been specified separately for Master and Device. In practice it turned  
1213 out to be straighter forward to specify the mechanism as a whole in one place. It can be found  
1214 in 9.4 in this document.

1215

## 1216 11 Safety communication layer (SCL)

### 1217 11.1 Functional requirements

1218 The functional requirements for safety communication are laid down in [11]. Main application  
1219 area is "safety for machinery". Usually this means operational stop of a machine until clearan-  
1220 ce or repair and restart only after an operator acknowledgement. Primarily relevant are IEC  
1221 62061 and ISO 13849.

1222 Other major requirements are suitability for up to SIL3/PLe safety functions, port specific  
1223 passivation, and parameterization using dedicated tools. Safety measures and residual error  
1224 rates for authenticity, timeliness, and data integrity of safety messages (safety PDUs) shall be  
1225 compliant with IEC 61784-3, Edition 3.

### 1226 11.2 Communication faults and safety measures

1227 The point-to-point communication basis of IO-Link allows for a very lean protocol type and a  
1228 hardware independent safety communication layer stack with a small memory footprint. Table  
1229 16 shows the communication errors to be considered and the chosen safety measures

- 1230 • (Sequence) counter / inverted counter;
- 1231 • Watchdog timer and receipt messages;
- 1232 • Connection validation at commissioning, start-up, and repair; and
- 1233 • Cyclic redundancy check for data integrity.

1234 **Table 16 – Communication errors and safety measures**

Communication error	Protocol safety measures			
	Counter/Inverted counter	Timeout with receipt	Connection validation <sup>a</sup>	Cyclic redundancy check (CRC)
Corruption	–	–	–	X
Unintended repetition	X	X	–	–
Incorrect sequence	X	–	–	–
Loss	X	X	–	–
Unacceptable delay	–	X	–	–
Insertion	X	–	–	–
Masquerade	–	–	–	X
Addressing	–	–	X	–
Loop-back of messages	X	–	–	–

a Similar procedure as with functional safety digital input modules possible due to point-to-point communication

1235 It is assumed, that there are no storing elements within the IO-Link communication path  
1236 between FS-Master and FS-Device. Thus, a two bit counter is sufficient as a safety measure.  
1237 A value 0b000 of this counter indicates a start or reset position of this counter. In cyclic mode  
1238 it counts up to 0b111 and returns to 0b001.

1239 The message send and receive concept of IO-Link allows for a simple watchdog timer and  
1240 message receipt safety measure concept corresponding to the "de-energize to trip" principle.

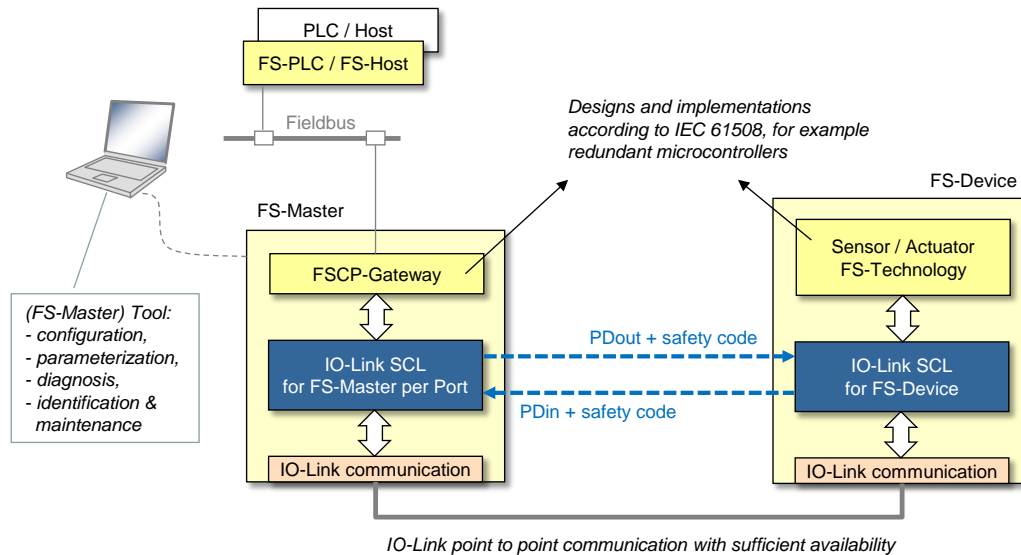
1241 It is assumed that an FS-Master is the owner of a functional safety connection ID of the upper  
1242 level FSCP communication system similar to an FS-DI-Module within a remote I/O. A  
1243 customer is required to perform a validation procedure, whenever a change occurred with the  
1244 connected safety devices. IO-Link Safety relies on such a concept. Additionally, due to the  
1245 standard "data storage" mechanism of IO-Link and the functional safety nature of the FS-  
1246 Master, it is possible to provide a more convenient mechanism.

1247 A CRC signature is used for the data integrity check of transmitted safety PDUs. Two options  
 1248 can be configured. A 16 bit CRC signature for safety I/O data up to 4 octets or a 32 bit CRC  
 1249 signature for safety IO data up to 26 octets can be chosen.

## 1250 11.3 SCL services

### 1251 11.3.1 Positioning of safety communication layers (SCL)

1252 Figure 37 shows the positioning of the IO-Link Safety Communication Layer (SCL).



1253

1254 **Figure 37 – Positioning of the IO-Link Safety Communication Layer (SCL)**

1255 For each port with a connected FS-Device an instance of the IO-Link SCL is required. The  
 1256 SCLs are exchanging safety PDUs consisting of output Process Data (PDout) together with  
 1257 safety code to the FS-Device and input Process Data (PDin) together with safety code from  
 1258 the FS-Device. The SCLs are using standard IO-Link communication as a "black channel".

1259 Sufficient availability through for example correct installations, low-noise power supplies, and  
 1260 low interferences are preconditions for this "black channel" to avoid so-called nuisance trips.  
 1261 Nuisance trips cause production stops and subsequently may cause management to remove  
 1262 safety equipment.

1263 This document does not specify implementation related safety measures such as redundant  
 1264 microcontrollers, RAM testing, etc. It is the responsibility of the manufacturer/vendor to take  
 1265 appropriate measures against component failures or errors according to IEC 61508.

### 1266 11.3.2 FS-Master SCL services

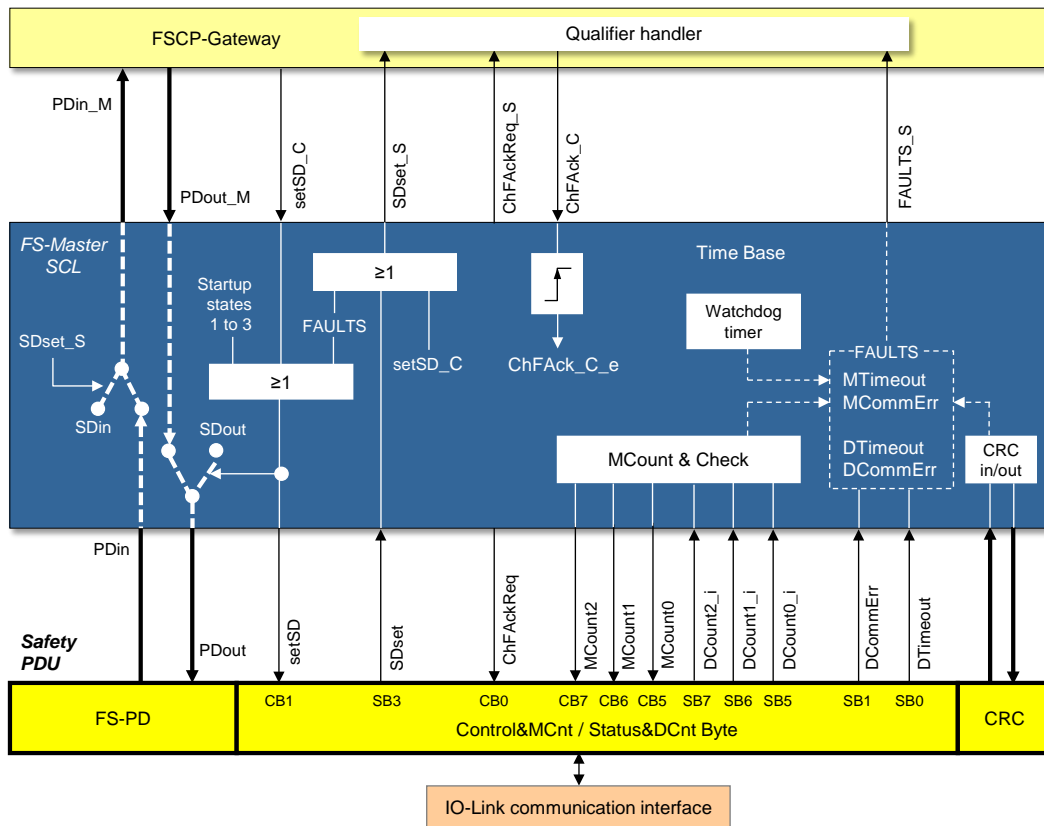
1267 IO-Link safety applications include (but are not limited to) connections to upper level FSCP  
 1268 fieldbus systems. FSCPs usually provide also safety codes and control/monitoring services  
 1269 (signals).

1270 Figure 38 shows the FS-Master Safety Communication Layer signals (services) depicted by  
 1271 arrows in the upper part of the figure. For each FSCP to be connected to, a mapping or  
 1272 emulation of corresponding SCL services is required.

1273 A service name carries either an extension "\_C" (Control), if it controls the safety  
 1274 communication activities or an extension "\_S" (Status), if it is reporting on the activities.

1275 Some of the service names correspond to the signal names of the Control Byte or Status Byte  
 1276 (see lower part of the figure and 11.4.5). That means they are correlated, but there is some  
 1277 control logic of the SCL in between. This control logic is time discrete and not continuous  
 1278 even if it is depicted as logic OR ("≥") box. Definitive are the state charts and the state  
 1279 transition tables of the SCL (see 11.5.2).





1280

1281

**Figure 38 – FS-Master Safety Communication Layer services**

1282

The following services in Table 17 shall be available to the FSCP gateway or to a programmer of an FS-Master system.

1283

1284

**Table 17 – SCL services of FS-Master**

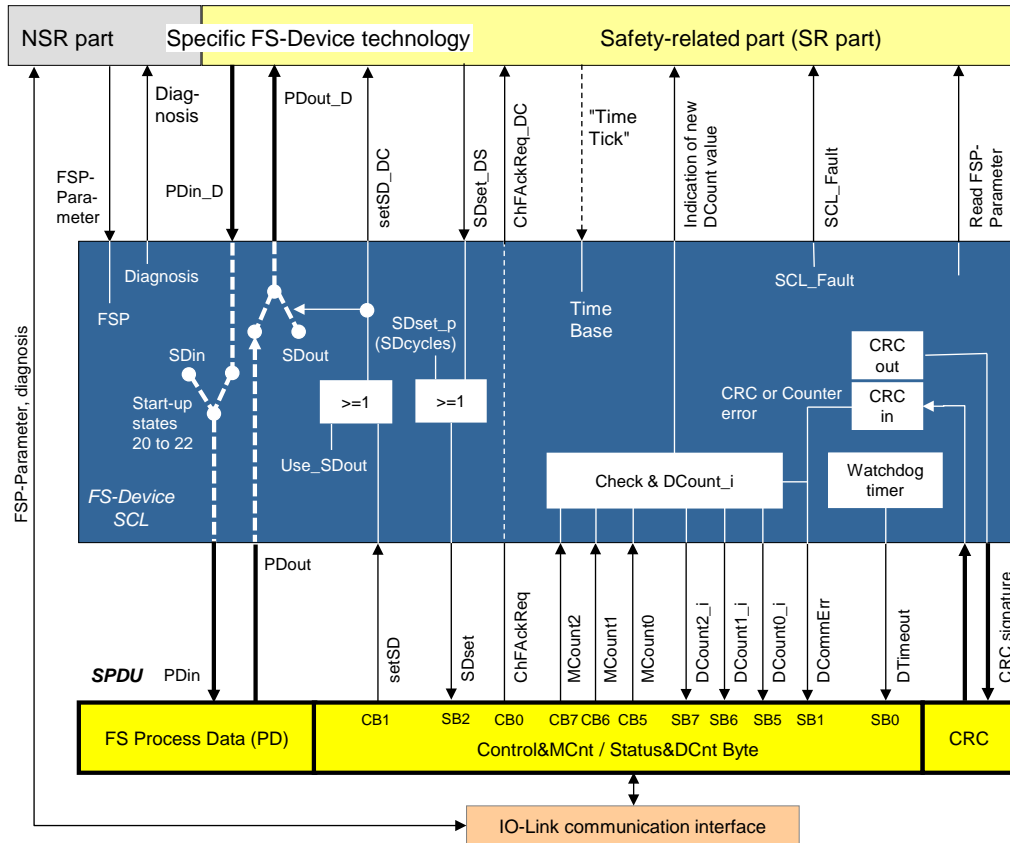
Service/signal	Definition
PDin_M, PDout_M	These services carry the actual Process Data values, both SDin (all bits "0") and SDout (all bits "0") in case of safe state or the real process values from or to the FS-Device.
SDin, SDout	These services carry Process Data values all zero.
setSD_C	In case of emergency, safety control programs usually set output Process Data (PDout_M) for an actuator to "0". However, in some cases, for example burner ventilators, shut down may not be a safe state. This service, if set to "1", is additional information allowing an FS-Device to establish a safe state no matter what the values of Process Data are. Independent from PDout_M, this service causes the SCL to send SDout values to the FS-Device and to send SDin to the FSCP gateway (PDin_M) via SDset_S.
SDset_S	This service, if set to "1", causes the qualifier handler to set the qualifier bit for the Process Data of the connected FS-Device (see 11.10.4). In addition, it causes the SCL to send SDin to the FSCP gateway (PDin_M).
ChFAckReq_S	The FS-Master SCL sets this service to "1" in case of FAULTS or FS-Master timeouts. It shall be propagated via FSCP and indicated to the operator.
ChFAck_C	After check-up and/or repair, the operator is requested to acknowledge a "ChFAckReq_S" service via a "1". This is a precondition for the SCL to resume regular operation after 3 transmission cycles with SDin and SDout values. The SCL-internal signal ChFAck_C_e is used for actual evaluation instead of the ChFAck_C service. It is only set, whenever the ChFAck_C service changed value (edge-sensitive) to avoid any continuously pressed acknowledgment button.
Fault_S	Any communication error (counter mismatch or CRC signature error) and/or timeouts cause the qualifier handler to set the qualifier bit for the Process Data of the connected FS-Device (see 11.10.4).

1285

1286 The lower part of the figure shows a combined input and output safety PDU specified in  
 1287 11.4.3 and 11.4.5.

1288 **11.3.3 FS-Device SCL services**

1289 Figure 39 shows the FS-Device Safety Communication Layer services depicted by arrows in  
 1290 the upper part of the figure.



1291

1292 **Figure 39 – FS-Device Safety Communication Layer services**

1293 A service name carries either an extension "\_DC" (Device Control) if it controls the FS-Device  
 1294 technology or an extension "\_DS" (Device Status) if it is reporting its status.

1295 Some of the service names correspond to the signal names of the Control Byte or Status Byte  
 1296 (see lower part of the figure and 11.4.5). That means they are correlated, but there is some  
 1297 control logic of the SCL in between. This control logic is time discrete and not continuous  
 1298 even if it is depicted as logic OR (" $\geq$ ") box. Definitive are the state charts and the state  
 1299 transition tables of the SCL (see 11.5.3).

1300 The following services in Table 18 shall be available to the safety-related part of the FS-  
 1301 Device technology. Some services are non-safety-related and shall be available to the non-  
 1302 safety-related part of the FS-Device.

1303

**Table 18 – SCL services of FS-Device**

Service/signal	Definition
PDin_D, PDout_D	These services carry the actual Process Data values. Real process values from the FS-Device and SDout (all bits "0") in case of safe state or the real process values to the FS-Device.
SDin, SDout	These services carry Process Data values all zero. Signal Use_SD indicates the usage of Process Data all zero.
setSD_DC	In case of emergency, safety control programs usually set output Process Data (PDout) for an actuator to "0". However, in some cases, for example burner ventilators, shut down may not be a safe state. This service, if set to "1", is additional information allowing an FS-Device to establish a safe state no matter what the values of Process

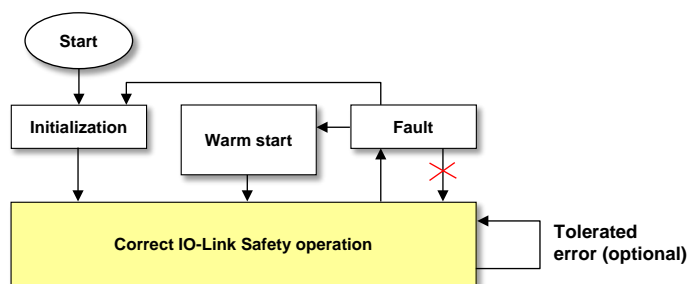
Service/signal	Definition
	Data are. Independent from PDout, this service causes the SCL to send SDout values to the FS-Device.
SDset_DS	This service, if set to "1", indicates that the FS-Device either reacts on a setSD_DC = "1" when the safe state is established or has been forced to establish safe state due to error or failure and delivers input Process Data values "0" (PDin_D).
ChFAckReq_DC	This service, if set to "1", indicates a pending operator acknowledgment. This signal is not safety-related and can be used to control an indicator, for example LED (light emitting diode).
Time tick	The SCL can be designed totally hardware independent, if a periodic service call controls a time base inside the SCL.
Indication of new DCount value	Short demands of FS-Devices may not trip a safety function due to its chain of independent communication cycles across the network. Therefore, a demand shall last for at least two SCL cycles. This service provides the necessary information to implement the demand extension if required.
SCL_Fault	This service provides faults (errors) of the SCL software.
Read_FSP_Parameter	This service allows the FS-Device technology for reading the current FSP (protocol) parameter
<b>Non-safety-related services:</b>	
FSP_Parameter	The FS-Master transmits the FSP parameter record (block) at each start-up during PREOPERATE to the FS-Device. These parameters are propagated to the SCL using this service.
Diagnosis	SCL diagnosis information can be propagated to the IO-Link Event system using this service.

1304  
 1305 The lower part of Figure 39 shows a combined input and output safety PDU specified in  
 1306 11.4.3 and 11.4.5.

1307 **11.4 SCL protocol**

1308 **11.4.1 Protocol phases to consider**

1309 Figure 40 shows the principle protocol phases to consider for the design according IEC  
 1310 61784-3.



1311  
 1312 **Figure 40 – Protocol phases to consider**

1313 The principle protocol phases and the corresponding requirements are listed in Table 19.

1314  
 1315 **Table 19 – Protocol phases to consider**

Phase	Activities	Requirements
Initialization	Establish communication, transfer FSP parameter to FS-Device, SD cycles	- Actuator shall be de-energized - SDout values shall be used during the first 3 SCL communication cycles
Setup or change	Commissioning, FST parameter backup	- As long as the FSP_TechParCRC is set to "0", cyclic data exchange of PD values is enabled.

Phase	Activities	Requirements
Operation	Process Data exchange, power-down of FS-Device	- It is the responsibility of the FS-Device technology to detect undervoltages and to set SD values.
Restart after transition from fault	Timeout, operator acknowledgment	- Operator acknowledgment is required prior to a restart - MCounter reset (resynchronization) - SDout values shall be used during the first 3 SCL communication cycles
Warm start after transition from fault	CRC or counter error, operator acknowledgment	- Operator acknowledgment is required prior to a restart - SCL communication is not reset - SDout values shall be used during the first 3 SCL communication cycles
Shutdown	Contact bouncing, EMC voltage dips/changes	- It is the responsibility of the FS-Device technology to detect undervoltages and to set SD values.

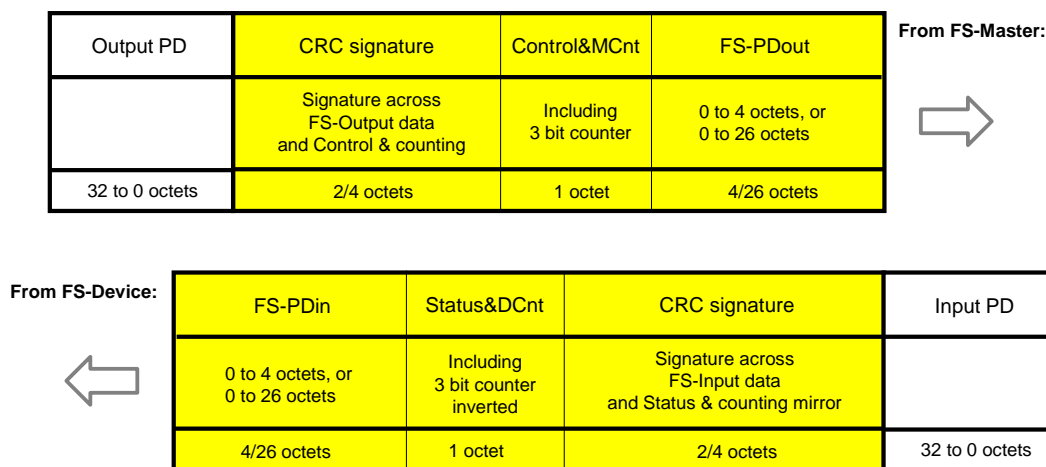
1316

1317 **11.4.2 FS-Device faults**

1318 The SCL protocol copes with faults occurring during transmission of safety PDUs such as  
1319 CRC errors or timeouts. It is the responsibility of the designer of the FS-Device to cope with  
1320 FS-Device faults and to make sure that the necessary functional safety actions will take place,  
1321 for example setting of safety Process Data and the SDset\_DS service.

1322 **11.4.3 Safety PDU (SPDU)**

1323 Figure 41 shows the structure of SPDUs of the FS-Master and FS-Device together with  
1324 standard input and output data. The design follows the concept of explicit transmission of the  
1325 safety measures for timeliness and authenticity according to IEC 61784-3 in contrast to the  
1326 implicit transmission via inclusion in the overall CRC signature calculation.



1327

1328 **Figure 41 – Safety PDUs of FS-Master and FS-Device**

1329 The timeliness measure is represented by a 3 bit counter within the protocol management  
1330 octets (see 11.4.5).

1331 Inclusion of authenticity code in the cyclic checking is not necessary due to the point to point  
1332 communication of IO-Link. This check is performed during commissioning and at start-up.

1333 The design follows also the "de-energize to trip principle". In case of a timeout, or a CRC  
1334 error, or a counter error, the associated qualifier bit will be set. It will be only released after an  
1335 explicit operator acknowledgment on the FS-Master side.

1336 After a CRC error a warm start is possible.

1337 **11.4.4 FS-Input and FS-Output data**

1338 The maximum possible size of the FS-Input and FS-Output data reaches from 0 to 26 octets  
1339 depending on the amount of required standard IO-Link data. See 11.4.6 for optimization  
1340 issues and trade-offs.

1341 NOTE Currently the safety trailer consists of only 3 or 5 octets and theoretically 28 octets could be available.  
1342 However, since not all design verification steps are passed, a reserve of 1 octet is planned.

1343 The possible data types are listed in Table 23.

#### 1344 11.4.5 Status and control

1345 One octet is used in both transmission directions for the protocol flow of IO-Link Safety.

1346 Table 20 shows the signals to control the protocol layer of an FS-Device and a counter value  
1347 for the timeliness check together with a local watchdog timer adjusted through the  
1348 "FSP\_Watchdog" parameter (see A.2.6).

1349 **Table 20 – Control and counting (Control&MCnt)**

CB7	CB6	CB5	CB4	CB3	CB2	CB1	CB0
Sequence counter, bit 2	Sequence counter, bit 1	Sequence counter, bit 0	Reserved ("0")	Reserved ("0")	Reserved ("0")	Activate safe state	Channel fault acknowledge request (indication)
MCount2	MCount1	MCount0	–	–	–	SetSD	ChFAckReq

1350

1351 Table 21 shows the feedback of the protocol layer of an FS-Device and the inverted counter  
1352 value for the timeliness check. The counter values are inverted to prevent from loop-back  
1353 errors.

1354 **Table 21 – Status and counting mirror (Status&DCnt)**

SB7	SB6	SB5	SB4	SB3	SB2	SB1	SB0
Sequence counter, bit 2; inverted	Sequence counter, bit 1; inverted	Sequence counter, bit 0; inverted	Reserved ("0")	Reserved ("0")	Safe state activated	Communication error: CRC or counter incorrect	Communication fault: Timeout
DCount2_i	DCount1_i	DCount0_i	–	–	SDset	DCommErr	DTimeout

1355

1356 Table 22 shows the values of MCount and DCount\_i during protocol operation.

1357 **Table 22 – MCount and DCount\_i values**

Phase	MCount		DCount_i	
	Dec	Bin	Dec	Bin
Initial or after timeout	0	000	7	111
Cyclic	1	001	6	110
	2	010	5	101
	3	011	4	100
	4	100	3	011
	5	101	2	010
	6	110	1	001
	7	111	0	000

1358

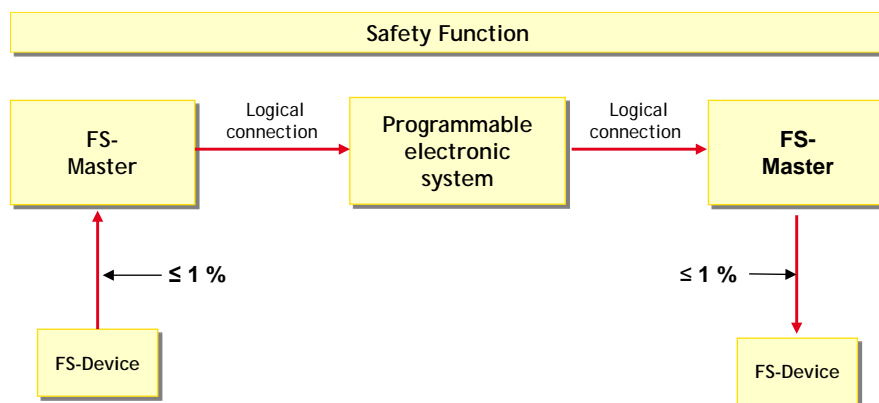
#### 1359 11.4.6 CRC signature

1360 For the design of the CRC mechanism and the calculation of the residual error probability/rate  
1361 several parameters and assumptions are required:

- 1362 • Explicit transmission of safety measures as opposed to implicit transmission. In this case,  
1363 formulas are available within IEC 61784-3, Edition 3.

- 1364 • The sampling rate of safety PDUs is assumed to be a maximum of 1000 sampled safety  
1365 PDUs per second.
- 1366 • The monitoring times for errors in safety PDUs are listed in Table 30. Any detected CRC  
1367 error within the safety communication layer shall trip the corresponding safety function  
1368 (safe state). During the monitoring time only one nuisance trip is permitted. Maintenance  
1369 is required.
- 1370 • The generator polynomials in use shall be proven to be proper within the SPDU range.
- 1371 • The seed value to be used for the CRC signature calculation is "1" (see D.3.6).
- 1372 • In case the result of the CRC signature calculation leads to a "0", a "1" shall be sent and  
1373 evaluated at the receiver side correspondingly.
- 1374 • The assumed bit error probability for calculations is  $10^{-2}$ .

1375 Figure 42 shows the so-called 1 % share rule of the IEC 61784-3. For IO-Link Safety it  
1376 means, the residual error rate of an IO-Link Safety logical connection shall not exceed 1 % of  
1377 the average probability of a dangerous failure (PFH) of that safety function with the highest  
1378 SIL the safety communication is designed for, which is SIL3. This value is  $10^{-9}/h$ .



1379

1380

**Figure 42 – The 1 % share rule of IEC 61784-3**

1381 Calculations under the above conditions have shown the following possibilities (see Annex D):

- 1382 – For a CRC16 proper polynomial ( $0x4EAB$ ) 4 octets of process data (safety PDU length = 7  
1383 octets);
- 1384 – For a CRC32 proper polynomial ( $0xF4ACFB13$ ) 26 octets of process data (safety PDU  
1385 length = 32 octets).

1386 Thus, support of two variants is provided: CRC-16 with up to 4 octets of safety I/O data and  
1387 CRC-32 with up to 26 octets.

#### 1388 11.4.7 Data types for IO-Link Safety

##### 1389 11.4.7.1 General

1390 The cyclically exchanged functional safety data structures between FS-Device and FS-Master  
1391 comprise FS process I/O data and the IO-Link Safety protocol trailer. They are transmitted in  
1392 Safety PDUs.

1393 Acyclically exchanged functional safety data structures are transmitted in IO-Link On-request  
1394 Data (OD) containers either from a dedicated tool or from a user program within an FS-PLC.  
1395 In this case additional securing mechanisms (e.g. CRC signature) are required at each and  
1396 every transfer or after a parameter block.

##### 1397 11.4.7.2 FS process I/O data (PDin and PDout)

1398 For the FS process I/O data a well-defined set of data types and a corresponding description  
1399 is defined for both FS-Device and FS-Master for correct processing and mapping to the  
1400 upper-level FSCPs. Table 23 lists the three permitted data types (see Annex C).

1401

**Table 23 – FS process I/O data types**

Data type	Coding	Length	See [1]	Device example
BooleanT/bit	BooleanT ("packed form" for efficiency, no WORD structures); assignment of signal names to bits is possible.	1 bit	Clause E.2.2; Table E.22 and Figure E.8	Proximity switch
IntegerT(16)	IntegerT (enumerated or signed)	2 octets	Clause E.2.4; Table E.4, E.7 and Figure E.2	Protection fields of laser scanner
IntegerT(32)	IntegerT (enumerated or signed)	4 octets	Clause E.2.4; Table E.4, E.6, and Figure E.2	Encoder or length measurement ( $\approx \pm 2$ km, resolution 1 $\mu$ m)

1402

**11.4.7.3 Qualifier**

1404 FS-Devices normally do not require qualifiers (see 11.10.2). The qualifier bits are configured  
 1405 together with the Process Data (or Safe Data = SD) during the mapping to the upper level  
 1406 FSCP system. The data structures depend on the rules of these FSCP systems.

1407 In case of FS-Terminals (see 11.10.3) the rules in Table 24 for the layout of binary and digital  
 1408 data and their qualifier bits apply.

1409

**Table 24 – Rules for the layout of values and qualifiers**

No.	Rule	Remark
1	Only Boolean (DI, DO) and IntegerT(16) or IntegerT(32) (AI, AO) data types shall be used. Any value shall be assigned to one of these categories.	
2	Boolean values precede Integer values.	
3	IntegerT(16) precedes IntegerT(32) values	
4	Values precede qualifier in an octet-wise manner	
5	Qualifiers follow directly input values. In case of no input values only the qualifiers for output values are placed.	
6	Qualifier for input values precede qualifier for output values	
7	Qualifiers for each category (DI, DO, AI, AO) are packed separately in an octet-wise manner.	
8	If data types are missing the remaining data types catch up.	

1410 Table 25 shows the ranking of values and qualifiers.

1411

**Table 25 – Order of values and qualifier**

Order	To FS-Master	To FS-Device
1	Value DI	Value DO
2	Value AI	Value AO
3	Qualifier DI	–
4	Qualifier AI	–
5	Qualifier DO	–
6	Qualifier AO	–

1412

**11.4.7.4 IO-Link Safety protocol trailer**

1414 The data types for the protocol trailer ("safety code") are specified in Annex C.5.

1415 **11.4.7.5 FSP and FST parameter**

1416 No particular data type definitions are required.

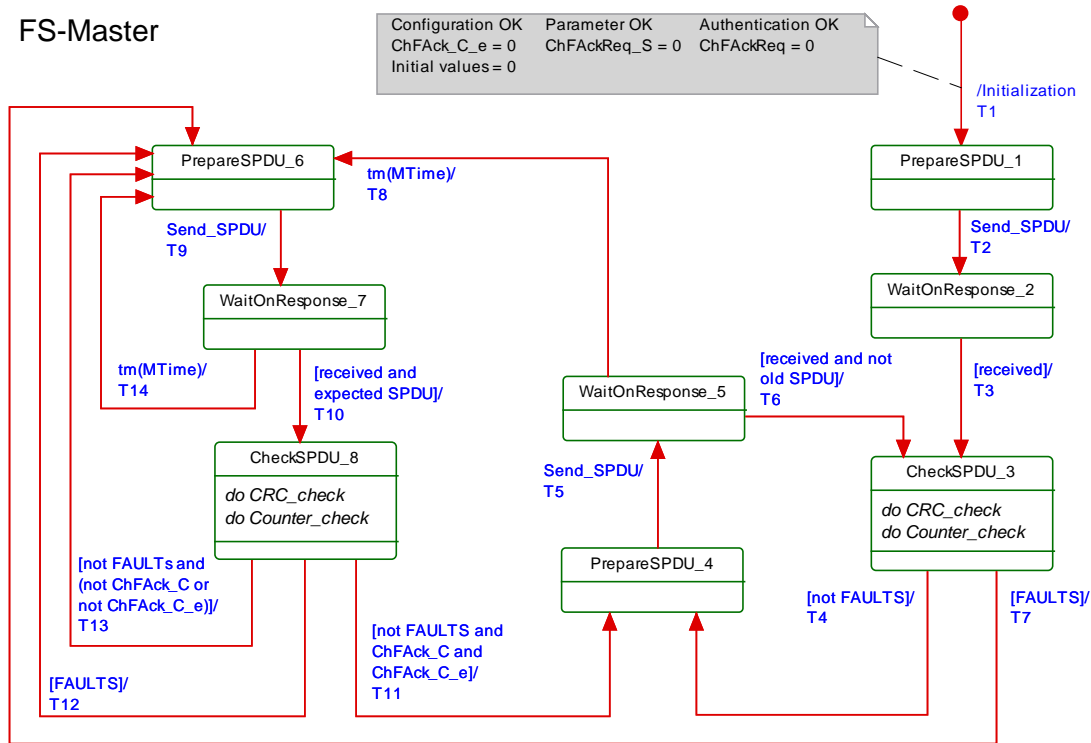
1417 **11.5 SCL behavior**

1418 **11.5.1 General**

1419 The state machines for the FS-Master and the FS-Device safety communication layer are  
 1420 designed using the chosen safety measures in Table 16 and the protocol signals in 11.4.5.

1421 **11.5.2 SCL state machine of the FS-Master**

1422 Figure 43 shows the FS-Master state machine for wired IO-Link point-to-point communication.



1423

1424 **Figure 43 – SCL state machine of the FS-Master**

1425 The terms used in Figure 43 are defined in Table 26.

1426 **Table 26 – Definition of terms used in SCL state machine of the FS-Master**

Term	Definition
ChFAck_C	Operator acknowledgment for the safety function via the FS-Gateway
FAULTS	MTimeout: FS-Master timeout when waiting on an FS-Device SPDU response, or MCommErr: FS-Master detects a corrupted FS-Device SPDU response (incl. counter error), or DTimeout: FS-Device reported a timeout of its SCL via Status&DCnt Byte, or DCommErr: FS-Device reported a CRC (incl. counter error) by its SCL via Status&DCnt Byte

1427

**Table 27 – FS-Master SCL states and transitions**

STATE NAME	STATE DESCRIPTION
Initialization	Initial state of the FS-Master SCL instance upon power-on (one per port).
1 PrepareSPDU	Preparation of a ( <i>regular</i> ) SPDU for the FS-Device. Send SPDU when prepared.
2 WaitOnResponse	SCL is waiting on SPDU from FS-Device.
3 CheckSPDU	Check received SPDU for not FAULTS (→ T4). In case of FAULTS: errors within the Status&DCnt Byte (DCommErr, DTimeout, SDset) → T7
4 PrepareSPDU	Preparation of a ( <i>regular</i> ) SPDU for the FS-Device. Send SPDU when prepared.



STATE NAME		STATE DESCRIPTION	
5 WaitOnResponse		SCL is waiting on next SPDU from FS-Device not carrying the previous DCount_i.	
6 PrepareSPDU		Preparation of an ( <i>exceptional</i> ) SPDU for the FS-Device (due to MTimeout, missing OpAck, or FAULTS).	
7 WaitOnResponse		SCL is waiting on next SPDU from FS-Device not carrying the previous DCount_i. When received → T10, after MTimeout → T14.	
8 CheckSPDU		Check received SPDU for a CRC error (MCommErr) and for potential FS-Device faults within the Status&DCnt Byte (DTimeout, DCommErr). Once a fault occurred, no automatic restart of a safety function is permitted unless an operator acknowledgement signal (ChFack_C) arrived (see Figure 38). Hint: A delay time may be required avoiding the impact of an occasional system shutdown.	
TRANSITION	SOURCE STATE	TARGET STATE	ACTION
T1	0	1	use SD, setSD =1, SDset_S =1 MCount = 0
T2	1	2	–
T3	2	3	–
T4	3	4	MCount = MCount + 1 if MCount = 8 then MCount = 1 if SDset =1 or setSD_C =1 then use SDin, SDset_S =1 else use PDin, SDset_S =0 if setSD_C =1 then use SDout, setSD =1 else use PDout, setSD =0
T5	4	5	restart MTimer
T6	5	3	–
T7	3	6	use SD, setSD =1, SDset_S =1 MCount = MCount + 1 if MCount = 8 then MCount = 1
T8	5	6	use SD, setSD =1, SDset_S =1 MCount = 0
T9	6	7	restart MTimer
T10	7	8	–
T11	8	4	ChFackReq =0, ChFackReq_S =0, ChFack_C_e =0, MCount = MCount + 1 if MCount = 8 then MCount = 1 if SDset =1 or setSD_C =1 then use SDin, SDset_S =1 else use PDin, SDset_S =0 if setSD_C =1 then use SDout, setSD =1 else use PDout, setSD =0
T12	8	6	ChFackReq =0, ChFackReq_S =0, ChFack_C_e =0, use SD, setSD =1, SDset_S =1 MCount = MCount + 1 if MCount = 8 then MCount = 1
T13	8	6	ChFackReq =1, ChFackReq_S =1, /*set qualifier/acknowledgment request*/ if ChFack_C = 0 then ChFack_C_e =1 use SD, setSD =1, SDset_S =1 MCount = MCount + 1 if MCount = 8 then MCount = 1
T14	7	6	ChFackReq =0, ChFackReq_S =0, ChFack_C_e =0, use SD, setSD =1, SDset_S =1 MCount = 0

1428

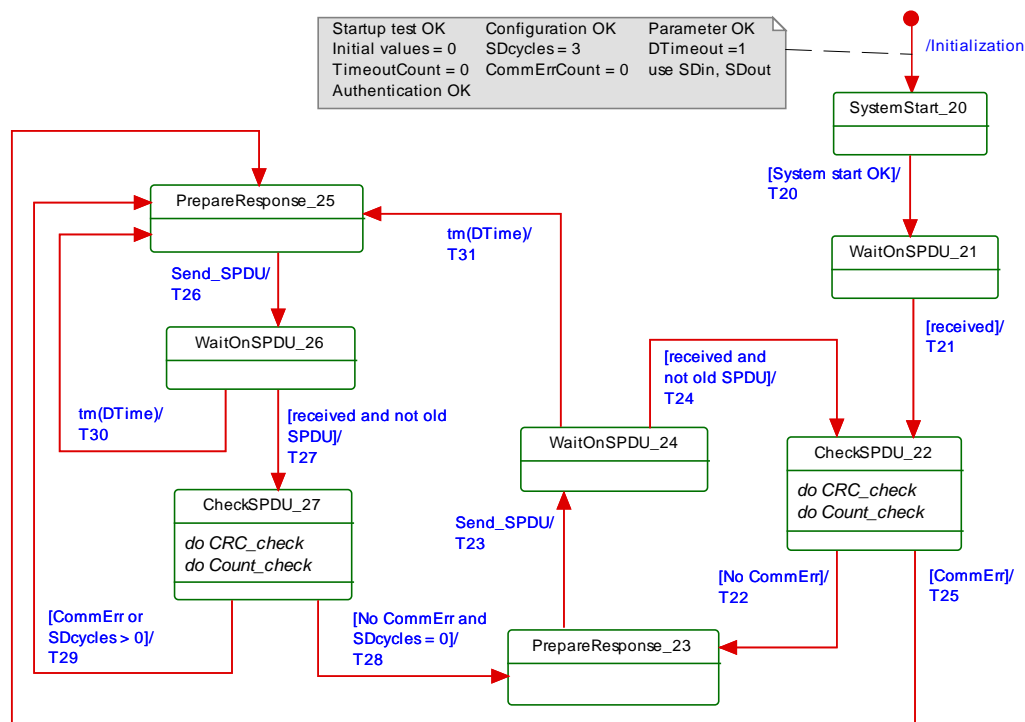
1429

INTERNAL ITEMS	TYPE	DEFINITION
MTimer	Timer	This timer checks the arrival of the next valid SPDU from the FS-Device in time. The FS-Master Tool is responsible to define this watchdog time. Value range is 0 ... 65 535 ms.
ChFack_C_e	Flag	By means of this auxiliary variable (bit) it is ensured that the safe state will be left only after a signal change of ChFack_C from 0 → 1 (edge). Without this mechanism an operator could overrule safe states by permanently actuating the ChFack_C signal.
FAULTS	Flags	Permanent storage of the following errors or failures can be omitted within the FS-Master, if it can be assumed that the upper level FSCP system prevents from automatic restart of safety functions (no FS-Device persistence): - MCommErr - MTimeout - DCommErr, including counter error (Status&DCnt Bit 1) - DTimeout (Status&DCnt Bit 0)
Expected SPDU	Guard	Mirrored inverted counter (DCount_i = inverted MCount)
Not old SPDU	Guard	Counter value ≠ value of previous SPDU
do CRC_check	Activity	SCL calculates CRC signature across received SPDU while signature value = "0" and compares with received CRC signature
do Counter_check	Activity	SCL checks whether DCount carries an expected value (mirror)
NOTE Variables within ACTIONS are defined in 11.3		

1430

1431 **11.5.3 SCL state machine of the FS-Device**

1432 Figure 44 shows the corresponding FS-Device state machine.



1433

1434 **Figure 44 – SCL state machine of the FS-Device**

1435 The terms used in Figure 44 are defined in Table 28.

1436 **Table 28 – Definition of terms used in SCL state machine of the FS-Device**

Term	Definition
CommErr	The SCL within the FS-Device detected a CRC or counter error in the received SPDU

Term	Definition
CommErrCount	See INTERNAL ITEM in Table 29
SDcycles	See INTERNAL ITEM in Table 29
DTimeout	FSP_WatchdogTime expired
TimeoutCount	See INTERNAL ITEM in Table 29

1437

1438

**Table 29 – FS-Device SCL states and transitions**

STATE NAME		STATE DESCRIPTION	
Initialization		Initialization of the FS-Device upon power-on. Upon power-on, the FS-Device (actuator) sets the PDout to "0". Upon power-on the FS-Device (sensor) is sending "0".	
20 SystemStart		Immediately after FSP parameterization the FS-Device sets PDout to SDout values. Immediately after FSP parameterization it is sending Process Data (PD).	
21 WaitOnSPDU		SCL is waiting on next SPDU from FS-Master.	
22 CheckSPDU		Check received SPDU from FS-Master for CRC errors; set ChFackReq_DC = ChFackReq. When guard "No CommErr" = true → T22. When guard "CommErr" = true → T25	
23 PrepareResponse		Preparation of ( <i>regular</i> ) SPDU response for the FS-Master (response message)	
24 WaitOnSPDU		SCL is waiting on next ( <i>regular</i> ) SPDU from FS-Master not carrying the previous MCount. After FSP_WatchdogTime expired → T27. When SPDU received and guard "MCounter_incremented" = true → T24 ( <i>regular</i> cycle)	
25 PrepareResponse		Preparation of ( <i>exceptional</i> ) SPDU response for the FS-Master (due to DTimeout or DCommErr = error report bits in Status&DCnt Byte)	
26 WaitOnSPDU		SCL is waiting on next SPDU from FS-Master not carrying the previous MCount. After FSP_WatchdogTime expired → T30. When SPDU received and guard "MCounter_incremented" = true → T27	
27 CheckSPDU		Check received SPDU from FS-Master for CRC errors; set ChFackReq_DC = ChFackReq. When guard "No CommErr and SDcycles >=1" = true → T28. When guard "CommErr or SDcycles <1" = true → T29	

TRAN-SITION	SOURCE STATE	TARGET STATE	ACTION
T20	20	21	–
T21	21	22	–
T22	22	23	<pre> use PDin_D, DCommErr = 0,                               /*Status&amp;DCnt, Bit 1*/ DTimeout = 0,                               /*Status&amp;DCnt, Bit 0*/ DCount_i = MCount_inv, restart DTimer if SDcycles &lt;&gt; 0 then   use SDout, setSD_DC=1, SDset =1,           /*during SDcycles: SDset_p =1*/   SDcycles = SDcycles - 1 else   use PDout, setSD_DC=0, SDset = 0 if setSD =1                                 /*use_SD =1*/ then   use SDout, setSD_DC=1, </pre>
T23	23	24	<pre> if SDset_DS = 1                             /* FS-Device fault*/ then SDset = 1 </pre>
T24	24	22	–
T25	22	25	<pre> use PDin_D, use SDout, SDset = 1, DCommErr =1,                               /*Status&amp;DCnt, Bit 1*/ CommErrCount = 1, DCount_i = MCount_inv, SDcycles = 3, restart DTimer </pre>
T26	25	26	–

1439

TRAN-SITION	SOURCE STATE	TARGET STATE	ACTION
T27	26	27	-
T28	27	23	use PDin_D, use SDout, setSD_DC=0, SDset = 0, DCount_i = MCount_inv, DCommErr =0, /*Status&DCnt, Bit 1*/ DTimeout =0, /*Status&DCnt, Bit 0*/ restart DTimer,
T29	27	25	use PDin_D, use SDout, setSD_DC=1, SDset = 1, DCount_i = MCount_inv, restart DTimer <b>if</b> CommErr <b>then</b> DCommErr = 1, /*Status&DCnt, Bit 1*/ CommErrCount = 1, SDcycles = 3, <b>else</b> SDcycles = SDcycles -1 <b>if</b> CommErrCount = 1 <b>then</b> DCommErr = 1, /*Status&DCnt, Bit 1*/ CommErrCount = 0 <b>else</b> DCommErr = 0 /*Status&DCnt, Bit 1*/ <b>if</b> TimeoutCount = 1 <b>then</b> DTimeout = 1, /*Status&DCnt, Bit 0*/ TimeoutCount = 0 <b>else</b> DTimeout = 0 /*Status&DCnt, Bit 0*/
T30	26	25	use PDin_D, use SDout, setSD_DC=1, SDset =1, DTimeout =1, /*Status&DCnt, Bit 0*/ TimeoutCount =1, SDcycles = 3, restart DTimer, DCount_i = MCount_inv
T31	24	25	use PDin_D, use SDout, setSD_DC=1, SDset =1, DTimeout =1, /*Status&DCnt, Bit 0*/ TimeoutCount =1, SDcycles = 3, restart DTimer, DCount_i = MCount_inv
<b>INTERNAL ITEM</b>			<b>DEFINITION</b>
MCount_inv		Variable	Inverse value of current MCount value
SDcycles		Counter	This decremental counter is used to cause the FS-Device setting SDout and SDset for at least 3 cycles during start-up and after a fault. Value range is 3 to 0.
CommErrCount		Counter	This decremental counter is used to guarantee the bit "DCommErr" within the Status&DCnt Byte is being set at least for 1 cycle or for a maximum of 2 cycles. Value range is 1 to 0.
TimeoutCount		Counter	This decremental counter is used to guarantee the bit "DTimeout" within the Status&DCnt Byte is being set at least for 1 cycle or for a maximum of 2 cycles. Value range is 1 to 0.
do CRC_check		Activity	SCL calculates CRC signature across received SPDU while signature value = "0" and compares with received CRC signature
do Counter_check		Activity	SCL checks whether MCount carries either "0" or an expected subsequent value
NOTE Variables within ACTIONS are defined in 11.3			

1440

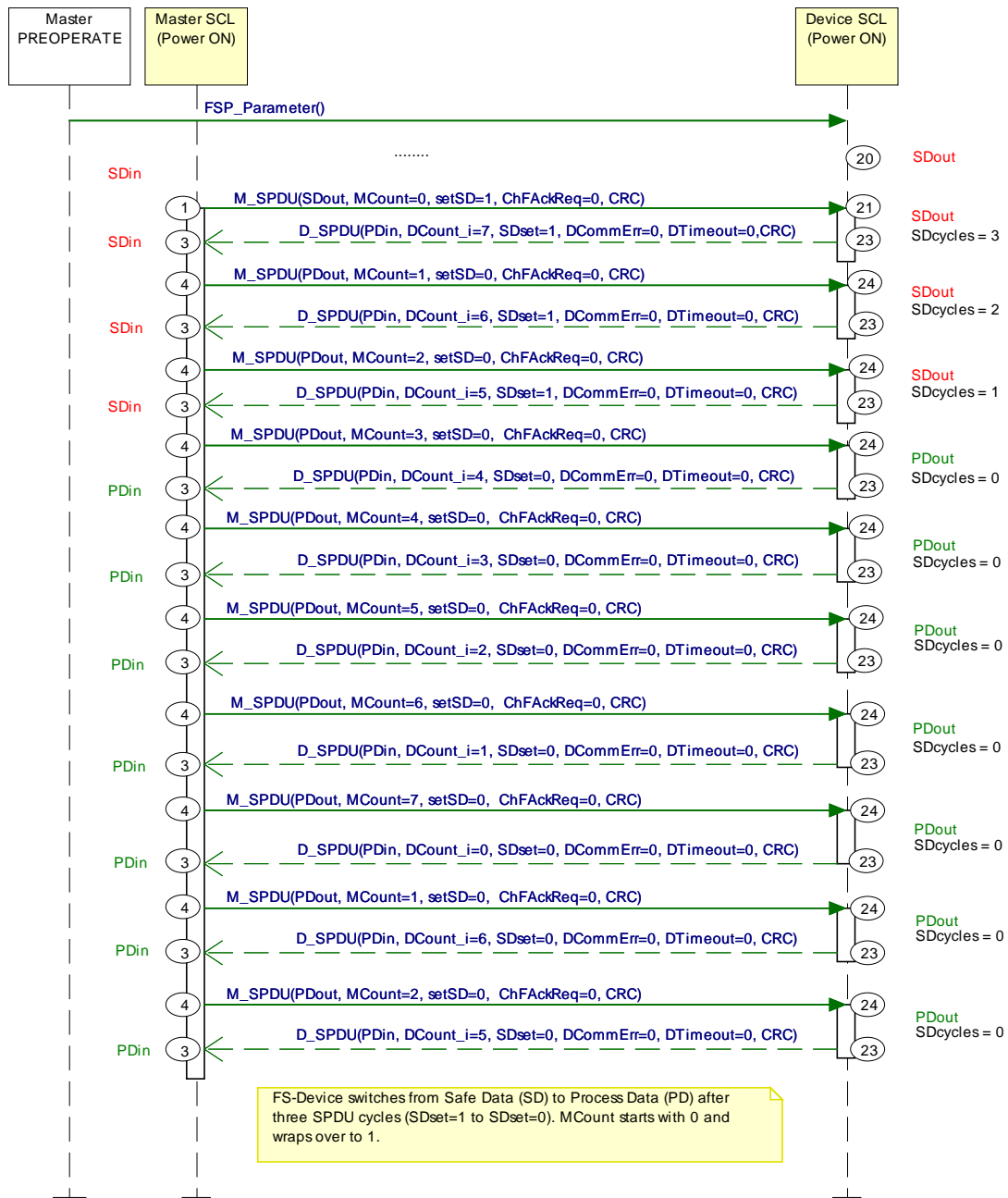
1441

1442 It is very unlikely for an FS-Device to receive SPDUs with all octets "0". The SCL within the  
1443 FS-Device shall ignore such an SPDU. Normally, at least the CRC signature will be "1" if  
1444 Process data and Control Byte are "0" according to the rules in 11.4.6.

1445 **11.5.4 Sequence charts for several use cases**

1446 **11.5.4.1 FS-Master and FS-Device both with power ON**

1447 Figure 45 shows the sequence chart of a regular start-up of both FS-Master and FS-Device.



1448

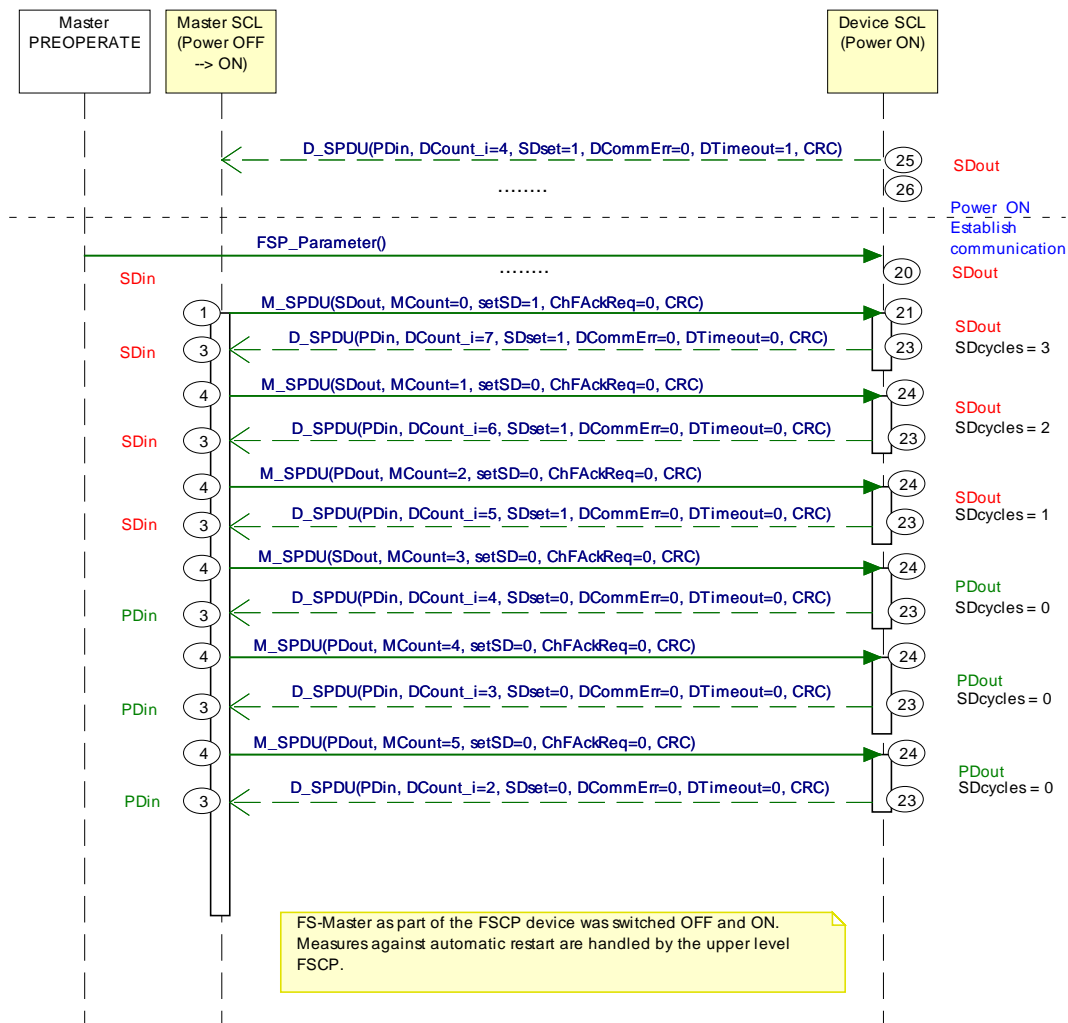
1449

**Figure 45 – FS-Master and FS-Device both with power ON**

1450 Upon power-on both FS-Master and FS-Device are providing SDin (PDin = "0") and SDout  
 1451 (PDout = "0") respectively. Both keep these values for 3 communication cycles (SDcycles)  
 1452 before switching to the regular mode, where only the MCounter and DCounter values are  
 1453 changing.

1454 **11.5.4.2 FS-Master with power OFF → ON**

1455 Figure 46 shows the sequence chart of regular operation while FS-Master has been switched  
 1456 OFF and ON again.



1457

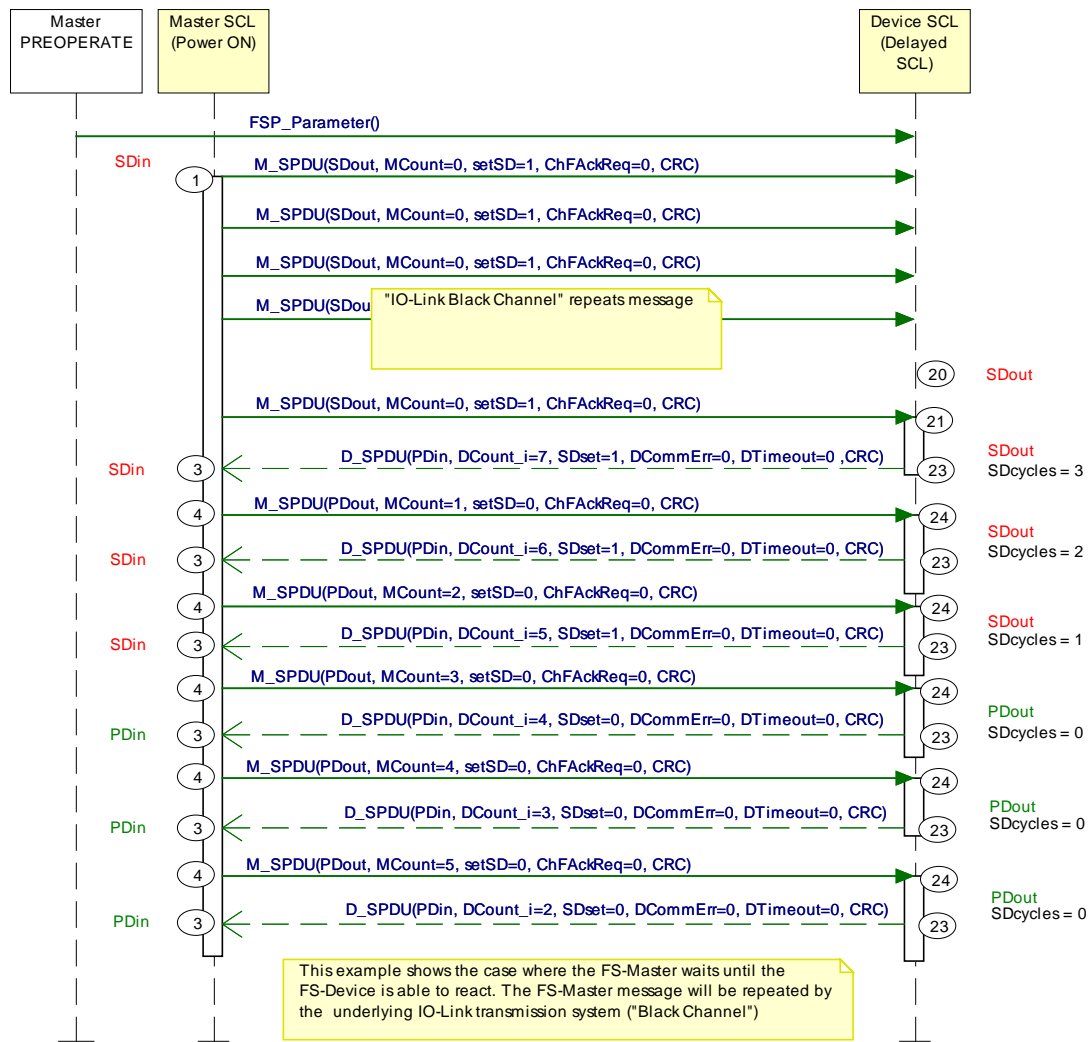
1458

**Figure 46 – FS-Master power OFF → ON**

1459 The FS-Device communication part is always powered by the FS-Master. Thus, if the FS-  
 1460 Master is switched OFF and ON, the FS-Device is just following and a regular start-up occurs.  
 1461 Since the FS-Master is part of an upper level FSCP system, this FSCP system is responsible  
 1462 to prevent from automatic restart of safety functions in this case.

1463 **11.5.4.3 FS-Device with delayed SCL start**

1464 Figure 47 shows the sequence chart when the SCL start within the FS-Device is delayed.



1465

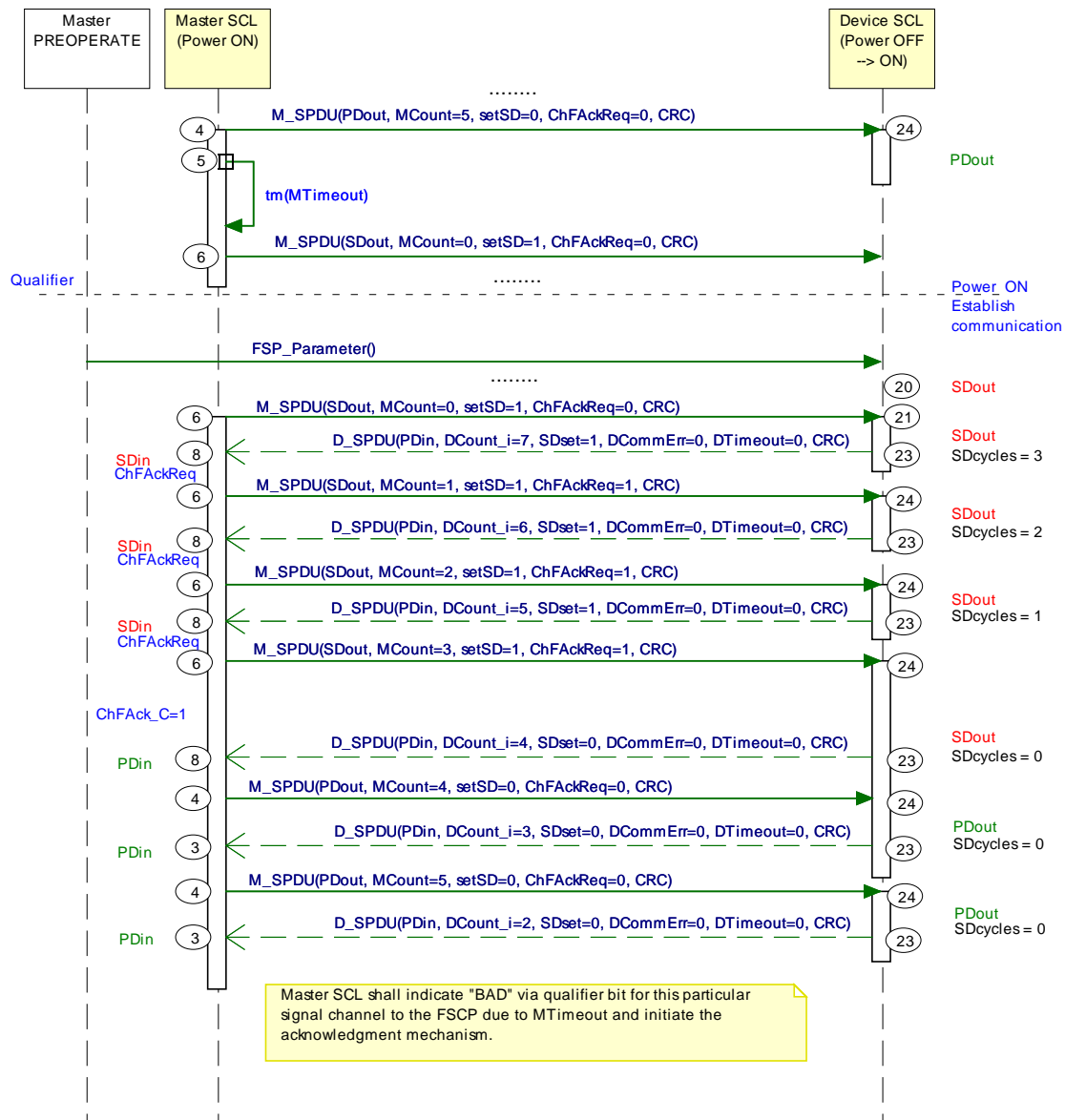
1466 **Figure 47 – FS-Device with delayed SCL start**

1467 This diagram shows how an FS-Master SCL waits on the SCL of the FS-Device in case of  
 1468 delays. The initial SPDU of the FS-Master is repeated by the IO-Link transmission system  
 1469 (black channel) until the SCL of the FS-Device is ready to process in state 21.

1470 As long as the SCL of the FS-Device is not ready, the response SPDU contains all "0"  
 1471 and the FS-Master SCL will ignore such an SPDU. PDvalid/invalid of IO-Link is reserved for the non-  
 1472 safety part of the entire message.

1473 **11.5.4.4 FS-Device with power OFF and ON**

1474 Figure 48 shows the sequence chart when the FS-Device switches power OFF and ON again.



1475

1476

**Figure 48 – FS-Device with power OFF and ON**

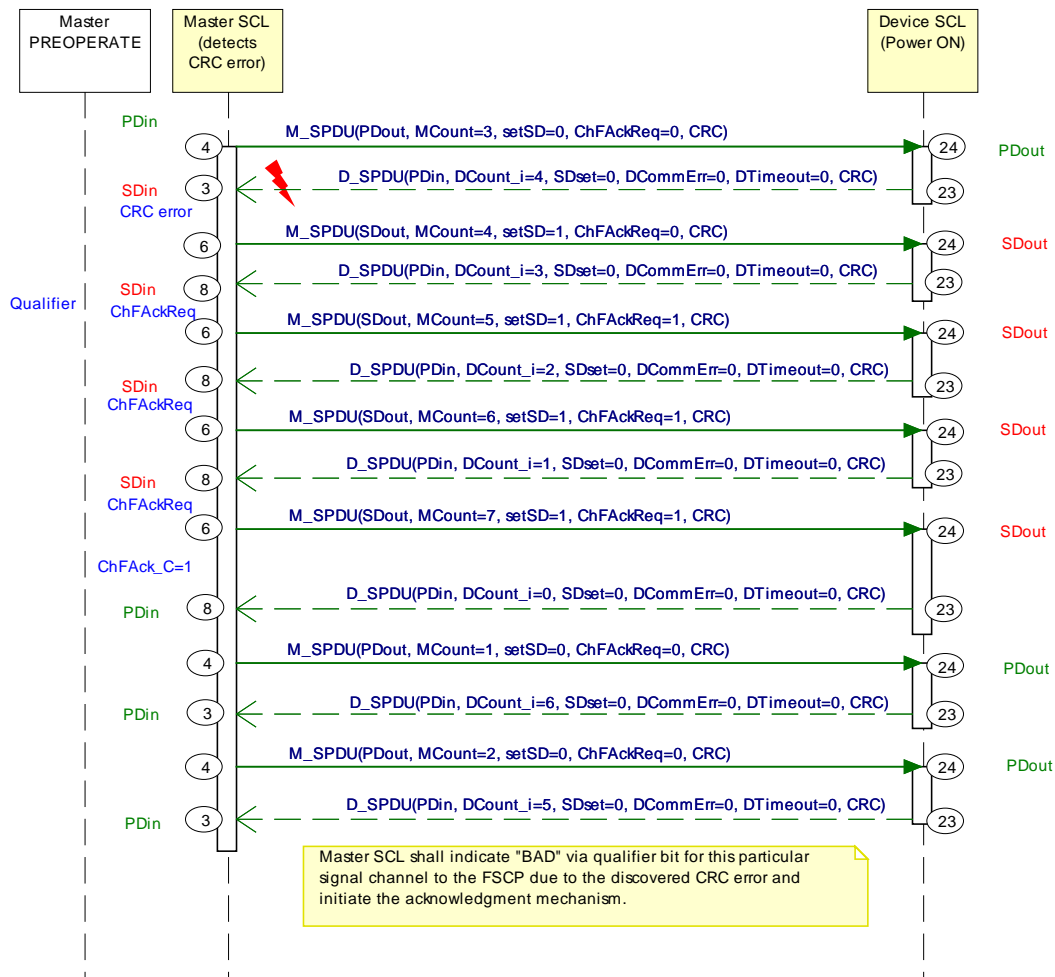
1477 This case assumes for example a short unplug and plug of the FS-Device causing a FAULT  
 1478 (MTimeout) on the FS-Master side. This FAULT causes a Qualifier bit to be set that requires  
 1479 via ChFackReq (=1) an acknowledgment via ChFack\_C (=1). FS-Master and FS-Device keep  
 1480 SDin and SDout until this acknowledgment arrived.

1481



1482 **11.5.4.6 FS-Master detects CRC signature error**

1483 Figure 49 shows the sequence chart when the FS-Master detects a CRC signature error.



1484

1485 **Figure 49 – FS-Master detects CRC signature error**

1486 FS-Master received an SPDU with falsified data or falsified CRC signature which results in a  
 1487 "CRC error" (MCommErr). Both FS-Master and FS-Device switch to SDin and SDout  
 1488 respectively and the FS-Master/Gateway creates a qualifier bit and indicates a ChFackReq  
 1489 signal. This signal is indicated also to the FS-Device via ChFackReq (=1) for indication via  
 1490 LED (light emitting diode) to the user.

1491 FS-Master and FS-Device keep SDin and SDout until the acknowledgment ChFack\_C (=1)  
 1492 arrived.

1493

1494 **11.5.4.7 FS-Device detects CRC signature error**

1495 Figure 50 shows the sequence chart when the FS-Device detects a CRC signature error.



1496

1497 **Figure 50 – FS-Device detects CRC signature error**

1498 FS-Device received an SPDU with falsified data or falsified CRC signature which results in a  
 1499 "CRC error" (DCommErr). Both FS-Master and FS-Device switch to SDin and SDout  
 1500 respectively caused by FS-Device Status Byte information (SDset=1 and DCommErr=1). The  
 1501 FS-Master/Gateway creates a qualifier bit and indicates a ChFackReq signal. This signal is  
 1502 indicated also to the FS-Device via ChFackReq (=1) for indication via LED (light emitting  
 1503 diode) to the user.

1504 The FS-Device runs through 3 SDcycles and afterwards FS-Master and FS-Device keep SDin  
 1505 and SDout until the acknowledgment ChFack\_C (=1) arrived.

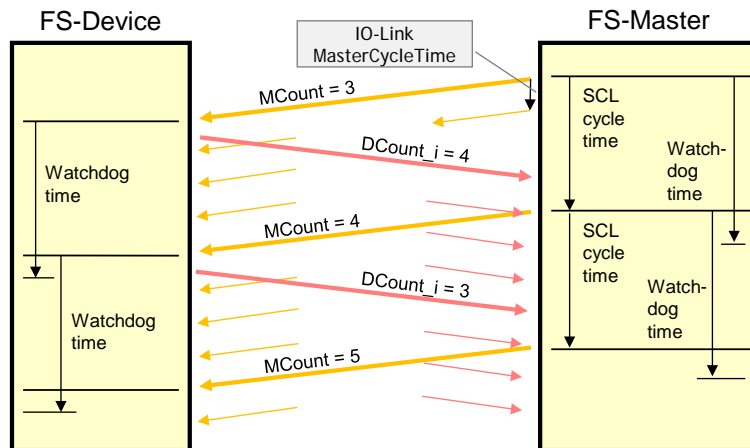
1506

1507

1508

1509 **11.5.5 Monitoring of safety times**

1510 Figure 51 illustrates IO-Link times and safety times.



1511

1512 **Figure 51 – Monitoring of the SCL cycle time**

1513 The base IO-Link system ("black channel") transmits SPDUs within the IO-Link  
 1514 MasterCycleTime (see [1], Table B.1) from the FS-Master to the FS-Device and back. The  
 1515 same SPDU, for example with MCount = 3, may be sent several times before the Safety  
 1516 Communication Layer (SCL) starts the next SCL cycle with MCount = 4. In the meantime, the  
 1517 FS-Master received the response SPDU from the FS-Device with DCount\_i = 4.

1518 Table 30 shows timing constraints.

1519 **Table 30 – Timing constraints**

Item	Constraints	
Synchronization	At each start-up and after an FS-Master timeout, the FS-Master SCL uses MCount = 0	
SCL cycle time	The SCL cycle time comprises the transmission time of the FS-Master SPDU, the FS-Device processing time, the transmission time of the FS-Device response SPDU, and the FS-Master processing time until the next FS-Master SPDU (see Figure 51)	
Watchdog time	The entire SCL cycle time is monitored by the watchdog timer, whose time value is defined by the parameter FSP_Watchdog (see A.2.6).	
Counter check	The counter values are included in the cyclic CRC signature calculation. An incorrect CRC signature value will already lead immediately to a safe state. The immediate counter check in some states is used for discarding "outdated SPDUs".	
Repetition	Repetition in case of detected incorrect CRC signatures is not provided	
PFH-Monitor	The FS-Master holds the information about the reliability of both SPDU transmissions from the FS-Device and to the FS-Device (see Table 21, bit 1). Thus, the FS-Master monitors the average probability of a dangerous failure within a given time frame (PFH-Monitor time). The FS-Master state machine is designed such that any corrupted SPDU leads always to a safe state. Whenever the unlikely event of a detected corrupted SPDU occurs during the shift of production or operation, the responsible operator is assigned to play the role of the PFH-Monitor and can tolerate the indication and acknowledge it. In case of frequent indications more often than once per PFH-Monitor time, a check of the installation or the transmission quality should be performed (see Annex H.6).	
PFH-Monitor time (h)	10	FSP_ProtMode = 0x01; 16 bit CRC, see A.2.5
	10	FSP_ProtMode = 0x02; 32 bit CRC, see A.2.5

1520

1521 **11.5.6 Reaction in the event of a malfunction**

1522 **11.5.6.1 General**

1523 Subclauses 11.5.6.2 to 11.5.6.10 specify possible communication errors. They are derived  
 1524 from clause 5.3 in IEC 61784-3, Ed.3, and refer to Table 16 in this document. Additional notes  
 1525 are provided to indicate the typical behavior of the IO-Link black channel.

**11.5.6.2 Corruption**

1526 Messages may be corrupted due to errors within a communication participant, due to errors  
1527 on the transmission medium, or due to message interference.  
1528

1529 NOTE 1 Bit falsifications within messages during transfer is a normal phenomenon for any standard  
1530 communication system, such errors are detected at receivers with high probability by use of a hash function, in  
1531 case of IO-Link a checksum (CKT or CKS), and the message is ignored (Appendix A.1, and clause 7.2.2.1 in [1] or  
1532 [2]). After two retries the Master initiates a complete restart with wake-up.

1533 NOTE 2 If the recovery or repetition procedures take longer than a specified deadline, a message is classed as  
1534 "Unacceptable delay" (see 11.5.6.6).

**Countermeasures:**

1535  
1536 The CRC signature as specified in 11.4.6 detects the bit errors in messages between FS-  
1537 Master and FS-Device to the extent required for SIL3 applications. The CRC signature is  
1538 generated across the SPDU including the PD or SD data, and the Control&MCnt or  
1539 Status&DCnt octet for cyclic communication.

1540 At start-up, the FSP parameters are sent once to the FS-Device via ISDU services. They are  
1541 secured by the 16 bit FSP\_ProtParCRC signature. The frequency of its occurrence is  
1542 assumed to be 1/day as parameter for the calculation of the residual error rate.

1543 The CRC signature of the first SPDU sent by the SCL of the FS-Master after start-up includes  
1544 the FSP\_ProtParCRC signature. All following cyclic SPDUs exclude this signature.

**11.5.6.3 Unintended repetition**

1545 Due to an error, fault or interference, messages are repeated.

1547 NOTE 1 Repetition by the sender is a normal procedure when an expected acknowledgment/response is not  
1548 received from a target station, or when a receiver station detects a missing message and asks for it to be resent.

**Countermeasures:**

1550 The data within the black channel are transferred cyclically. Thus, an incorrect message with  
1551 an SPDU that is inserted once will immediately be overwritten by a correct message. The  
1552 thereby possible delay of a demand can be one DTime/MTime.

**11.5.6.4 Incorrect sequence**

1553 Due to an error, fault or interference, the predefined sequence (for example natural numbers,  
1554 time references) associated with messages from a particular source is incorrect.  
1555

1556 NOTE 1 In IO-Link only one sequence is active from one source, the message handler.

**Countermeasures:**

1558 The receiver will detect any incorrect sequence due to the stringently sequential expectation  
1559 of the MCount and DCount values.

**11.5.6.5 Loss**

1561 Due to an error, fault or interference, a message or acknowledgment is not received.

**Countermeasures:**

1563 Lost information will be detected by stringently changing and examining the MCount/DCount  
1564 and/or MTime/DTime within the safety communication layer of the respective receiver.

**11.5.6.6 Unacceptable delay**

1566 Messages may be delayed beyond their permitted arrival time window, for example due to bit  
1567 falsifications in the transmission medium, congested transmission lines, interference, or due  
1568 to communication participants sending messages in such a manner that services are delayed  
1569 or denied (for example FIFOs in switches, bridges, routers).

1570 NOTE 1 IO-Link provides a point-to-point communication interface with defined message sequences and thus the  
1571 probability for congestion and storage of messages is very low.

1572 *Countermeasures:*

1573 A consecutive counter in each message (MCount/DCount) together with a watchdog timer  
1574 (MTime/DTime) will detect unacceptable delays.

#### 1575 **11.5.6.7 Insertion**

1576 Due to a fault or interference, a message is received that relates to an unexpected or  
1577 unknown source entity.

1578 NOTE 1 These messages are additional to the expected message stream, and because they do not have  
1579 expected sources, they cannot be classified as Correct, Unintended repetition, or Incorrect sequence.

1580 NOTE 2 IO-Link provides a point-to-point communication interface (Port) and thus the probability for insertion of  
1581 messages is very low.

1582 *Countermeasures:*

1583 The receiver will detect any incorrect sequence due to the stringently sequential expectation  
1584 of the MCount and DCount values.

#### 1585 **11.5.6.8 Masquerade**

1586 Due to a fault or interference, a message is inserted that relates to an apparently valid source  
1587 entity, so a misdirected non-safety related message may be received by a safety related  
1588 participant, which then treats it as safety related correct message.

1589 NOTE 1 Communication systems used for safety-related applications can use additional checks to detect  
1590 Masquerade, such as authorised source identities and pass-phrases or cryptography.

1591 NOTE 2 IO-Link provides a point-to-point communication interface (Port) and thus the probability for insertion of  
1592 messages is very low.

1593 *Countermeasures:*

1594 The receiver will detect any incorrect sequence due to the stringently sequential expectation  
1595 of the MCount and DCount values. After changes of wiring, the FS-Devices can detect  
1596 misconnections through the FSP\_Authenticity1/2 and FSP\_Port parameters (see A.2.1 and  
1597 A.2.2) at start-up.

#### 1598 **11.5.6.9 Addressing**

1599 Due to a fault or interference, a safety related message is delivered to the incorrect safety  
1600 related participant, which then treats reception as correct. This includes the so-called  
1601 loopback error case, where the sender receives back its own sent message.

1602 NOTE 1 The probability of not detecting a misdirected non-safety related message is lower than the probability of  
1603 not detecting a misdirected safety related message since the SPDU structures are similar due to the shared  
1604 protocol procedures.

1605 NOTE 2 IO-Link provides a point-to-point communication interface (Port) and thus the probability for insertion of  
1606 messages is very low.

1607 *Countermeasures:*

1608 The receiver will detect any incorrect sequence due to the stringently sequential expectation  
1609 of the MCount and DCount values. After changes of wiring, the FS-Devices can detect  
1610 misconnections through the FSP\_Authenticity1/2 and FSP\_Port parameters (see A.2.1 and  
1611 A.2.2) at start-up.

#### 1612 **11.5.6.10 Loop-back**

1613 A special addressing error is the so-called loopback error case, where the sender receives  
1614 back its own sent message.

1615 *Countermeasures:*

1616 IO-Link Safety provides for inverted values for MCount and DCount from the FS-Device.

### 1617 **11.5.7 Start-up (communication)**

1618 An FS-Device starts always after an FS-Master since the FS-Master shall be the only one to  
1619 power-up at least the communication part of the FS-Device. Both devices usually require time  
1620 for safety self-tests that may exceed the standard timings defined in [1].

1621 Due to the initial behavior of an FS-Device as an OSSDe, the start-up is coordinated and  
1622 specified in 5.7, 7.2, and 7.3.

1623 The start-up of the underlying IO-Link communication system is specified in [1] and Figure 55.  
1624 Any deviating FSP authenticity or protocol parameter CRC signature shall lead to a safe state  
1625 of the particular FS-Master port.

## 1626 **11.6 SCL management**

### 1627 **11.6.1 Parameter overview (FSP and FST)**

1628 Annex A specifies a number of functional safety related parameters for communication  
1629 protocol services (FSP) as well as for the handling and integrity purposes of FS-Device  
1630 technology parameters (FST).

1631 The parameters are subdivided into 4 groups:

- 1632 • Authenticity
- 1633 • Safety communication
- 1634 • FS-I/O structure description
- 1635 • Auxiliary parameters

1636 The authenticity parameters combine the safety connection ID ("A-Code") of the FS-Master  
1637 (assigned by the upper level FSCP system) with the port number of the connected FS-Device.  
1638 Due to the point-to-point nature of the FS-Device communication with its Master, a one-time  
1639 check at start-up is sufficient to ensure authenticity (see 11.7.5).

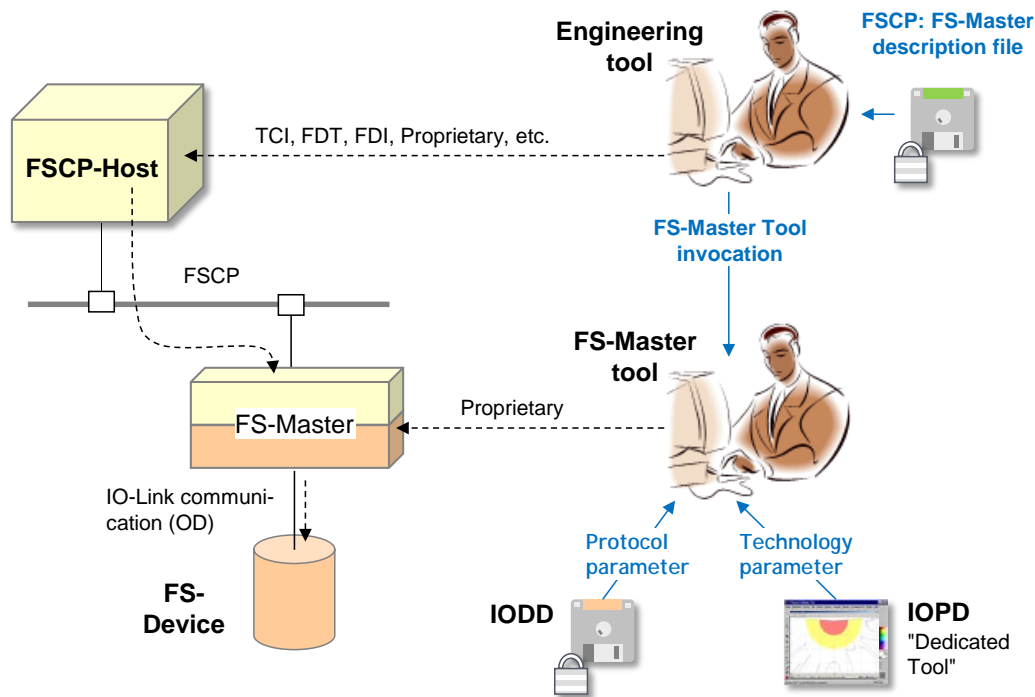
1640 The Safety Communication Layers (SCL) require parameters for protocol versions, protocol  
1641 modes such as CRC-16 or CRC-32, watchdog for timeliness, CRC signature to secure  
1642 technology parameters, and a CRC signature to secure the safety communication parameters.

1643 The next group contains a description of the FS I/O data structure, the FS-Device wants to  
1644 exchange with the FSCP-Host. This description facilitates the mapping to the description  
1645 which some FSCP systems require for set-up. During the mapping process the FS-Master tool  
1646 appends the qualifier bits, which are necessary for port-selective passivation.

1647 Auxiliary parameters are specified for several purposes. For example, to secure the functional  
1648 safety parameter description within the IODD, to support the automatic calculation of the  
1649 minimum watchdog time, to protect parameters from unauthorized access via a password, and  
1650 to enable invocation of an associated IOPD tool.

1651 Figure 52 shows an overview of the components and the activities around parameterization.

1652 An FS-Master as a gateway comes with a parameter description file for the FSCP system.  
1653 With the help of an engineering tool and these parameters, the FS-Master receives during  
1654 commissioning for example its FSCP connection ID ("A-Code" for authenticity) and its FSCP  
1655 watchdog time ("T-Code" for timeliness). Thus, the FSCP communication cycles are  
1656 independent from the IO-Link safety communication cycles between FS-Master and FS-  
1657 Device.



1658

1659

**Figure 52 – Parameter types and assignments**

1660 An FS-Master with its IO-Link side can be configured and parameterized with the help of its  
 1661 FS-Master tool. The IODD of an FS-Device contains besides the non-safety parameters also  
 1662 the safety section with the parameters in Annex A. The parameters can be set-up off-line or  
 1663 online the same way as with a non-safety system. The FSCP authenticity parameter can be  
 1664 copied from the engineering tool display to the IO-Link system FS-Master tool display (see  
 1665 A.2.1).

1666 It is possible to describe a small set of technology parameters (FST) in a non-safety manner,  
 1667 thus allowing the usage of the IO-Link standard data storage mechanism as described in 9.4.

1668 However, a separate dedicated IOPD tool, developed according IEC 61508-3 shall be used to  
 1669 calculate a CRC signature across the instance of the FST parameters. This CRC signature  
 1670 shall be entered into the corresponding FSP parameter (see A.2.7).

1671 The IOPD tool uses a new standardized IOPD communication interface and the same path to  
 1672 the FS-Device as the FS-Master tool itself.

## 1673 11.6.2 Parameterization approaches

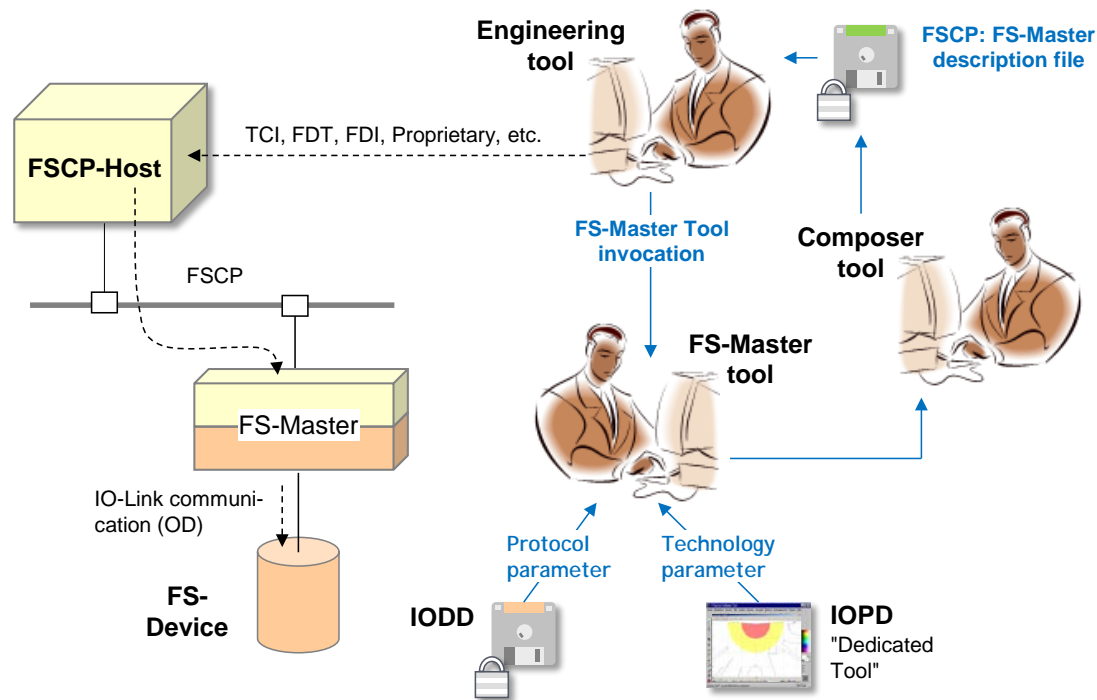
### 1674 11.6.2.1 FS-Master-centric

1675 The configuration and parameterization of a stand-alone IO-Link safety system corresponds  
 1676 mainly to the approach described in 11.6.1. The authenticity uses a default value in this case  
 1677 (see A.2.1).

1678 Figure 52 shows a loosely coupled system, where the parameterization is performed within  
 1679 the IO-Link safety part. Within the FSCP system, predefined FS I/O data structures are  
 1680 available and can be selected during commissioning.

### 1681 11.6.2.2 FSCP-Host-centric

1682 Some automation application areas prefer an FSCP-Host-centric approach. In this case, all  
 1683 parameters are expected to be stored within the FSCP-Host and downloaded at start-up into  
 1684 the FS-Master (FSCP-subsystem) and further down into the FS-Device.



1685

1686

**Figure 53 – FSCP-Host-centric system**

1687 Due to the fieldbus-independent design of IO-Link and IO-Link safety, all parameters are  
 1688 mapped into the fieldbus device description file (for example EDS, GSD, etc.) with the help of  
 1689 a Composer tool. It is one of the objectives of IO-Link safety to optimize the design of safety  
 1690 parameters such that an efficient mapping is possible.

## 1691 11.7 Integrity measures

### 1692 11.7.1 IODD integrity

1693 The parameters specified in Annex A are coded in an IODD file using XML. In order to protect  
 1694 the safety parameter description within this file, a CRC signature ("FS\_IODD\_CRC") shall be  
 1695 calculated across its safety-related parts (see Annex D and Annex E.3). Usually, the IODD file  
 1696 travels many ways and the CRC signature helps detecting potentially scrambled bits.

### 1697 11.7.2 Tool integrity

1698 When opening the IODD, the FS-Master tool (interpreter of the IODD file) shall calculate the  
 1699 CRC signature across the safety-related parts and compare the result with the parameter  
 1700 "FSP\_ParamDescCRC".

1701 During the data manipulations within the FS-Master tool as well as within Device Tools/IOPDs  
 1702 ("Dedicated Tools") such as display, intended modification, storage/retrieval, and  
 1703 down/upload, parameter values could become incorrect. It is the responsibility of the designer  
 1704 to develop the tools fulfilling the requirements of IEC 61508-3 or ISO 13849-1 for software  
 1705 tools classified as T3.

1706 In case of an FSCP-Host-centric system, these requirements apply for the Composer and the  
 1707 Engineering tool.

### 1708 11.7.3 Transmission integrity

1709 Since communication between the FS-Master tool and the FS-Device is proprietary, it is the  
 1710 responsibility of the FS-Master tool to ensure transmission integrity and authenticity, for  
 1711 example through CRC signatures and/or read back (see Table 16 and D.3.1).

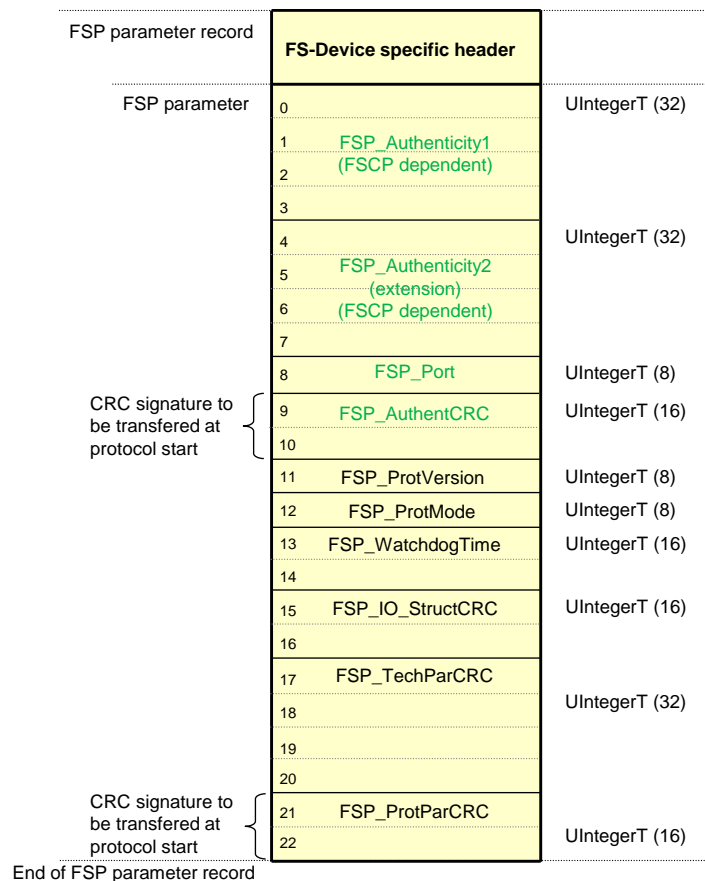


1712 **11.7.4 Verification and validation**

1713 It is the responsibility of the FS-Device designer to specify the necessary verification and  
 1714 validation steps (for example tests; see H.6) within the user/safety manual and/or within the  
 1715 "dedicated tool" (IOPD).

1716 **11.7.5 Authenticity**

1717 In either the FS-Master-centric or in the FSCP-Host-centric approach a record of parameter  
 1718 data is stored in the FS-Master per port/FS-Device as shown in Figure 54.



1719

1720

**Figure 54 – Structure of the protocol parameter (FSP) record**

1721 The authenticity parameters are secured by FSP\_AuthenCRC for transmission from FS-  
 1722 Master Tool to FS-Master and further to the FS-Device. The procedure of the FSCP  
 1723 authenticity acquisition from the FSCP gateway and subsequent handling of the FSP authen-  
 1724 ticity record is described in 10.2.3.3.

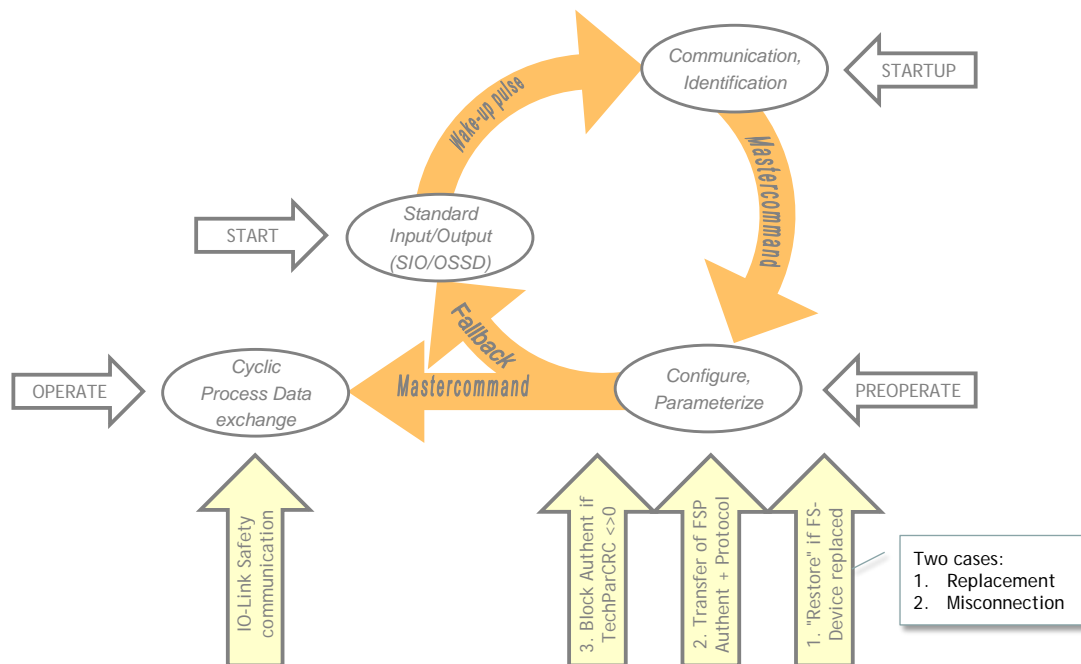
1725 **11.7.6 Storage integrity**

1726 Both parameter records (authenticity and protocol) of Figure 54 are stored in both FS-Master  
 1727 and FS-Device and may fail over time (see also Table A.1).

1728 At each start-up, the FS-Master transfers both parameter records to the FS-Device during  
 1729 PREOPERATE as shown in Figure 55 and described in 10.2.3.1.

1730 The FS-Device will detect a potential mismatch between the downloaded authenticity  
 1731 parameter set and the already stored values in the FS-Device, for example if FS-Devices are  
 1732 misconnected to a different port or even to a different FS-Master. The FS-Device stores  
 1733 authenticity parameters only during commissioning, i.e. when the FSP\_TechParCRC signa-  
 1734 ture value is "0". When the FSP\_TechParCRC signature value is ≠ "0", The FS-Device will  
 1735 only compare the stored authenticity values with the newly transferred values.

1736 The protocol parameters are propagated to the safety communication layer at each start-up.  
 1737 The protocol engine detects any mismatch between the locally stored parameters (for  
 1738 example due to falsified bits) and the newly transferred record during initialization and blocks  
 1739 safety communication.



1740

1741

**Figure 55 – Start-up of IO-Link safety**

1742 In case the FS-Device has been replaced due to a failure, the technology specific parameters  
 1743 (FST) and the FSP parameters are "restored" from Data Storage if the FS-Device carries all  
 1744 Authenticity parameters = "0". If Authenticity is not "0", the FS-Device shall ignore them and  
 1745 keep the existing (see 9.4, E.5.7, and step 1. in Figure 55). In this case a misconnection can  
 1746 be assumed or the FS-Device has already been in use and requires testing and a reset of the  
 1747 Authenticity parameters (see Annex G).

#### 1748 11.7.7 FS I/O data structure integrity

1749 All I/O data of the connected FS-Devices should be mapped in an efficient manner into the  
 1750 FSCP I/O data as shown in 12.1.

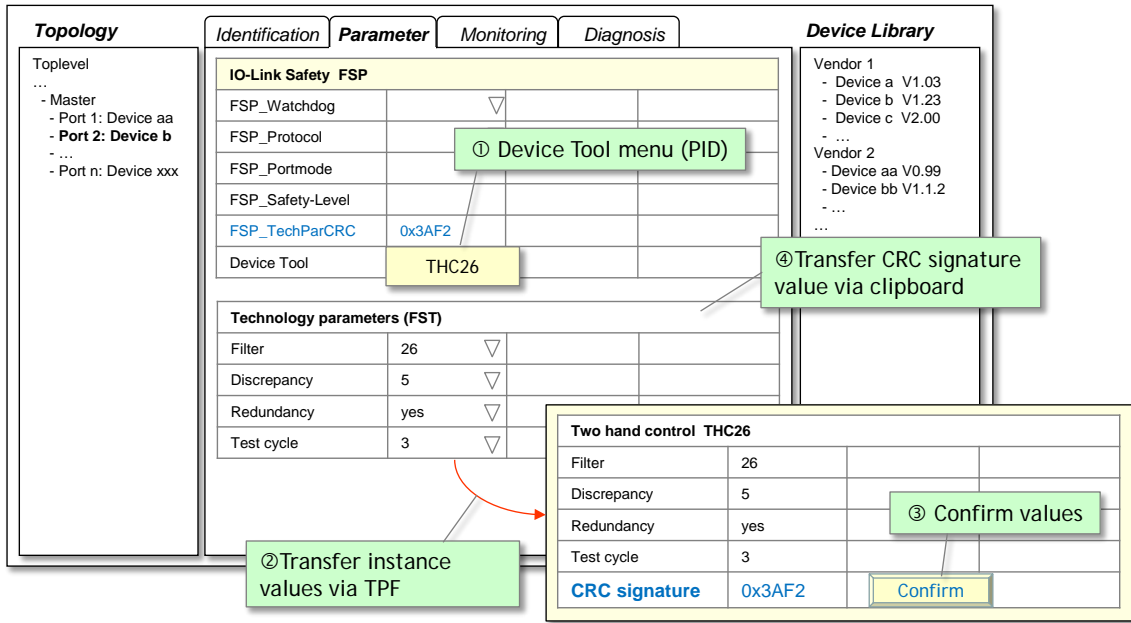
1751 Due to the additional qualifier bits required for port-selective passivation, the original FS-  
 1752 Device specific data structure is not directly visible within the FSCP I/O data structure  
 1753 exchanged with the FSCP-Host.

1754 The safety-related interpreter of the FS-Master Tool transfers the entire instance data  
 1755 together with the CRC signature to the FS I/O data mapper as shown in 10.2.3.1 (see also  
 1756 A.2.9).

#### 1757 11.7.8 Technology parameter (FST) based on IO-Link

1758 One of the objectives of IO-Link safety is FS-Device exchange without tools by using the  
 1759 original data storage mechanism of IO-Link. As a precondition, the FST-parameter description  
 1760 is required within the IO-Link (see E.5.7).

1761 The FST parameters are displayed in this case within the FS-Master tool (see Figure 56, FST-  
 1762 Parameters section). Values can be assigned as with non-safety parameters.



1763

1764

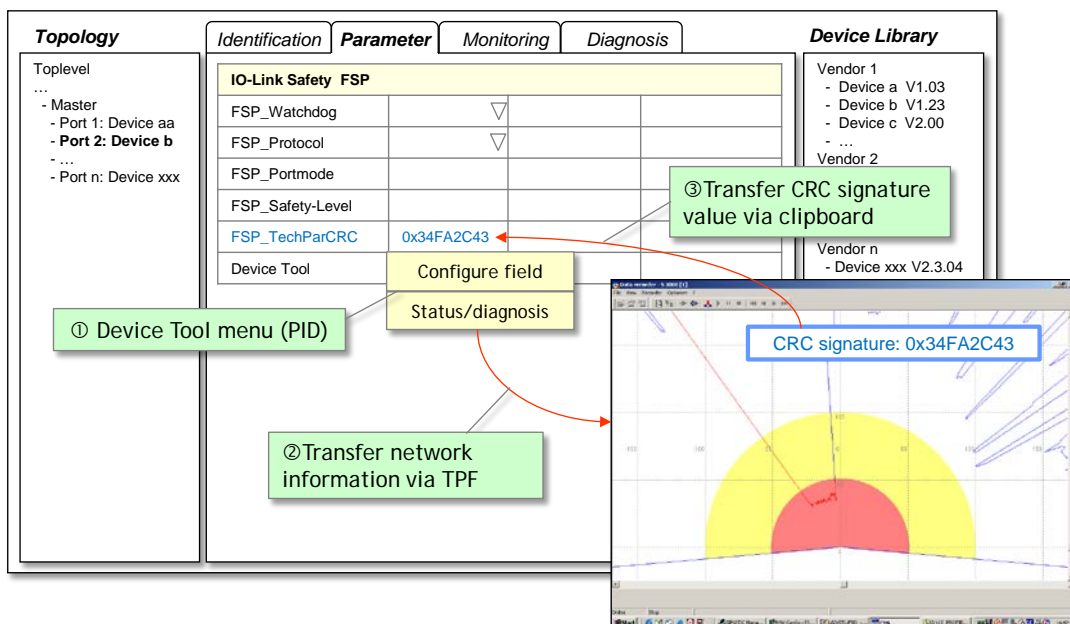
**Figure 56 – Securing of FST parameters via dedicated tool**

1765 After test and validation, the Device Tool is invoked via menu (step①). Instance values are  
 1766 transferred via TPF (step②) and displayed again. The user compares the instance values and  
 1767 confirms the correctness via the "Confirm" button (step③). The Device Tool then calculates  
 1768 the CRC signature across the instance data of the FST parameters (see "CRC signature" in  
 1769 Figure 56), which can be copied and pasted into the "FSP\_TechParCRC" field of the FSP  
 1770 parameters (step ④).

1771 Since this parameter is part of the FSP parameter block, the FS-Device can check the  
 1772 integrity of these FST parameters together with the protocol parameters.

1773 **11.7.9 Technology parameter (FST) based on existing dedicated tool (IOPD)**

1774 In cases, where existing safety devices already have their PC program with password  
 1775 protection, wizards, teach-in functions, verification instructions, online monitoring, diagnosis,  
 1776 special access to device history for the manufacturer, etc., an FST parameter description may  
 1777 not be available. Figure 57 shows an example.



1778

1779

**Figure 57 – Modification of FST parameters via Device Tool**

1780 Such a Device Tool requires communication with its particular FS-Device and therefore  
 1781 access to a Communication Server (see Annex F.5). It can be invoked via menu entries  
 1782 (step①) and thus jump directly into for example configuration or status/diagnosis functions.  
 1783 Network information is transferred via TPF (step②). After test and validation, it shall provide a  
 1784 display of the calculated CRC signature across the instance data, which can be copied and  
 1785 pasted into the "FSP\_TechParCRC" field of the FSP parameters (step③).

1786 These FS-Devices shall be supported by the data storage mechanism of IO-Link and an FS-  
 1787 Device replacement without tools is possible.

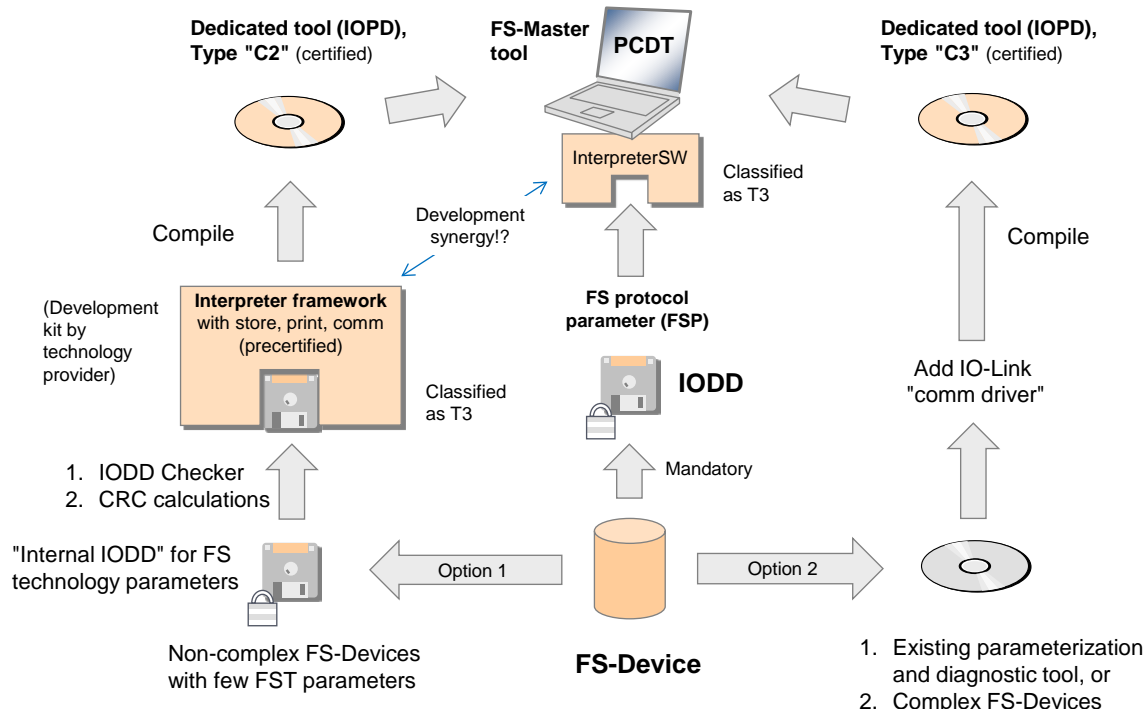
1788 The Data Storage limit per FS-Device is 2048 octets according to [1].

## 1789 11.8 Creation of FSP and FST parameters

1790 Standards for "Safety-for-Machinery" such as ISO 13849-1 and IEC 62061 require "dedicated  
 1791 tools" for the parameterization of safety devices. For the ease of development and logistics of  
 1792 software tools it is recommended to use the process described in Figure 58.

1793 For FS-Devices with only a few FST parameters, no business logic, and no wizard and help  
 1794 systems, one particular "Interpreter Framework" should be developed in a safe manner  
 1795 according to IEC 61508 and equipped with the necessary communication interfaces. The  
 1796 result will be made available for the whole IO-Link Safety community as a development kit at  
 1797 a certain fee. The FS-Device developer can create an individual "Internal IODD" for the FST  
 1798 parameters of a particular FS-Device (Option 1 in Figure 58). The "Interpreter Framework"  
 1799 together with the individual "Internal IODD" will then be compiled using the brand name,  
 1800 company and FS-Device identifiers to one dedicated tool (IOPD). This executable software  
 1801 can be certified by assessment bodies.

1802 For FS-Devices with more complex FST parameters, the IOPD can be developed individually  
 1803 or existing tools can be used. In both cases the tools can be equipped with the necessary  
 1804 communication interfaces (Option 2 in Figure 58).



1805

1806

**Figure 58 – Creation of FSP and FST parameters**

1807 In any case, the dedicated tool (IOPD) shall calculate and display the CRC signature across  
 1808 all FST parameters. This signature can be copied into the entry field of the FSP parameter

1809 "FSP\_TechParCRC", such that an FS-Device can verify the correctness of locally stored FST  
1810 parameters after start-up and download of the FSP parameter set to the FS-Device.

1811 For each and every FS-Device the same set of FSP (protocol) parameters shall be created in  
1812 an extended IODD. This IODD is mandatory and contains the usual conventional parameters  
1813 and additionally the FSP parameters.

## 1814 11.9 Integration of dedicated tools (IOPD)

### 1815 11.9.1 IOPD interface

1816 Usually, a so-called Master-Tool (PCDT) provides engineering support for a Master and its  
1817 Devices via Device descriptions in form of XML files (IODD). In principle, this is the same for  
1818 FS-Master and FS-Device. For functional safety besides an extended IODD it is necessary for  
1819 an FS-Device vendor to provide an additional Dedicated Tool (IOPD) as shown in Figure 58.

1820 In order for the IOPD to communicate with its FS-Device a new standardized communication  
1821 interface is required.

### 1822 11.9.2 Standard interfaces

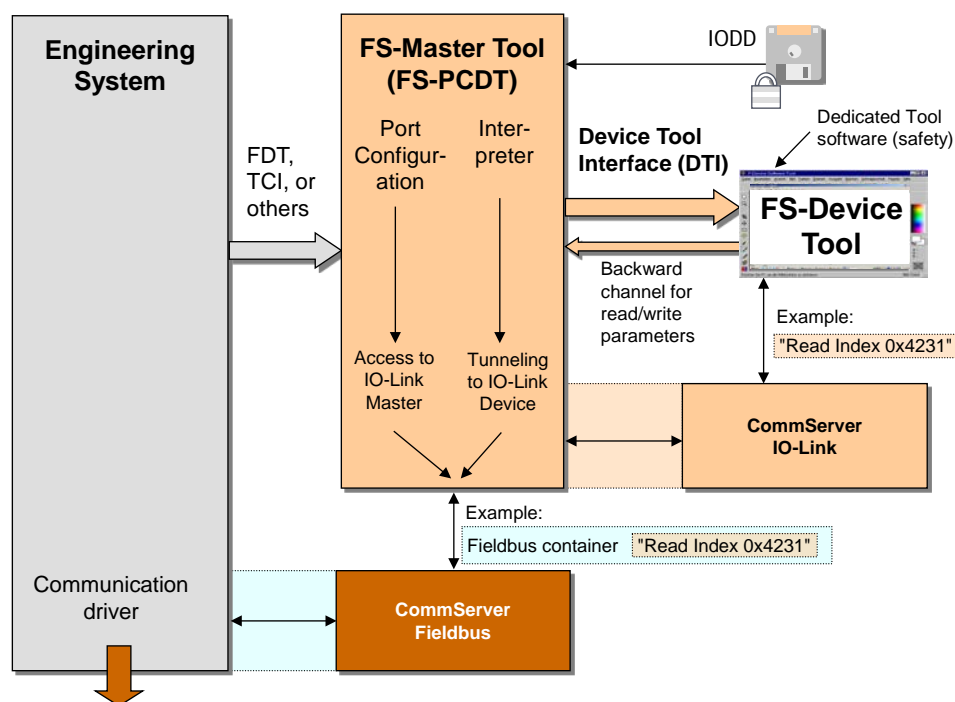
1823 Usually, Master Tools are integrated using existing standards such as FDT, the upcoming  
1824 FDI, or proprietary solutions. Such a variety is not acceptable for FS-Devices and therefore,  
1825 easy and proven-in-use technology has been selected and adopted for IO-Link. It is called  
1826 "Device Tool Interface" (DTI).

1827 Annex F provides the specification for this interface.

1828 Figure 59 illustrates the communication hierarchy of FDT and others for the fieldbus as well  
1829 as the connection via the "Device Tool Interface" and the underlying IO-Link communication.

1830 The FS-Device Tool (IOPD) does not have to know about the fieldbus environment it is  
1831 connected to. The example in Figure 59 illustrates how it sends a "Read Index 0x4231"  
1832 service and how the FS-Master Tool packs this service into a fieldbus container and passes it  
1833 to the fieldbus communication server.

1834 The addressed FS-Master is connected to the fieldbus and receives this container. It unpacks  
1835 the IO-Link Read service and performs it with the addressed FS-Device connected to a port.



1836

1837

Figure 59 – Example of a communication hierarchy

### 1838 11.9.3 Backward channel

1839 An FS-Master vendor does not know in advance which FS-Devices a customer wants to  
 1840 connect to the FS-Master ports. As a consequence, the fieldbus device description of such an  
 1841 FS-Master can only provide predefined "containers" for the resulting I/O data structure of the  
 1842 FS-Device ensembles connected to the ports. In functional safety this is even more  
 1843 complicated since the description of the data structures shall be coded and secured.

1844 As a consequence of the variety of different configurations and parameterizations of a  
 1845 particular FS-Device, it usually for example

- 1846 • requires different I/O data structures to exchange with PLCs or hosts;
- 1847 • has different reaction times due to configured high or low resolutions;
- 1848 • can have different SIL, PL, category, or PFH values impacting the overall safety level of a  
 1849 safety function.

1850 The classic "fieldbus device description" to inform an engineering system is not flexible in this  
 1851 respect. Its advantage is the testability and certification for its interoperability with engineering  
 1852 tools.

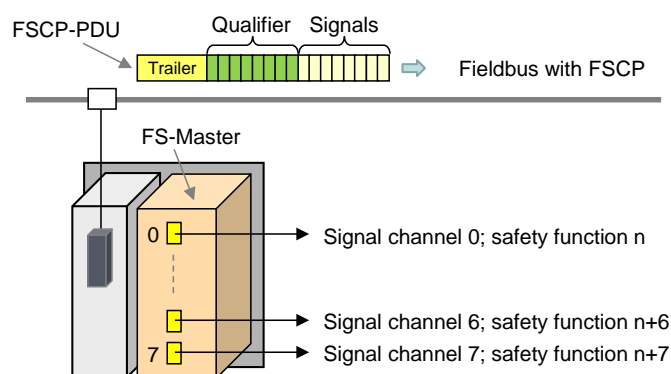
1853 Nevertheless, a "backward channel" within the tool interfaces allows for nowadays flexible  
 1854 manufacturing and ease of engineering and commissioning. An example is specified in [15]  
 1855 clause 4.15.5.

1856 Annexes F.3.5 and F.9.4 specify an extension for this "backward channel".

## 1857 11.10 Passivation

### 1858 11.10.1 Motivation and means

1859 Figure 60 illustrates the motivation for Port selective passivation. Usually for efficiency  
 1860 reasons, the signals 0 to 7 of FS-Devices connected to Ports are not mapped individually to  
 1861 an FSCP-PDU, but rather packed into one FSCP-PDU. Each of these signals can be assigned  
 1862 to a separate safety function  $n$  to  $n+7$ . If a fault occurs in one of the signal channels, a  
 1863 collective passivation for the entire FSCP-PDU would be necessary causing all safety  
 1864 functions to trip.



1865

1866 **Figure 60 – Motivation for Port selective passivation**

1867 FSCPs usually provide so-called qualifier bits associated to the signal process data, which  
 1868 enable selectively passivating that particular signal channel and the associated safety  
 1869 function.

1870 Safety of machinery usually requires an operator acknowledgment after repair of a defect  
 1871 signal channel to prevent from automatic restart of a machine. It is not necessary to provide  
 1872 the acknowledgment for each signal channel and it can be one for all the channels.

1873 **11.10.2 Port selective (FS-Master)**

1874 In 11.10.1 a use case is described where the signal channel corresponds directly with a  
 1875 particular FS-Device. The qualifier and acknowledgement mechanism shall be implemented  
 1876 within the FS-Master in accordance with the specifications of the particular FSCP.

1877 It can be helpful for the user to provide an indication in each FS-Device that an operator  
 1878 acknowledgment is required prior to a restart of a safety function. CB0 (ChFAckReq) within  
 1879 the Control&MCnt octet (see Table 20) shall be used for that purpose. It is not safety-related.

1880 Optionally, in case of FS\_PortMode "OSSDe" (see 10.2.2), the signal ChFAckReq can be  
 1881 connected separately to the corresponding FS-Device indication (see H.1).

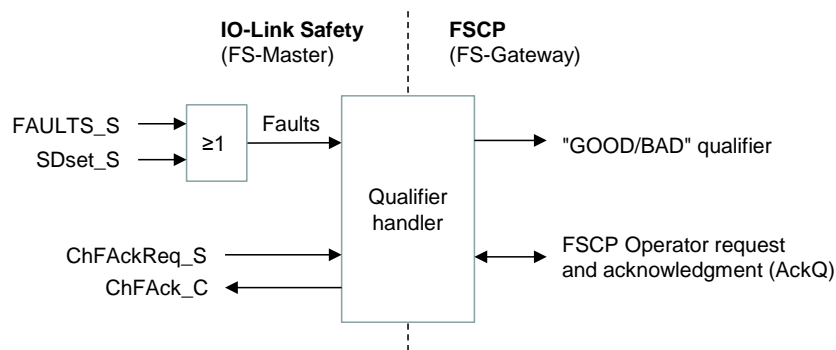
1882 **11.10.3 Signal selective (FS-Terminal)**

1883 Figure 13 shows the use case of an FS-Terminal where an FS-Device provides several signal  
 1884 channels to switching devices such as E-Stop buttons.

1885 For those FS-Devices the design rules in 11.4.7.3 apply. The acknowledgment mechanisms  
 1886 shall be implemented within the safety Process Data.

1887 **11.10.4 Qualifier settings in case of communication**

1888 Figure 61 illustrates the embedding of the qualifier handler in case of FS\_PortModes  
 1889 "SafetyCom" and "MixedSafetyCom" (see 10.2.2). The services/signals "FAULT\_S",  
 1890 "SDset\_S", "ChFAckReq\_S", and "ChFAck\_C" are specified in 11.3.2 and 11.5.2.



1891

1892 **Figure 61 – Qualifier handler (communication)**

1893 The qualifier bits "GOOD/BAD" shall be set according to the definitions in Table 31 during the  
 1894 FSCP mapping procedure.

1895

**Table 31 – Qualifier bits "GOOD/BAD"**

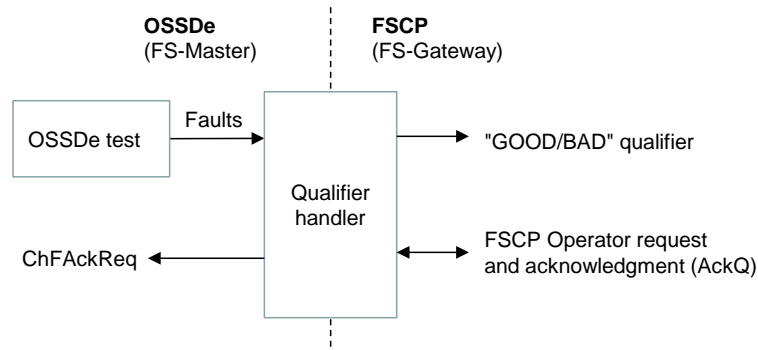
Faults	Qualifier	Signal state
0	GOOD	1
1	BAD	0

1896

1897 **11.10.5 Qualifier handling in case of OSSDe**

1898 Figure 62 illustrates the embedding of the qualifier handler in case of FS\_PortModes  
 1899 "OSSDe" (see 10.2.2). Definitions of Table 31 apply.





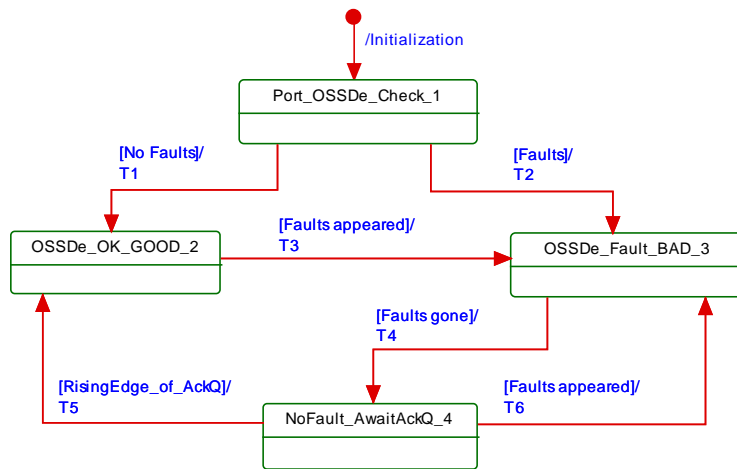
1900

1901

**Figure 62 – Qualifier handler (OSSDe)**

1902

Figure 63 shows the state machine for the behavior of the qualifier handler (OSSDe).



1903

1904

**Figure 63 – Qualifier behavior per FS-Master port**

1905

Table 32 shows the state and transition table for the qualifier behavior.

1906

**Table 32 – State transition table for the qualifier behavior**

STATE NAME		STATE DESCRIPTION	
Initialization		Use SD, Qualifier = BAD, ChFAckReq =0	
1 Port_OSSDe_Check		Perform Port diagnosis to detect Faults	
2 OSSDe_OK_GOOD		Perform Port diagnosis cyclically to detect Faults	
3 OSSDe_Fault_BAD		Perform Port diagnosis cyclically to detect Faults	
4 NoFault_AwaitAckQ		Wait on rising edge of AckQ	
TRAN-SITION	SOURCE STATE	TARGET STATE	ACTION
T1	1	2	Use PD, Qualifier = GOOD, AckQ = 0, ChFAckReq =0
T2	1	3	Use SD, Qualifier = BAD, AckQ = 0, ChFAckReq =0
T3	2	3	Use SD, Qualifier = BAD, AckQ = 0, ChFAckReq =0
T4	3	4	Use SD, Qualifier = BAD, AckQ = 0, ChFAckReq =1
T5	4	2	Use PD, Qualifier = GOOD, AckQ = 1, ChFAckReq =0
T6	4	3	Use SD, Qualifier = BAD, AckQ = 0, ChFAckReq =0
INTERNAL ITEMS	TYPE	DEFINITION	
RisingEdge_of_AckQ	Flag	Means to prevent from permanently actuating the AckQ signal.	
AckQ	Flag	Flag depending on the individual upper level FSCP system and its mapping.	

1907

1908



INTERNAL ITEMS	TYPE	DEFINITION
Faults	Flag	Any detected fault such as a wire break, short circuit.
ChFAckReq	Flag	Signal set by qualifier handler (see 11.10.2 and H.1)

1909

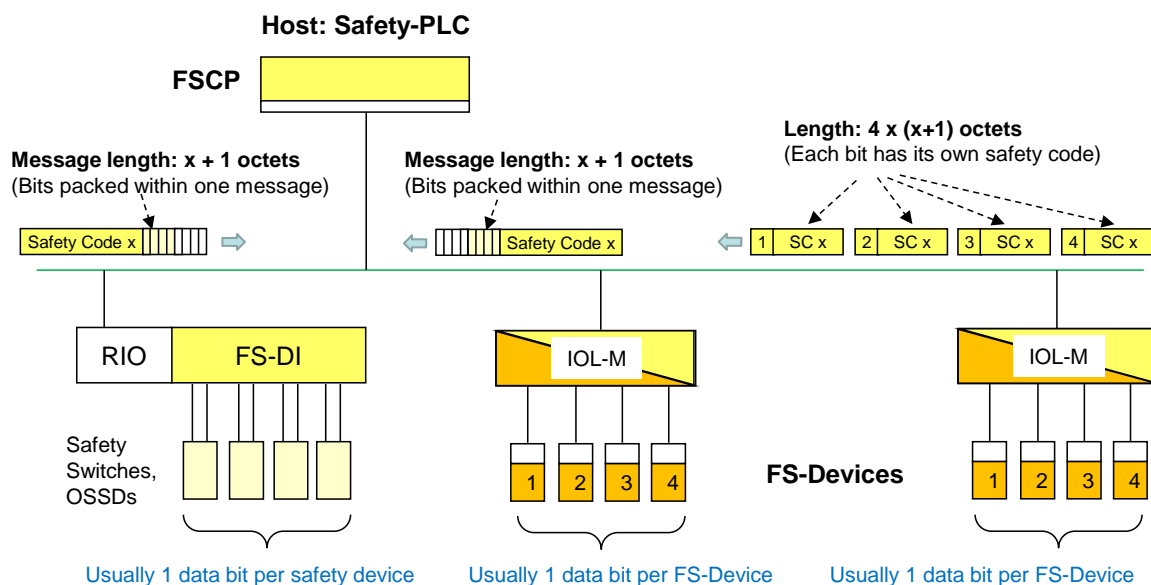
1910 **11.11 SCL diagnosis**

1911 The Safety Communication Layer can create its own EventCodes such as CRC error, counter  
 1912 error, or timeout as listed in Annex B.1.

1913 **12 Functional safe processing (FS-P)**

1914 **12.1 Recommendations for efficient I/O mappings**

1915 Figure 64 shows how efficiency can be increased when packing I/O data from the connected  
 1916 safety devices into one FSCP SPDU instead of several individual FSCP SPDUs. On the left,  
 1917 the bits of safety devices (OSSD) are packed into one FSCP SPDU by the FS-DI module. On  
 1918 the right, the FS-Devices use each an FSCP SPDU to transmit a bit. In the middle an IO-Link  
 1919 Safety FS-Master/Gateway packs bits into one FSCP SPDU similar to an FS-DI.



1920

1921 **Figure 64 – Mapping efficiency issues**

1922 The FS I/O data structure shall be created as a multiple of 16 bits.

1923 **12.2 FS logic control**

1924 Specification and implementation of an FS logic control to provide local safety functions are  
 1925 manufacturer's responsibility and not standardized (see © in clause 1 and Figure 2).

## Annex A (normative, safety-related)

### Extensions to parameters

#### A.1 Indices and parameters for IO-Link Safety

The Index range reserved for IO-Link Safety includes 255 Indices from 0x4200 to 0x42FF.

Table A.1 shows the specified Indices for IO-Link profiles, the protocol parameters (FSP) of IO-Link Safety, comprising authenticity, protocol, I/O data structures, and auxiliary blocks as well as the total reserved range for IO-Link Safety, and the second range of Indices for IO-Link profiles.

**Table A.1 – Indices for IO-Link Safety**

Index (dec)	Sub index	Object name	Access	Length	Data type	M/O/C	Purpose/reference
...							
0x4000 to 0x41FF		Profile specific Indices					For example: Smart sensors
<b>Authenticity (11 octets)</b>							
0x4200 (16896)	1	FSCP_Authenticity_1	R/W	4 octets	UIntegerT	M	"A-Code" from the upper level FSCP system; see A.2.1
	2	FSCP_Authenticity_2	R/W	4 octets	UIntegerT	M	Extended "A-Code" from the upper level FSCP system
	3	FSP_Port	R/W	1 octet	UIntegerT	M	PortNumber identifying the particular FS-Device; see A.2.2
	4	FSP_AuthentCRC	R/W	2 octets	UIntegerT	M	CRC-16 across authenticity parameters; see A.2.3
<b>Protocol (12 octets)</b>							
0x4201 (16897)	1	FSP_ProtVersion	R/W	1 octet	UIntegerT	M	Protocol version: 0x01; see A.2.4
	2	FSP_ProtMode	R/W	1 octet	UIntegerT	M	Protocol modes, e.g. 16/32 bit CRC; see A.2.5
	3	FSP_Watchdog	R/W	2 octets	UIntegerT	M	Monitoring of I/O update; 1 to 65 535 ms; see A.2.6
	4	FSP_IO_StructCRC	R/W	2 octets	UIntegerT	M	CRC-16 signature across I/O structure description block; see A.2.9
	5	FSP_TechParCRC	R/W	4 octets	UIntegerT	M	Securing code across FST (technology specific parameter); see A.2.7
	6	FSP_ProtParCRC	R/W	2 octets	UIntegerT	M	CRC-16 across protocol parameters; see A.2.8
<b>Auxiliary parameters</b>							
0x4210 (16912)		FS_Password	W	32 octets	StringT	M	Password for access protection of FSP parameters and Dedicated Tools; see A.2.10
0x4211 (16913)		Reset_FS_Password	W	32 octets	StringT	M	Password to reset the FST Parameters to factory settings and to reset implicitly the FS-Password; see A.2.11

Index (dec)	Sub index	Object name	Access	Length	Data type	M/O/C	Purpose/reference
0x4212 (16914)		FSP_ParamDescCRC	R	2 octets	UIntegerT	M	CRC-16 signature securing authenticity, protocol, and FS I/O structure description within IODD; see A.2.12
...							
0x4213 (16915) to 0x42FF (17151)		Reserved for IO-Link Safety					
0x4300 to 0x4FFF		Profile specific Indices					For example: Firmware update and BLOB
...							
Key M = mandatory; O = optional; C = conditional							

1938

1939 **A.2 Parameters in detail**1940 **A.2.1 FSCP\_Authenticity**

1941 During off-line commissioning of an IO-Link Safety project, the default value of this parameter  
 1942 is "0". During on-line commissioning, the FS-Master acquires the FSCP authenticity ("A-  
 1943 Code") from the FSCP gateway as described in 10.2.3.1. The FS-Device receives this  
 1944 parameter at each start-up. In case of FSP\_TechParCRC = "0", it either stores the  
 1945 authenticity parameter or rejects it with an error message if the value is "0" (see Table B.1). In  
 1946 case the system is armed (FSP\_TechParCRC ≠ "0") the FS-Device only compares its locally  
 1947 stored value with the transferred value to detect any misconnection (incorrect port or FS-  
 1948 Master), see Annex G.

1949 Some FSCPs provide extended authenticity. In those cases, the extended code shall be  
 1950 included in this parameter.

1951 Padding bits and octets shall be filled with "0".

1952 **A.2.2 FSP\_Port**

1953 The FS-Master Tool identifies the FS-Master PortNumber of the attached FS-Device and  
 1954 stores it in this parameter. Storage and checking of the parameter by the FS-Device  
 1955 corresponds to A.2.1. Numbering starts at "1". Default PortNumber in IODD is "0" and means  
 1956 PortNumber of a particular Device has not been assigned yet.

1957 **A.2.3 FSP\_AuthentCRC**

1958 For the CRC signature calculation of the entire authenticity block, the CRC-16 in Table D.1  
 1959 shall be used. This CRC polynomial has a Hamming distance of ≥ 6 for lengths ≤ 16 octets. A  
 1960 seed value "0" shall be used (see D.3.6).

1961 **A.2.4 FSP\_ProtVersion**

1962 Table A.2 shows the coding of FSP\_ProtVersion.

1963

**Table A.2 – Coding of protocol version**

Value	Definition
0x00	Reserved
0x01	This protocol version
0x02 to 0xFF	Reserved

1964

1965 **A.2.5 FSP\_ProtMode**

1966 Table A.3 shows the coding of FSP\_ProtMode.

1967 **Table A.3 – Coding of protocol mode**

Value	Definition
0x00	Reserved
0x01	0 to 4 octets of FS I/O Process Data; 16 bit CRC
0x02	0 to 26 octets of FS I/O Process Data; 32 bit CRC
0x03 to 0xFF	Reserved

1968

1969 **A.2.6 FSP\_Watchdog**

1970 The FS-Device designer determines the I/O update time and uses it as default value of this  
 1971 parameter within the IODD. The I/O update time is the time period between two safety PDUs  
 1972 with subsequent counter values (I/O samples) including possible repetitions within the IO-Link  
 1973 communication layer (black channel; see 11.5.5).

1974 With the help of the parameter default value (I/O update time), the transmission times of the  
 1975 safety PDUs, and FS-Master processing times, the FS-Master Tool can estimate the total time  
 1976 and suggest the value of the "FSP\_Watchdog" parameter.

1977 The value range is 1 to 65 535 (measured in ms). A value of "0" is not permitted. The SCL of  
 1978 the FS-Device is responsible to check the validity at start-up and to create an error in case  
 1979 (see Table B.1).

1980 **A.2.7 FSP\_TechParCRC**

1981 This document specifies two basic methods for the assignment of technology specific  
 1982 parameters (FST). The FS-Device designer is responsible for the selection of the securing  
 1983 method.

1984 The method in 11.7.8 is based on IODD and suggests using one of the CRC generator  
 1985 polynomials in Table D.1. If calculation of the CRC signature value results in "0", a "1" shall  
 1986 be used.

1987 The method in 11.7.9 depends on the method used within an existing FS-Device Tool  
 1988 (Dedicated Tool). Whatever method is used, the tool shall display a securing code after  
 1989 verification and validation that can be copied and pasted into the FSP\_TechParCRC  
 1990 parameter entry field.

1991 During commissioning a value of "0" can be entered to allow for certain behavior of the IO-  
 1992 Link Safety system (see 10.2.3.1). During production, this value shall be ≠ "0".

1993 For technology specific parameter block transfers > 232 octets, the BLOB mechanism (Binary  
 1994 Large Objects) specified in [13] can be used.

1995 **A.2.8 FSP\_ProtParCRC**

1996 For the CRC signature calculation of the entire protocol block, the CRC-16 in Table D.1 shall  
 1997 be used. This CRC polynomial has a Hamming distance of ≥ 6 for lengths ≤ 16 octets. A seed  
 1998 value "0" shall be used (see D.3.6).

1999 **A.2.9 FSP\_IO\_StructCRC**

2000 An IODD-based non-safety viewer can be used to calculate this 16 bit CRC signature across  
 2001 the FS I/O structure description within the IODD during the development phase. The algorithm  
 2002 for the calculation is shown in Annex D. A seed value "0" shall be used (see D.3.6).

2003 The safety-related interpreter of the FS-Master Tool transfers the entire instance data  
 2004 together with the CRC signature to the FS I/O data mapper as shown in 10.2.3.1.

2005 Table A.4 shows Version "1" of the generic FS I/O data structure description for FS-Devices.  
 2006 With the help of this table, individual instances of FS-Device I/O Process Data can be created  
 2007 via IODD and, amongst others, used for an automatic mapping of IO-Link Safety data to FSCP  
 2008 safety data.

2009 **Table A.4 – Generic FS I/O data structure description**

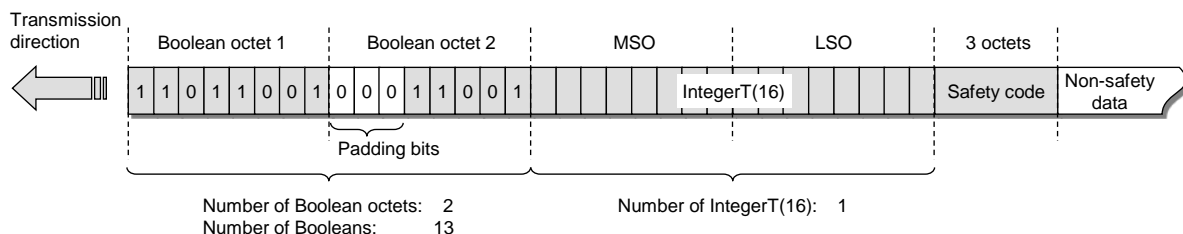
Item name	Item length	Definition
IO_DescVersion	1 octet	Version of this generic structure description: 0x01
InputDataRange	1 octet	Length in octets of the entire FS input Process Data including the 3 or 5 octets respectively for the safety code (Control/Status and CRC-16/32)
TotalOfInBits	1 octet	Number of the entire set of input BooleanT (bits)
TotalOfInOctets	1 octet	Number of octets with input BooleanT (including unfilled octets)
TotalOfInInt16	1 octet	Number of input IntegerT(16)
TotalOfInInt32	1 octet	Number of input IntegerT(32)
OutputDataRange	1 octet	Length in octets of the entire FS output Process Data including the 3 or 5 octets respectively for the safety code (Control/Status and CRC-16/32)
TotalOfOutBits	1 octet	Number of the entire set of output BooleanT (bits)
TotalOfOutOctets	1 octet	Number of octets with output BooleanT (including unfilled octets)
TotalOfOutInt16	1 octet	Number of output IntegerT(16)
TotalOfOutInt32	1 octet	Number of output IntegerT(32)
FSP_IO_StructCRC	2 octets	CRC-16 signature value across all items (see Annex D.1)

2010  
 2011 Figure A.1 shows the instance of the FS I/O data description of the example in Figure A.2.

IO_DESCVERSION	01	0x01
INPUT_DATA_RANGE	07	0x07
TOTAL_OF_INBITS	13	0x0D
TOTAL_OF_INOCTETS	02	0x02
TOTAL_OF_ININT16	01	0x01
TOTAL_OF_ININT32	00	0x00
OUTPUT_DATA_RANGE	03	0x03
TOTAL_OF_OUTBITS	00	0x00
TOTAL_OF_OUTOCTETS	00	0x00
TOTAL_OF_OUTINT16	00	0x00
TOTAL_OF_OUTINT32	00	0x00
FSP_IO_STRUCTCRC	2386	0x0952

2018 **Figure A.1 – Instance of an FS I/O data description**

2019 Figure A.2 shows an example with FS input Process Data and no FS output Process Data.



2020  
 2021 **Figure A.2 – Example FS I/O data structure with non-safety data**

2022 **A.2.10 FS\_Password**

2023 It is the responsibility of the FS-Master and FS-Master Tool designer to define the password  
 2024 mechanism (e.g. setting/resetting, encryption, protection against easy capturing via line

2025 monitors). Maximum size is 32 octets. Encoding shall be ASCII. A mix of upper/lower case  
 2026 characters, numbers, and special characters shall be possible.

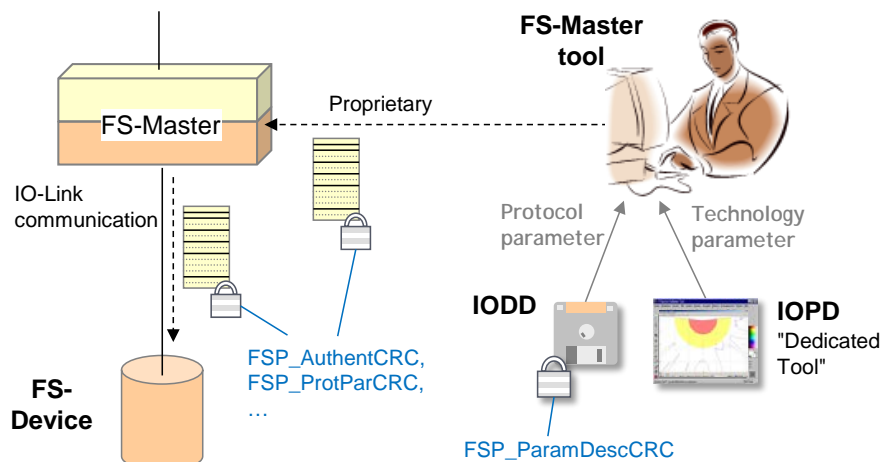
### 2027 **A.2.11 Reset\_FS\_Password**

2028 With the help of this password, a reset to factory settings of the FS-Device can be performed  
 2029 including FS\_Password. New commissioning can take place with FSP\_TechParCRC = "0"  
 2030 (see A.2.7).

### 2031 **A.2.12 FSP\_ParamDescCRC**

2032 This dummy parameter within the IODD contains the CRC signature calculated across the  
 2033 entire parameter descriptions within the IODD according to the algorithm specified in E.5. The  
 2034 CRC-16 in Table D.1 shall be used. A seed value "0" shall be used since leading "0"  
 2035 parameter values cannot occur (see D.3.6).

2036 The purpose of this parameter is to secure the relevant descriptions of safety parameters  
 2037 within the IODD against data falsification during storage and handling as shown in Figure A.3



2038

2039

**Figure A.3 – Securing of safety parameters**

2040

2041  
2042  
2043  
2044

## Annex B (normative, non-safety related)

### Extensions to EventCodes

#### 2045 **B.1 Additional EventCodes**

2046 The Safety Communication Layer (SCL) can create its own EventCodes as shown in Table  
2047 B.1.

2048

**Table B.1 – SCL specific EventCodes**

EventCode	Definition and recommended maintenance action	FS-Device status value	TYPE
0xB000	Transmission error (CRC signature)	2	Warning
0xB001	Transmission error (Counter)	2	Warning
0xB002	Transmission error (Timeout)	3	Error
0xB003	Unexpected authentication code	3	Error
0xB004	Unexpected authentication port	3	Error
0xB005	Incorrect FSP_AuthentCRC	3	Error
0xB006	Incorrect FSP_ProtParCRC	3	Error
0xB007	Incorrect FSP_TechParCRC	3	Error
0xB008	Incorrect FSP_IO_StructCRC	3	Error
0xB009	Watchdog time out of specification (e.g. "0")	3	Error
0xB00A	Reserved: do not use number; do not evaluate number	-	-

2049

2050 Usually, "CRC signature" and/or "Counter" transmission errors are caused by seriously  
2051 falsified IO-Link messages with SPDUs due to heavy interferences. There is nothing to repair  
2052 and an operator acknowledgment is sufficient. This very unlikely warning should inform the  
2053 operator and the responsible production manager about possible changes within a machine  
2054 requiring an inspection according to the safety manual (see H.6).

2055  
2056  
2057  
2058

## Annex C (normative, safety related)

### Extensions to Data Types

#### C.1 Data types for IO-Link Safety

2060 Table C.1 shows the available data types in IO-Link Safety (see 11.4.7.2).

2061 **Table C.1 – Data types for IO-Link Safety**

Data type	Coding	Length	See [1]	Device example
BooleanT/bit	BooleanT ("packed form" for efficiency, no WORD structures); assignment of signal names to bits is possible.	1 bit	Clause E.2.2; Table E.22 and Figure E.8	Proximity switch
IntegerT(16)	IntegerT (enumerated or signed)	2 octets	Clause E.2.4; Table E.4, E.7 and Figure E.2	Protection fields of laser scanner
IntegerT(32)	IntegerT (enumerated or signed)	4 octets	Clause E.2.4; Table E.4, E.6, and Figure E.2	Encoder or length measurement ( $\approx \pm 2$ km, resolution 1 $\mu$ m)

2062

#### C.2 BooleanT (bit)

2064 A BooleanT represents a data type that can have only two different values i.e. TRUE and  
2065 FALSE. The data type is specified in Table C.2.

2066 **Table C.2 – BooleanT for IO-Link Safety**

Data type name	Value range	Resolution	Length
BooleanT	TRUE / FALSE	-	1 bit

2067

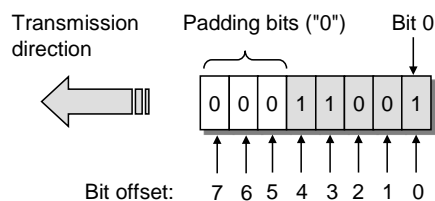
2068 IO-Link Safety uses solely the so-called packed form via RecordT as shown in Table C.3.

2069 **Table C.3 – Example of BooleanT within a RecordT**

Subindex	Offset	Data items	Data Type	Name/symbol
1	0	TRUE	BooleanT	Proximity_1
2	1	FALSE	BooleanT	Proximity_2
3	2	FALSE	BooleanT	EmergencyStop_1
4	3	TRUE	BooleanT	EmergencyStop_2
5	4	TRUE	BooleanT	EmergencyStop_3

2070

2071 Figure C.1 demonstrates an example of a BooleanT data structure. Padding bits are "0".



2072

2073

**Figure C.1 – Example of a BooleanT data structure**



2074 Only RecordT data structures of 8 bit length are permitted. Longer data structures shall use  
2075 multiple RecordT data structures (see Annex C.5).

2076 NOTE Data structures longer than 8 bit can cause mapping problems with upper level FSCP systems (see 3.4.2)

### 2077 C.3 IntegerT (16)

2078 An IntegerT(16) is representing a signed number depicted by 16 bits. The number is  
2079 accommodated within the octet container 2 and right-aligned and extended correctly signed to  
2080 the chosen number of bits. The data type is specified in Table C.4 for singular use. SN  
2081 represents the sign with "0" for all positive numbers and zero, and "1" for all negative  
2082 numbers. Padding bits are filled with the content of the sign bit (SN).

2083

**Table C.4 – IntegerT(16)**

Data type name	Value range	Resolution	Length
IntegerT(16)	$-2^{15}$ to $2^{15}-1$	1	2 octets
NOTE 1 High order padding bits are filled with the value of the sign bit (SN).			
NOTE 2 Most significant octet (MSO) sent first (lowest respective octet number in Table C.5).			

2084

2085 The coding of IntegerT(16) is shown in Table C.5.

2086

**Table C.5 – IntegerT(16) coding**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	Container
Octet 1	SN	$2^{14}$	$2^{13}$	$2^{12}$	$2^{11}$	$2^{10}$	$2^9$	$2^8$	2 octets
Octet 2	$2^7$	$2^6$	$2^5$	$2^4$	$2^3$	$2^2$	$2^1$	$2^0$	

2087

### 2088 C.4 IntegerT (32)

2089 An IntegerT(32) is representing a signed number depicted by 32 bits. The number is  
2090 accommodated within the octet container 4 and right-aligned and extended correctly signed to  
2091 the chosen number of bits. The data type is specified in Table C.6 for singular use. SN  
2092 represents the sign with "0" for all positive numbers and zero, and "1" for all negative  
2093 numbers. Padding bits are filled with the content of the sign bit (SN).

2094

**Table C.6 – IntegerT(32)**

Data type name	Value range	Resolution	Length
IntegerT(32)	$-2^{31}$ to $2^{31}-1$	1	4 octets
NOTE 1 High order padding bits are filled with the value of the sign bit (SN).			
NOTE 2 Most significant octet (MSO) sent first (lowest respective octet number in Table C.7).			

2095

2096 The coding of IntegerT(32) is shown in Table C.7

2097

**Table C.7 – IntegerT(32) coding**

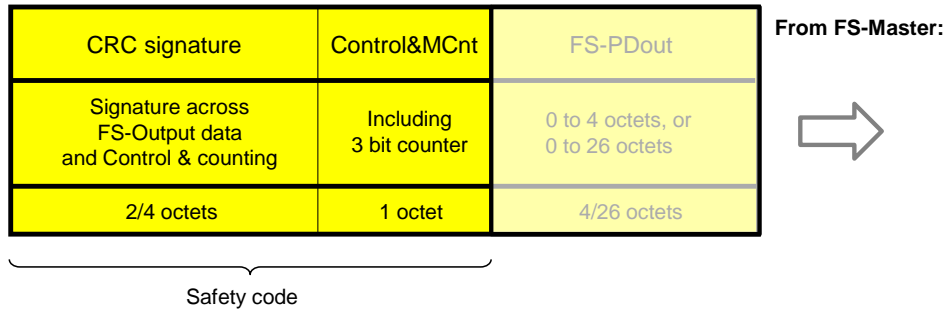
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	Container
Octet 1	SN	$2^{30}$	$2^{29}$	$2^{28}$	$2^{27}$	$2^{26}$	$2^{25}$	$2^{24}$	4 octets
Octet 2	$2^{23}$	$2^{22}$	$2^{21}$	$2^{20}$	$2^{19}$	$2^{18}$	$2^{17}$	$2^{16}$	
Octet 3	$2^{15}$	$2^{14}$	$2^{13}$	$2^{12}$	$2^{11}$	$2^{10}$	$2^9$	$2^8$	
Octet 4	$2^7$	$2^6$	$2^5$	$2^4$	$2^3$	$2^2$	$2^1$	$2^0$	

2098 **C.5 Safety Code**

2099 Size of the Safety Code as shown in Figure C.2 and Figure C.3 can be identified by the

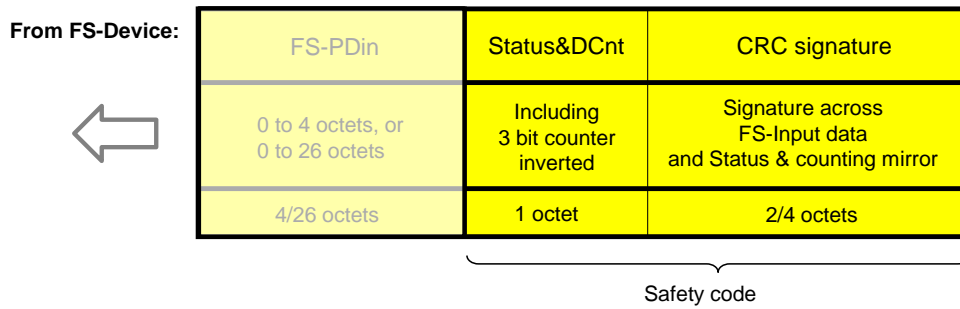
- 2100 • Parameter "FSP\_ProtMode" (see Table A.1), and
- 2101 • FS I/O structure description (see Table A.1).

2102 Thus, the overall I/O data structure can be identified even if there are non-safety related I/O  
 2103 data associated with the SPDU.



2104

2105 **Figure C.2 – Safety Code of an output message**



2106

2107 **Figure C.3 – Safety Code of an input message**

2108

2109  
2110  
2111  
2112  
2113

## Annex D (normative, safety related)

### CRC generator polynomials

#### 2114 D.1 Overview of CRC generator polynomials

2115 Hamming distance and properness for all required data lengths are important characteristics  
2116 to select a particular generator polynomial.

2117 If the generator polynomial  $g(x) = p(x) \cdot (1 + x)$  is used, where  $p(x)$  is a primitive polynomial of  
2118 degree  $(r - 1)$ , then the maximum total block length is  $2^{(r - 1)} - 1$ , and the code is able to  
2119 detect single, double, triple and any odd number of errors (see [19]).

2120 If properness is approved, the residual error probability for the approved data length is  $2^{-r}$ .

2121 It shall be prohibited that the CRC generator polynomial used in the underlying transmission  
2122 systems, for example IO-Link, matches the CRC generator polynomial used for IO-Link  
2123 Safety.

2124 Table D.1 shows the CRC-16 and CRC-32 generator polynomials in use for IO-Link Safety:

2125 **Table D.1 – CRC generator polynomials for IO-Link Safety**

CRC-16/32 polynomial ("Normal" representation)	Data length (bits)	Hamming distance	Properness	Reference	Remark
0x4EAB	≤ 128	≥ 6	≤ 7 octets	[20]	Suitable for functional safety
0xF4ACFB13	≤ 32768	≥ 6	≤ 128 octets	[20]	
	≤ 65534	≥ 4			
NOTE Representation: "Normal": high order bit omitted					

2126  
2127  
2128  
2129  
2130  
2131  
2132

The CRC-16 can be used

- to secure cyclic Process Data exchange with a total safety PDU length of up to 7 octets, i.e. 4 octets for safety Process Data and
- to secure the transfer of up to 16 octets of FSP parameters at start-up or restart.

The CRC-32 can be used

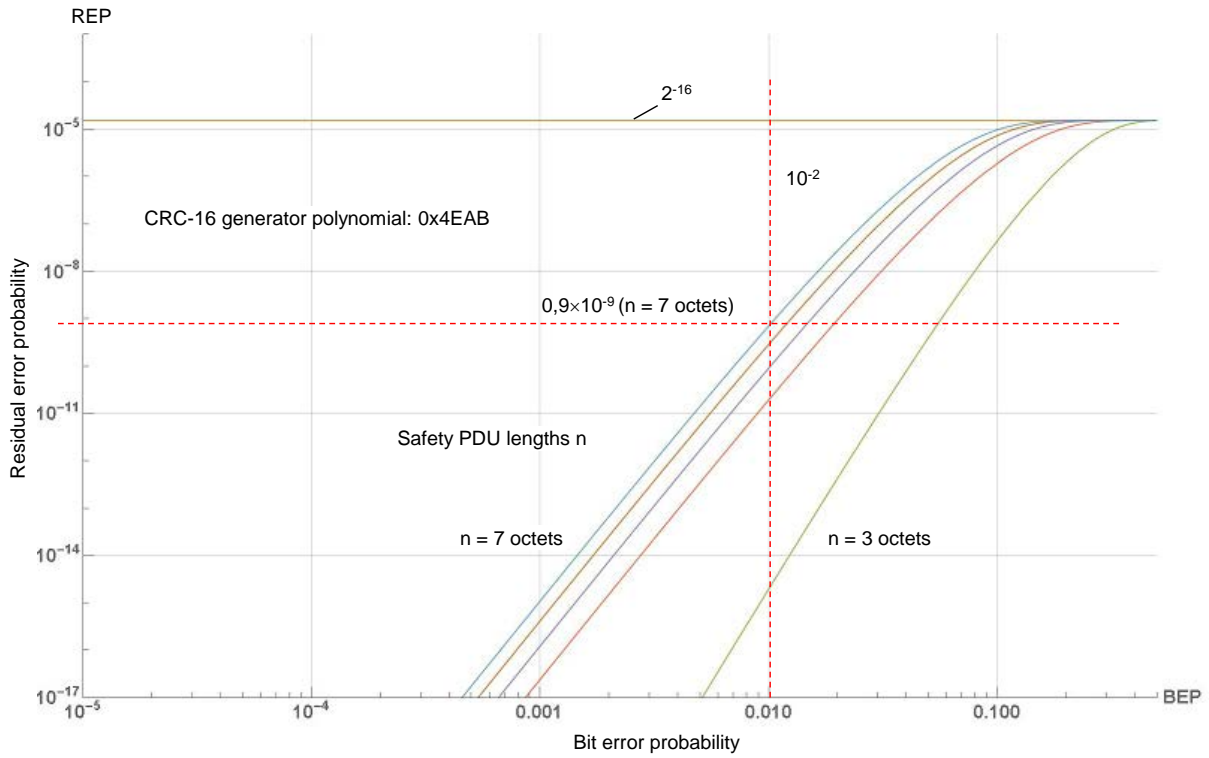
- to secure cyclic Process Data exchange with a total safety PDU length of up to 32 octets, i.e. 27 octets for safety Process Data and
- to secure the transfer and data integrity of the entire FST parameter set.

2136 Additional parameters and assumptions for the calculation of residual error probabilities/rates  
2137 can be found in 11.4.6.

#### 2138 D.2 Residual error probabilities

2139 Figure D.1 shows the results of residual error probability (REP) calculations over bit error  
2140 probabilities (BEP) for safety PDU lengths from 3 to 7 octets.

2141 The REP is less than  $0,9 \times 10^{-9}$  for BEPs less than the required  $10^{-2}$  at a length of 7 octets.



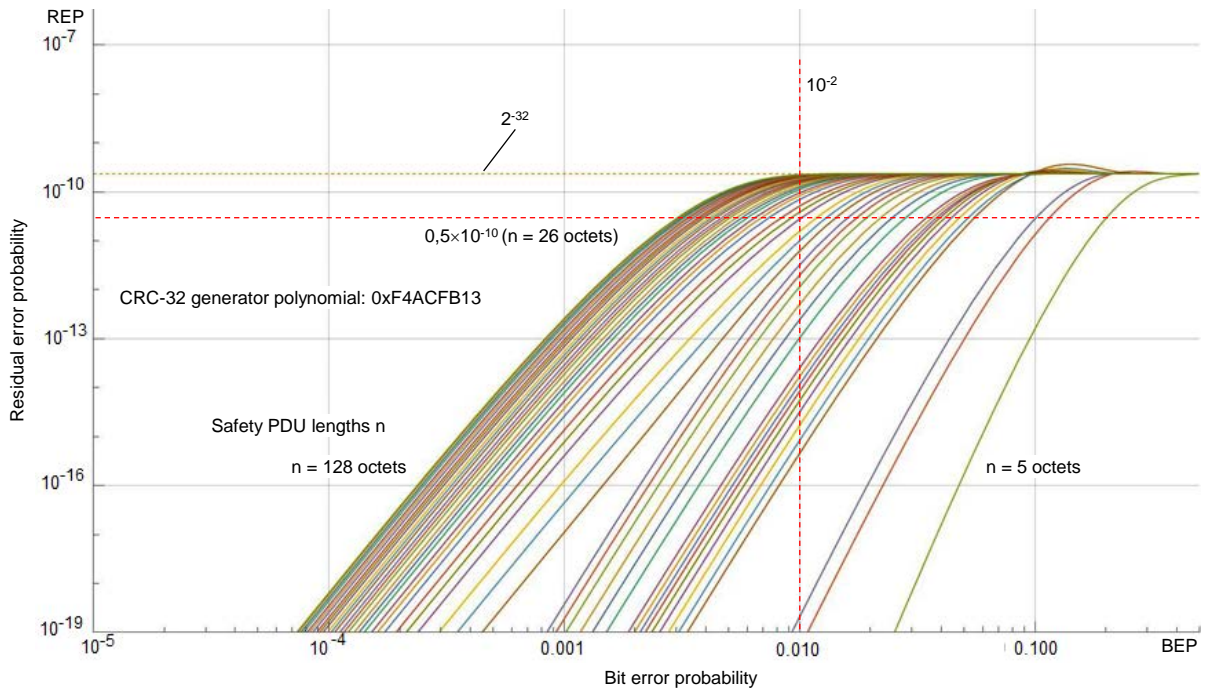
2142

2143

**Figure D.1 – CRC-16 generator polynomial**

2144 Figure D.2 shows the results of residual error probability (REP) calculations over bit error  
2145 probabilities (BEP) for safety PDU lengths from 5 to 128 octets.

2146 The REP is less than  $0.5 \times 10^{-10}$  for BEPs less than the required  $10^{-2}$  at a length of 26 octets.



2147

2148

**Figure D.2 – CRC-32 generator polynomial**

## 2149 D.3 Implementation considerations

### 2150 D.3.1 Overview

2151 The designer has two choices to implement the CRC signature calculation. One is based on  
2152 an algorithm using XOR and shift operations while the other is faster using octet shifts and  
2153 lookup tables.

### 2154 D.3.2 Bit shift algorithm (16 bit)

2155 For the 16-bit CRC signature, the value 0x4EAB is used as the generator polynomial. The  
2156 number of data bits may be odd or even. The value generated after the last octet corresponds  
2157 to the CRC signature to be transferred.

2158 Figure D.3 shows the algorithm for the innermost loop in "C" programming language.

```
2159 void crc16_calc(unsigned char x, unsigned long *r)
2160     int i;
2161     for (i = 1; i <= 8; i++)
2162         if ((bool)(*r & 0x8000) != (bool)(x & 0x80))
2163             /* XOR = 1 → shift and process polynomial */
2164             *r = (*r << 1) ^ 0x4EAB;
2165         else
2166             /* XOR = 0 → shift only */
2167             *r = *r << 1;
2168         x = x << 1;
2169     /* for */
```

2166 **Figure D.3 – Bit shift algorithm in "C" language (16 bit)**

2167 The variables used in Figure D.3 are specified in Table D.2.

2168 **Table D.2 – Definition of variables used in Figure D.3**

Variable	Definition
x	Data bits including 16 bit CRC signature with "0"
*r	Dereferenced pointer to CRC signature
i	Bitcount 1 to 8

2169

### 2170 D.3.3 Lookup table (16 bit)

2171 The corresponding function in "C" language is shown in Figure D.4. This function is faster.  
2172 However, the lookup table requires memory space.

2173

```
2174     r = crctab16 [((r >> 8) ^ *q++) & 0xff] ^ (r << 8)
```

2174

2175 **Figure D.4 – CRC-16 signature calculation using a lookup table**

2176 The variables used in Figure D.4 are specified in Table D.3.

2177 **Table D.3 – Definition of variables used in Figure D.4**

Variable	Definition
r	CRC signature
q	q represents the pointer to the actual octet value requiring CRC calculation. After reading the value this pointer shall be incremented for the next octet via q++.

2178

2179 The function in Figure D.4 uses the lookup in Table D.4.

2180

**Table D.4 – Lookup table for CRC-16 signature calculation**

CRC-16 lookup table (0 to 255)							
0000	4EAB	9D56	D3FD	7407	3AAC	E951	A7FA
E80E	A6A5	7558	3BF3	9C09	D2A2	015F	4FF4
9EB7	D01C	03E1	4D4A	EAB0	A41B	77E6	394D
76B9	3812	EBEF	A544	02BE	4C15	9FE8	D143
73C5	3D6E	EE93	A038	07C2	4969	9A94	D43F
9BCB	D560	069D	4836	EFCC	A167	729A	3C31
ED72	A3D9	7024	3E8F	9975	D7DE	0423	4A88
057C	4BD7	982A	D681	717B	3FD0	EC2D	A286
E78A	A921	7ADC	3477	938D	DD26	0EDB	4070
0F84	412F	92D2	DC79	7B83	3528	E6D5	A87E
793D	3796	E46B	AAC0	0D3A	4391	906C	DEC7
9133	DF98	0C65	42CE	E534	AB9F	7862	36C9
944F	DAE4	0919	47B2	E048	AEE3	7D1E	33B5
7C41	32EA	E117	AFBC	0846	46ED	9510	DBBB
0AF8	4453	97AE	D905	7EFF	3054	E3A9	AD02
E2F6	AC5D	7FA0	310B	96F1	D85A	0BA7	450C
81BF	CF14	1CE9	5242	F5B8	BB13	68EE	2645
69B1	271A	F4E7	BA4C	1DB6	531D	80E0	CE4B
1F08	51A3	825E	CCF5	6B0F	25A4	F659	B8F2
F706	B9AD	6A50	24FB	8301	CDAA	1E57	50FC
F27A	BCD1	6F2C	2187	867D	C8D6	1B2B	5580
1A74	54DF	8722	C989	6E73	20D8	F325	BD8E
6CCD	2266	F19B	BF30	18CA	5661	859C	CB37
84C3	CA68	1995	573E	F0C4	BE6F	6D92	2339
6635	289E	FB63	B5C8	1232	5C99	8F64	C1CF
8E3B	C090	136D	5DC6	FA3C	B497	676A	29C1
F882	B629	65D4	2B7F	8C85	C22E	11D3	5F78
108C	5E27	8DDA	C371	648B	2A20	F9DD	B776
15F0	5B5B	88A6	C60D	61F7	2F5C	FCA1	B20A
FDFE	B355	60A8	2E03	89F9	C752	14AF	5A04
8B47	C5EC	1611	58BA	FF40	B1EB	6216	2CBD
6349	2DE2	FE1F	B0B4	174E	59E5	8A18	C4B3

NOTE This table contains 16 bit values in hexadecimal representation for each value (0 to 255) of the argument a in the function `crctab16 [a]`. The table should be used in ascending order from top left (0) to bottom right (255).

2181

#### 2182 **D.3.4 Bit shift algorithm (32 bit)**

2183 For the 32-bit CRC signature, the value 0xF4ACFB13 is used as the generator polynomial.  
 2184 The number of data bits may be odd or even. The value generated after the last octet  
 2185 corresponds to the CRC signature to be transferred.

2186 Figure D.5 shows the algorithm for the innermost loop in "C" programming language.

2187

2188

2189

2190

2191

2192

2193

2194

2195

```

void crc32_calc(unsigned char x, unsigned long *r)
  int i;
  for (i = 1; i <= 8; i++)
    if ((bool)(*r & 0x80000000) != (bool)(x & 0x80))
      /* XOR = 1 → shift and process polynomial */
      *r = (*r << 1) ^ 0xF4ACFB13;
    else
      /* XOR = 0 → shift only */
      *r = *r << 1;
    x = x << 1;
  /* for */

```

2196

**Figure D.5 – Bit shift algorithm in "C" language (32 bit)**

2197

The variables used in Figure D.5 are specified in Table D.5.

2198

**Table D.5 – Definition of variables used in Figure D.5**

Variable	Definition
x	Data bits including 32 bit CRC signature with "0"
*r	Dereferenced pointer to CRC signature
i	Bit count 1 to 8

2199

2200

**D.3.5 Lookup table (32 bit)**

2201

The corresponding function in "C" language is shown in Figure D.6. This function is faster. However, the lookup table requires memory space.

2202

2203

```

r = crctab32 [((r >> 24) ^ *q++) & 0xff] ^ (r << 8)

```

2204

2205

**Figure D.6 – CRC-32 signature calculation using a lookup table**

2206

The variables used in Figure D.6 are specified in Table D.6.

2207

**Table D.6 – Definition of variables used in Figure D.4**

Variable	Definition
r	CRC signature
q	q represents the pointer to the actual octet value requiring CRC calculation. After reading the value this pointer shall be incremented for the next octet via q++.

2208

2209

The function in Figure D.6 uses the lookup table in Table D.7.

2210

**Table D.7 – Lookup table for CRC-32 signature calculation**

CRC-32 lookup table (0 to 255)							
00000000	F4ACFB13	1DF50D35	E959F626	3BEA1A6A	CF46E179	261F175F	D2B3EC4C
77D434D4	8378CFC7	6A2139E1	9E8DC2F2	4C3E2EBE	B892D5AD	51CB238B	A567D898
EFA869A8	1B0492BB	F25D649D	06F19F8E	D44273C2	20EE88D1	C9B77EF7	3D1B85E4
987C5D7C	6CD0A66F	85895049	7125AB5A	A3964716	573ABC05	BE634A23	4ACFB130
2BFC2843	DF50D350	36092576	C2A5DE65	10163229	E4BAC93A	0DE33F1C	F94FC40F
5C281C97	A884E784	41DD11A2	B571EAB1	67C206FD	936EFDEE	7A370BC8	8E9BF0DB

CRC-32 lookup table (0 to 255)							
C45441EB	30F8BAF8	D9A14CDE	2D0DB7CD	FFBE5B81	0B12A092	E24B56B4	16E7ADA7
B380753F	472C8E2C	AE75780A	5AD98319	886A6F55	7CC69446	959F6260	61339973
57F85086	A354AB95	4A0D5DB3	BEA1A6A0	6C124AEC	98BEB1FF	71E747D9	854BBCCA
202C6452	D4809F41	3DD96967	C9759274	1BC67E38	EF6A852B	0633730D	F29F881E
B850392E	4CFCC23D	A5A5341B	5109CF08	83BA2344	7716D857	9E4F2E71	6AE3D562
CF840DFA	3B28F6E9	D27100CF	26DDFBDC	F46E1790	00C2EC83	E99B1AA5	1D37E1B6
7C0478C5	88A883D6	61F175F0	955D8EE3	47EE62AF	B34299BC	5A1B6F9A	AEB79489
0BD04C11	FF7CB702	16254124	E289BA37	303A567B	C496AD68	2DCF5B4E	D963A05D
93AC116D	6700EA7E	8E591C58	7AF5E74B	A8460B07	5CEAF014	B5B30632	411FFD21
E47825B9	10D4DEAA	F98D288C	0D21D39F	DF923FD3	2B3EC4C0	C26732E6	36CBC9F5
AFF0A10C	5B5C5A1F	B205AC39	46A9572A	941ABB66	60B64075	89EFB653	7D434D40
D82495D8	2C886ECB	C5D198ED	317D63FE	E3CE8FB2	176274A1	FE3B8287	0A977994
4058C8A4	B4F433B7	5DADC591	A9013E82	7BB2D2CE	8F1E29DD	6647DFFB	92EB24E8
378CFC70	C3200763	2A79F145	DED50A56	0C66E61A	F8CA1D09	1193EB2F	E53F103C
840C894F	70A0725C	99F9847A	6D557F69	BFE69325	4B4A6836	A2139E10	56BF6503
F3D8BD9B	07744688	EE2DB0AE	1A814BBB	C832A7F1	3C9E5CE2	D5C7AAC4	216B51D7
6BA4E0E7	9F081BF4	7651EDD2	82FD16C1	504EFA8D	A4E2019E	4DBBF7B8	B9170CAB
1C70D433	E8DC2F20	0185D906	F5292215	279ACE59	D336354A	3A6FC36C	CEC3387F
F808F18A	0CA40A99	E5FDFCBF	115107AC	C3E2EBE0	374E10F3	DE17E6D5	2ABB1DC6
8FDCC55E	7B703E4D	9229C86B	66853378	B436DF34	409A2427	A9C3D201	5D6F2912
17A09822	E30C6331	0A559517	FEF96E04	2C4A8248	D8E6795B	31BF8F7D	C513746E
6074ACF6	94D857E5	7D81A1C3	892D5AD0	5B9EB69C	AF324D8F	466BBBA9	B2C740BA
D3F4D9C9	275822DA	CE01D4FC	3AAD2FEF	E81EC3A3	1CB238B0	F5EBCE96	01473585
A420ED1D	508C160E	B9D5E028	4D791B3B	9FCAF777	6B660C64	823FFA42	76930151
3C5CB061	C8F04B72	21A9BD54	D5054647	07B6AA0B	F31A5118	1A43A73E	EEEF5C2D
4B8884B5	BF247FA6	567D8980	A2D17293	70629EDF	84CE65CC	6D9793EA	993B68F9

NOTE This table contains 32 bit values in hexadecimal representation for each value (0 to 255) of the argument a in the function crctab32 [a]. The table should be used in ascending order from top left (0) to bottom right (255).

2211

### 2212 D.3.6 Seed values

2213 The algorithm for example in Figure D.3 does not mention explicitly any initial value for the  
 2214 CRC signature variable in "r". It is implicitly assumed to be "0" by default. This initial value is  
 2215 sometimes called "seed value" in literature.

2216 In 11.4.6 a seed value of "1" is required for the cyclic data exchange of safety PDUs. The  
 2217 reason for that is the possibility for the FS-PDout or FS-PDin data to become completely "0".  
 2218 Since it is a property of CRC-signatures for leading zeros in data strings not to be secured by  
 2219 CRC signatures whenever the seed value is "0", the requirement in 11.4.6 is justified. Any  
 2220 value instead of "0" could be used. However, a "1" is sufficient and faster since all of the  
 2221 operations then are shifting and only the last one consists of shifting and XOR processing.

2222 In A.2.3, A.2.8, A.2.9, A.2.12, and E.5.1, the seed value can be "0" since there are no leading  
 2223 zeros within the data strings.



2224  
2225  
2226  
2227

## Annex E (normative, safety related)

### IODD extensions

2228

#### 2229 E.1 General

2230 The IODD of FS-Devices requires extensions for particular FSP parameters and a securing  
2231 mechanism to protect the content of IODD files from being falsified as mentioned in 11.7.1.

2232 In addition, some of the parameters specified in [1] shall be mandatory instead of optional for  
2233 this profile (see E.3).

#### 2234 E.2 Schema

2235 There are no extensions required to the existing IODD schema specified in [9].

#### 2236 E.3 IODD constraints

##### 2237 E.3.1 Overview and general rules

2238 Table E.1 shows the constrained Index assignments of data objects (parameters) for IO-Link  
2239 Safety.

2240 As a general rule, all parameters with Read/Write (R/W) access shall provide a default value  
2241 within the IODD (for FSP parameters see E.5.2).

2242

**Table E.1 – Constrained Index assignment of data objects for IO-Link Safety**

Index (dec)	Object name	Access	Length	Data type	M/O/C	Definition/remark
...						
0x0001 (1)	Direct Parameter Page 2	R/W		RecordT	-	Direct Parameter Page 2 shall not be used as well as DirectParameterOverlays
0x0002 (2)	System Command	W	1 octet	UIntegerT	M	Command code definition as specified in B.2.2 in [1] and in E.3.2 in this document
...						
0x000D (13)	Profile Characteristic	R	variable	ArrayT of UIntegerT16	M	Profile characteristic as specified in B.2.5 in [1] and in E.3.3 in this document
0x000E (14)	PDInput Descriptor	R	variable	ArrayT of OctetStringT3	M	As specified in B.2.6 in [1] and in E.3.4 in this document
0x000F (15)	PDOutput Descriptor	R	variable	ArrayT of OctetStringT3	M	As specified in B.2.7 in [1] and in E.3.4 in this document
...						
0x0013 (19)	Product ID	R	max. 64 octets	StringT	M	As specified in B.2.11 in [1]
0x0015 (21)	Serial-Number	R	max. 16 octets	StringT	M	As specified in B.2.13 in [1]
0x0016 (22)	Hardware Revision	R	max. 64 octets	StringT	M	As specified in B.2.14 in [1]
0x0017 (23)	Firmware Revision	R	max. 64 octets	StringT	M	As specified in B.2.15 in [1]
0x0018 (24)	Application Specific Tag	R/W	Min. 16, max. 32 octets	StringT	M	As specified in B.2.16 in [1]
...						

Index (dec)	Object name	Access	Length	Data type	M/O/C	Definition/remark
0x0020 (32)	Error Count	R	2 octets	UIntegerT	M	As specified in B.2.17 in [1]
...						
0x0024 (36)	Device Status	R	1 octet	UIntegerT	M	As specified in B.2.18 in [1]
0x0025 (37)	Detailed Device Status	R	variable	ArrayT of OctetStringT3	M	As specified in B.2.19 in [1]
...						
0x0028 (40)	Process-DataInput	R	PD length	Device specific	C	As specified in B.2.20 in [1], if PDin available. See E.3.4.
0x0029 (41)	Process-DataOutput	R	PD length	Device specific	C	As specified in B.2.21 in [1], if PDout available. See E.3.4.
...						
0x4000-0x4FFF (16384-20479)	Profile specific Index					See Table A.1
...						
Key M = mandatory; O = optional; C = conditional						

2243

### 2244 E.3.2 Specific SystemCommands

2245 Table E.2 shows the specific behavior of the SystemCommand "Restore factory settings" in  
2246 FS-Devices.

2247 **Table E.2 – Specific behavior of "Restore factory settings"**

Command (hex)	Command (dec)	Command name	M/O	Definition
...				
0x82	130	Restore factory settings	M	This command shall only be effective whenever the parameter value of FSP_TechParCRC is "0" (commissioning phase)
...				
Key M = mandatory; O = optional				

2248

### 2249 E.3.3 Profile Characteristic

2250 The ProfileID for IO-Link Safety is 32800 or 0x8020.

### 2251 E.3.4 ProcessDataInput and ProcessDataOutput

2252 Only the references are required in case of PDin or PDout. This description can be omitted if  
2253 there is only Safety Code to be transmitted. The sample IODD in E.5.7 shows details.

## 2254 E.4 IODD conventions

### 2255 E.4.1 Naming

2256 While this document and [1] use "parameter" for any data object of a Device and FS-Device,  
2257 IODDs in [9] use "variable" instead and thus all those data objects are indicated via the prefix  
2258 "V\_". The following rules apply:

2259 1) Naming of non-safety parameters shall be "V\_xxx". Prefixes "V\_FSP", "V\_FST" shall  
2260 be omitted for FS-Devices.

2261 2) Naming of FST technology safety parameters shall be "V\_FST\_xxx".

2262 3) Naming of FSP safety parameters shall be "V\_FSP\_xxx".

2263 These namings conventions shall only be used for IO-Link Safety.

2264

#### 2265 **E.4.2 Process Data (PD)**

2266 The following rules apply for Process Data:

2267 1) PDin and PDout shall be described as record.

2268 2) Subindices shall be used within the records to differentiate between safety PD and  
2269 non-safety PD.

2270 3) Subindices 1 to 126 shall be used to describe safety PD starting with the highest bit  
2271 offset.

2272 4) Safety Code (see C.5) shall not be described in detail within the IODD. However,  
2273 Subindex 127 shall be used to describe the Safety Code by means of an OctetStringT  
2274 (3 or 5 octets) as a dummy to indicate the length of the Safety Code.

2275 5) Subindices 128 to 255 shall be used to describe non-safety PD.

2276 6) Multiple PD structure definitions selected by conditions are not permitted.

2277

#### 2278 **E.4.3 IODD conventions for user interface**

2279 The following rules apply for user interface:

2280 1) The IODD shall contain different headlines (menu IDs) for the parameter block types  
2281 "Standard", "FST", and "FSP" in this order.

2282 2) The following abbreviations shall be used for the user role menu IDs: Observer ("OR"),  
2283 Maintenance ("MR"), Specialist ("SR").

2284

The menu IDs shall be structured and named as follows:

2286 "ME\_OR\_Param\_Standard"

2287 "ME\_MR\_Param\_Standard"

2288 "ME\_SR\_Param\_Standard"

2289 "ME\_OR\_Param\_FST"

2290 "ME\_MR\_Param\_FST"

2291 "ME\_SR\_Param\_FST"

2292 "ME\_OR\_Param\_FSP"

2293 "ME\_MR\_Param\_FSP"

2294 "ME\_SR\_Param\_FSP"

2295

2296 Menus can be omitted for example in case of the observer role. They can be referen-  
2297 ced multiple if for example the same menu is used for the maintenance role and the  
2298 specialist role.

2299

#### 2300 **E.4.4 Master Tool features**

2301 The following rules on how to present the IODD to the user are highly recommended:

2302 1) IODD interpreter in Master Tools should show headlines not only for PDin and PDout  
2303 but also for safety and non-safety PD. These headlines should use yellow colors.

2304 2) In case of PD observation via ISDU access the variable names should be the same as  
2305 with cyclic PDs.

2306

## 2307 E.5 Securing

### 2308 E.5.1 General

2309 An IODD-based non-safety viewer calculates this 32 bit CRC signature across the FSP  
 2310 parameter description within the IODD. The algorithm for the calculation is shown in this  
 2311 Annex. The safety-related interpreter of the FS-Master Tool checks the correctness of the  
 2312 imported IODD data. Parameter names associated to Index/Subindex are known in the FS  
 2313 IODD interpreter and can be checked in a safe manner.

2314 An IODD checker is not safety-related and thus not sufficient.

2315 Only one IODD per DeviceID is permitted. A particular FS-Device (hardware) can have two  
 2316 DeviceIDs for example a current DeviceID and a DeviceID of a previous software version.

2317 Figure E.1 shows the algorithm to build the FSP\_ParamDescCRC signature. The algorithm  
 2318 shall be used across the Authenticity and the Protocol block (see Table A.1). A seed value "0"  
 2319 shall be used (see D.3.6).

1. General rule: All numerical values are serialized in **big-endian octet order** (most significant octet first).
2. Serialize the **Index** (16 bit unsigned integer) of the FS parameter.
3. Serialize the **bitLength** (16 bit unsigned integer) of the RecordT.
4. Sort the RecordItems in ascending order by Subindex.
5. For each **RecordItem** (including the last one) serialize:
  - a) The **Subindex** (8 bit unsigned integer)
  - b) The **bitOffset** (16 bit unsigned integer)
  - c) The **Datatype** (8 bit unsigned integer): 1=UIntegerT(8), 2=UIntegerT(16), 3=UIntegerT(32)
  - d) If and only if a **DefaultValue** is given in the IODD: The DefaultValue (8/16/32 bit unsigned integer according to Datatype).
  - e) If and only if **SingleValues** or a **ValueRange** is given in the IODD: The allowed values. A list of SingleValues is serialized as a sequence of these values, in ascending order. A ValueRange is serialized by the sequence of the minimum and maximum value. Whether SingleValues and/or a ValueRange are allowed depends on the specific RecordItem. See Table E.4.
6. Calculate the 2 octet CRC across the octet stream using the CRC polynomial 0x4EAB.

2320

2321 **Figure E.1 – Algorithm to build the FSP parameter CRC signatures**

### 2322 E.5.2 DefaultValues for FSP

2323 The DefaultValues for FSP\_Authenticity1/2, FSP\_Port, FSP\_AuthentCRC, FSP\_TechParCRC,  
 2324 and FSP\_ProtParCRC shall be "0". Table E.3 demonstrates the user actions to replace the  
 2325 default values by actual values.

2326 **Table E.3 – User actions to replace DefaultValues**

Parameter	User actions
FSP_Authenticity1/2	During commissioning, the Authenticity values can be acquired from the gateway and displayed by the Master Tool. SCL will not start with the default value.
FSP_Port	The user shall replace the default "0" by an allowed number with the help of the Master Tool during commissioning. SCL will not start with the default value.
FSP_AuthentCRC	Master Tool calculates this CRC signature

Parameter	User actions
FSP_TechParCRC	The user parameterizes the FS-Device during commissioning or maintenance and uses a Dedicated Tool to calculate the actual value (see 11.7.8 and 11.7.9)
FSP_ProtParCRC	Master Tool calculates this CRC signature

2327

2328 **E.5.3 FSP\_Authenticity**

2329 The values of the authenticity parameters cannot be defined within the IODD. They are  
2330 maintained by the FS-Master Tool.

2331 **E.5.4 FSP\_Protocol**

2332 The limited variability of the protocol parameters requires the securing mechanism specified  
2333 in E.5.1.

2334 Table E.4 lists the RecordItems of FSP\_Protocol to be serialized.

2335 **Table E.4 – RecordItems of FSP\_Protocol where allowed values shall be serialized**

RecordItem	Serialized as
FSP_ProtVersion	List of 8-bit unsigned integer containing the allowed values, in ascending order
FSP_ProtMode	List of 8-bit unsigned integer containing the allowed values, in ascending order
FSP_Watchdog	Minimum value and maximum value of the contiguous range of allowed values
Any other	All values according to the data type are allowed, therefore nothing is serialized

2336

2337 **E.5.5 FSP\_IO\_Description**

2338 The FSP\_IO\_Description parameters do not need a particular securing mechanism since  
2339 these instance values are straight forward. The IODD designer can calculate the CRC  
2340 signature already and place it into the IODD (see A.2.9).

2341 **E.5.6 Sample serialization for FSP\_ParamDescCRC**

2342 Table E.5 shows a sample serialization for the calculation of the FSP\_ParamDescCRC  
2343 signature in E.5.7. A seed value "0" shall be used since there are no leading zeros (see  
2344 D.3.6).

2345 **Table E.5 – Sample serialization for FSP\_ParamDescCRC**

Offset	Serialization	IODD items	Expected values
0000	42 00	index	42 00 ( <i>≠ 0</i> )
0002	00 58	bitLength of index	00 58
0004	01	subindex	01 ( <i>Authenticity 1</i> )
0005	00 38	bitOffset	00 38
0007	03	xsi:type=UIntegerT, bitLength=32	03
0008	00 00 00 00	RecordItemInfo/@defaultValue	00 00 00 00
000C	02	subindex	02 ( <i>Authenticity 2</i> )
000D	00 18	bitOffset	00 18
000F	03	xsi:type=UIntegerT, bitLength=32	03
0010	00 00 00 00	RecordItemInfo/@defaultValue	00 00 00 00
0014	03	subindex	03 ( <i>Port</i> )
0015	00 10	bitOffset	00 10
0017	01	xsi:type=UIntegerT, bitLength=8	01
0018	00	RecordItemInfo/@defaultValue	00
0019	04	subindex	04 ( <i>AuthentCRC</i> )

Offset	Serialization	IODD items	Expected values
001A	00 00	bitOffset	00 00
001C	02	xsi:type=UIntegerT, bitLength=16	02
001D	00 00	RecordItemInfo/@defaultValue	00 00 ( <i>Dummy CRC</i> )
001F	42 01	index	42 01
0021	00 60	bitLength of index	00 60
0023	01	subindex	01 ( <i>ProtVersion</i> )
0024	00 58	bitOffset	00 58
0026	01	xsi:type=UIntegerT, bitLength=8	01
0027	01	RecordItemInfo/@defaultValue	01
0028	01	SingleValue/@value	01 ( <i>example: 16 bit</i> )
0029	02	subindex	02 ( <i>ProtMode</i> )
002A	00 50	bitOffset	00 50
002C	01	xsi:type=UIntegerT, bitLength=8	01
002D	01	RecordItemInfo/@defaultValue	<i>Vendor defined</i>
002E	01	SingleValue/@value	01
002F	03	subindex	03 ( <i>Watchdog</i> )
0030	00 40	bitOffset	00 40
0032	02	xsi:type=UIntegerT, bitLength=16	02
0033	00 64	RecordItemInfo/@defaultValue	<i>(Vendor defined)</i>
0035	00 64	ValueRange/@lowerValue	00 64 ( <i>example: 100</i> )
0037	13 88	ValueRange/@upperValue	13 88 ( <i>example: 5000</i> )
0039	04	subindex	04 ( <i>IO_StructCRC</i> )
003A	00 30	bitOffset	00 30
003C	02	xsi:type=UIntegerT, bitLength=16	02
003D	09 52	RecordItemInfo/@defaultValue (see A.2.9)	<i>(Vendor defined)</i>
003F	05	Subindex	05 ( <i>TechParCRC</i> )
0040	00 10	bitOffset	00 10
0042	03	xsi:type=UIntegerT, bitLength=32	03
0043	00 00 00 00	RecordItemInfo/@defaultValue	00 00 00 00 ( <i>Vendor</i> )
0047	06	subindex	06 ( <i>ProtParCRC</i> )
0048	00 00	bitOffset	00 00
004A	02	xsi:type=UIntegerT, bitLength=16	02
004B	00 00	RecordItemInfo/@defaultValue	00 00 <i>Dummy CRC</i>
Calculated FSP_ParamDescCRC signature value is: 7520 (0x1D60)			See E.5.7

2346

2347 The sample serialization in Table E.5 shows 77 octets to be secured via the CRC-16  
 2348 polynomial listed in Table D.1. This is only sufficient due to the fact that most of the values  
 2349 are expected values within the FS-Master Tool importing the IODD. Only a few values are  
 2350 variable and "*Vendor defined*" and require securing (see offsets: 0028, 002D, 0033 to 0037,  
 2351 003D, and 0043). The remaining values can be compared with preset values.

2352 The "*Dummy CRC*" are placeholders to be replaced by the FS-Master Tool once the user  
 2353 assigned the actual parameter values.

2354

### 2355 E.5.7 FST and FSP parameters and Data Storage

2356 FST parameters shall be described within the IODD. A "packed" parameter transfer via one  
 2357 ISDU that is not described within the IODD is possible for Data Storage as long as the result  
 2358 in the Device/FS-Device is the same as with discrete ISDUs (see 11.7.6). A manufacturer-  
 2359 /vendor is responsible to guarantee this behavior.

2360 FSP parameters (authenticity and protocol) shall be described within the IODD also and are  
 2361 part of Data Storage.

### 2362 E.5.8 Sample IODD of an FS-Device

2363 The following XML code represents the sample code of an FS-Device IODD. A complete IODD  
 2364 file with name *IO-Link-SafetyDevice-20170225-IODD1.1.xml* can be downloaded from the IO-  
 2365 Link websites.

2366 This sample IODD contains already calculated CRC signature values:

```

2367 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
2368 <IODevice xmlns="http://www.io-link.com/IODD/2010/10" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
2369 xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.io-link.com/IODD/2010/10 IODD1.1.xsd">
2370   <DocumentInfo copyright="IO-Link Community" releaseDate="2017-02-25" version="V1.0"/>
2371   <ProfileHeader>
2372     <ProfileIdentification>IO Device Profile</ProfileIdentification>
2373     <ProfileRevision>1.1</ProfileRevision>
2374     <ProfileName>Device Profile for IO Devices</ProfileName>
2375     <ProfileSource>IO-Link Consortium</ProfileSource>
2376     <ProfileClassID>Device</ProfileClassID>
2377     <ISO15745Reference>
2378       <ISO15745Part>1</ISO15745Part>
2379       <ISO15745Edition>1</ISO15745Edition>
2380     <ProfileTechnology>IODD</ProfileTechnology>
2381   </ISO15745Reference>
2382 </ProfileHeader>
2383 <ProfileBody>
2384   <DeviceIdentity deviceId="160" vendorId="65535" vendorName="IO-Link Community">
2385     <VendorText textId="T_VendorText"/>
2386     <VendorUrl textId="T_VendorUrl"/>
2387     <VendorLogo name="IO-Link-logo.png"/>
2388     <DeviceName textId="T_DeviceName"/>
2389     <DeviceFamily textId="T_DeviceFamily"/>
2390     <DeviceVariantCollection>
2391       <DeviceVariant productId="SafetyDeviceVariant" deviceIcon="IO-Link-SafetyDevice-icon.png" deviceSymbol="IO-Link-
2392 SafetyDevice-pic.png">
2393         <Name textId="TN_SafetyDeviceVariant"/>
2394         <Description textId="TD_SafetyDeviceVariant"/>
2395       </DeviceVariant>
2396     </DeviceVariantCollection>
2397   </DeviceIdentity>
2398   <DeviceFunction>
2399     <Features blockParameter="true" dataStorage="true" profileCharacteristic="32800">
2400       <SupportedAccessLocks parameter="true" dataStorage="true" localParameterization="false" localUserInterface="false"/>
2401     </Features>
2402   <DatatypeCollection>
2403     <!-- Data types for IO-Link Safety parameter. See chapter A.1. -->
2404     <Datatype id="D_FSP_Authenticity" xsi:type="RecordT" bitLength="88">
2405       <RecordItem subindex="1" bitOffset="56">
2406         <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="UIntegerT" bitLength="32"/>
2407         <Name textId="TN_FSCP_Authenticity_1"/>
2408         <Description textId="TD_FSCP_Authenticity_1"/>
2409       </RecordItem>
2410       <RecordItem subindex="2" bitOffset="24">
2411         <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="UIntegerT" bitLength="32"/>
2412         <Name textId="TN_FSCP_Authenticity_2"/>
2413         <Description textId="TD_FSCP_Authenticity_2"/>
2414       </RecordItem>
2415       <RecordItem subindex="3" bitOffset="16">
2416         <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="UIntegerT" bitLength="8"/>
2417         <Name textId="TN_FSP_Port"/>
2418         <Description textId="TD_FSP_Port"/>
2419       </RecordItem>
2420       <RecordItem subindex="4" bitOffset="0">
2421         <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="UIntegerT" bitLength="16"/>
2422         <Name textId="TN_FSP_AuthentCRC"/>
2423         <Description textId="TD_FSP_AuthentCRC"/>

```

```

2424     </RecordItem>
2425 </Datatype>
2426 <Datatype id="D_FSP_Password" xsi:type="StringT" fixedLength="32" encoding="US-ASCII"/>
2427 </DatatypeCollection>
2428 <VariableCollection>
2429 <StdVariableRef id="V_DirectParameters_1"/>
2430 <!--0-->
2431 <StdVariableRef id="V_DirectParameters_2"/>
2432 <!--1 - TBD delete this once IODD Checker has been changed -->
2433 <StdVariableRef id="V_SystemCommand">
2434 <!--2-->
2435 <StdSingleValueRef value="130"/>
2436 <!-- RestoreFactorySettings -->
2437 </StdVariableRef>
2438 <StdVariableRef id="V_DeviceAccessLocks">
2439 <!--12-->
2440 <StdRecordItemRef subindex="1" defaultValue="false"/>
2441 <!-- TBD delete this once IODD Checker has been changed -->
2442 <StdRecordItemRef subindex="2" defaultValue="false"/>
2443 <!-- TBD delete this once IODD Checker has been changed -->
2444 </StdVariableRef>
2445 <StdVariableRef id="V_VendorName" defaultValue="IO-Link Community"/>
2446 <!--16-->
2447 <StdVariableRef id="V_VendorText" defaultValue="http://www.io-link.com"/>
2448 <!--17 optional -->
2449 <StdVariableRef id="V_ProductName" defaultValue="SafetyDevice"/>
2450 <!--18-->
2451 <StdVariableRef id="V_ProductID" defaultValue="SafetyDeviceVariant"/>
2452 <!--19-->
2453 <StdVariableRef id="V_ProductText" defaultValue="Sample IO-Link Safety"/>
2454 <!--20 optional -->
2455 <StdVariableRef id="V_SerialNumber"/>
2456 <!--21-->
2457 <StdVariableRef id="V_HardwareRevision"/>
2458 <!--22-->
2459 <StdVariableRef id="V_FirmwareRevision"/>
2460 <!--23-->
2461 <StdVariableRef id="V_ApplicationSpecificTag" defaultValue="IO-Link Safety"/>
2462 <!--24-->
2463 <StdVariableRef id="V_ErrorCount"/>
2464 <!--32-->
2465 <StdVariableRef id="V_DeviceStatus"/>
2466 <!--36-->
2467 <StdVariableRef id="V_DetailedDeviceStatus" fixedLengthRestriction="8"/>
2468 <!--37-->
2469 <StdVariableRef id="V_ProcessDataInput"/>
2470 <!--40-->
2471 <!-- V_ProcessDataOutput 41 - only required when "real" output is present (not only F message trailer) -->
2472 <!-- standard (=non-safety) Parameter appear here, e.g. -->
2473 <Variable index="64" id="V_NonSafetyParameter" accessRights="rw">
2474 <Datatype xsi:type="IntegerT" bitLength="16"/>
2475 <Name textId="TN_NonSafetyParameter"/>
2476 </Variable>
2477 <!-- FS Technology Parameter appear here, e.g. -->
2478 <Variable index="65" id="V_FST_DiscrepancyTime" accessRights="rw" defaultValue="0">
2479 <Datatype xsi:type="UIntegerT" bitLength="16"/>
2480 <Name textId="TN_FST_DiscrepancyTime"/>
2481 </Variable>
2482 <Variable index="66" id="V_FST_Filter" accessRights="rw" defaultValue="0">
2483 <Datatype xsi:type="UIntegerT" bitLength="16"/>
2484 <Name textId="TN_FST_Filter"/>
2485 </Variable>
2486 <!-- IO-Link Safety parameter. See chapter A.1. -->
2487 <Variable index="16896" id="V_FSP_Authenticity" accessRights="rw">
2488 <DatatypeRef datatypeId="D_FSP_Authenticity"/>
2489 <RecordItemInfo subindex="1" defaultValue="0"/>
2490 <!-- FSCP_Authenticity_1: 0= invalid -->
2491 <RecordItemInfo subindex="2" defaultValue="0"/>
2492 <!-- FSCP_Authenticity_2: 0= invalid -->
2493 <RecordItemInfo subindex="3" defaultValue="0"/>
2494 <!-- FSP_Port: 0= invalid -->
2495 <RecordItemInfo subindex="4" defaultValue="0"/>
2496 <!-- FSP_AuthentCRC: 0= invalid -->
2497 <Name textId="TN_FSP_Authenticity"/>
2498 <Description textId="TD_FSP_Authenticity"/>
2499 </Variable>
2500 <Variable index="16897" id="V_FSP_Protocol" accessRights="rw">

```



```

2501 <Datatype xsi:type="RecordT" bitLength="96">
2502 <RecordItem subindex="1" bitOffset="88">
2503 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="UIntegerT" bitLength="8">
2504 <SingleValue value="0"/>
2505 <!-- fixed - current protocol version -->
2506 </SimpleDatatype>
2507 <Name textId="TN_FSP_ProtVer"/>
2508 <Description textId="TD_FSP_ProtVer"/>
2509 </RecordItem>
2510 <RecordItem subindex="2" bitOffset="80">
2511 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="UIntegerT" bitLength="8">
2512 <!-- Which of these SingleValues is supported is device specific -->
2513 <SingleValue value="1"/>
2514 <!-- 16 bit CRC -->
2515 <!-- SingleValue value="2" - 32 bit CRC -->
2516 </SimpleDatatype>
2517 <Name textId="TN_FSP_ProtMode"/>
2518 <Description textId="TD_FSP_ProtMode"/>
2519 </RecordItem>
2520 <RecordItem subindex="3" bitOffset="64">
2521 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="UIntegerT" bitLength="16">
2522 <!-- Which ValueRange is supported is device specific (but the lowerValue must be >0) -->
2523 <ValueRange lowerValue="100" upperValue="5000"/>
2524 </SimpleDatatype>
2525 <Name textId="TN_FSP_Watchdog"/>
2526 <Description textId="TD_FSP_Watchdog"/>
2527 </RecordItem>
2528 <RecordItem subindex="4" bitOffset="48">
2529 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="UIntegerT" bitLength="16"/>
2530 <Name textId="TN_FSP_IO_StructCRC"/>
2531 <Description textId="TD_FSP_IO_StructCRC"/>
2532 </RecordItem>
2533 <RecordItem subindex="5" bitOffset="16">
2534 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="UIntegerT" bitLength="32"/>
2535 <Name textId="TN_FSP_TechParCRC"/>
2536 <Description textId="TD_FSP_TechParCRC"/>
2537 </RecordItem>
2538 <RecordItem subindex="6" bitOffset="0">
2539 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="UIntegerT" bitLength="16"/>
2540 <Name textId="TN_FSP_ProtParCRC"/>
2541 <Description textId="TD_FSP_ProtParCRC"/>
2542 </RecordItem>
2543 </Datatype>
2544 <RecordItemInfo subindex="1" defaultValue="0"/>
2545 <!-- FSP_ProtVer: 0= valid -->
2546 <RecordItemInfo subindex="2" defaultValue="1"/>
2547 <!-- FSP_ProtMode: 1 (16 bit CRC)= valid -->
2548 <RecordItemInfo subindex="3" defaultValue="100"/>
2549 <!-- FSP_Watchdog: 100= valid -->
2550 <RecordItemInfo subindex="4" defaultValue="444"/>
2551 <!-- FSP_IO_StructCRC: = valid -->
2552 <!-- TBD value -->
2553 <RecordItemInfo subindex="5" defaultValue="0"/>
2554 <!-- FSP_TechParCRC: 0= invalid -->
2555 <RecordItemInfo subindex="6" defaultValue="0"/>
2556 <!-- FSP_ProtParCRC: 0= invalid -->
2557 <Name textId="TN_FSP_Protocol"/>
2558 <Description textId="TD_FSP_Protocol"/>
2559 </Variable>
2560 <Variable index="16912" id="V_FSP_Password" accessRights="wo">
2561 <DatatypeRef datatypeId="D_FSP_Password"/>
2562 <Name textId="TN_FSP_Password"/>
2563 <Description textId="TD_FSP_Password"/>
2564 </Variable>
2565 <Variable index="16913" id="V_FSP_Reset_Password" accessRights="wo">
2566 <DatatypeRef datatypeId="D_FSP_Password"/>
2567 <Name textId="TN_FSP_Reset_Password"/>
2568 <Description textId="TD_FSP_Reset_Password"/>
2569 </Variable>
2570 <Variable index="16914" id="V_FSP_ParamDescCRC" accessRights="ro" defaultValue="444">
2571 <!-- TBD: correct defaultValue -->
2572 <Datatype xsi:type="UIntegerT" bitLength="16"/>
2573 <Name textId="TN_FSP_ParamDescCRC"/>
2574 <Description textId="TD_FSP_ParamDescCRC"/>
2575 </Variable>
2576 </VariableCollection>
2577 </ProcessDataCollection>

```

```

2578 <!-- See chapter 11.4.3 Safety PDUs, Figure A.65 and Figure A.66 -->
2579 <ProcessData id="P_ProcessData">
2580 <ProcessDataIn bitLength="88" id="PI_ProcessDataIn">
2581 <!-- Safety process data has subindex 1..126 -->
2582 <Datatype xsi:type="RecordT" bitLength="88">
2583 <!-- boolean octet 1 -->
2584 <RecordItem subindex="1" bitOffset="80">
2585 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="BooleanT"/>
2586 <Name textId="TN_PDin-Bool1"/>
2587 </RecordItem>
2588 <RecordItem subindex="2" bitOffset="81">
2589 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="BooleanT"/>
2590 <Name textId="TN_PDin-Bool2"/>
2591 </RecordItem>
2592 <RecordItem subindex="3" bitOffset="82">
2593 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="BooleanT"/>
2594 <Name textId="TN_PDin-Bool3"/>
2595 </RecordItem>
2596 <RecordItem subindex="4" bitOffset="83">
2597 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="BooleanT"/>
2598 <Name textId="TN_PDin-Bool4"/>
2599 </RecordItem>
2600 <RecordItem subindex="5" bitOffset="84">
2601 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="BooleanT"/>
2602 <Name textId="TN_PDin-Bool5"/>
2603 </RecordItem>
2604 <RecordItem subindex="6" bitOffset="85">
2605 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="BooleanT"/>
2606 <Name textId="TN_PDin-Bool6"/>
2607 </RecordItem>
2608 <RecordItem subindex="7" bitOffset="86">
2609 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="BooleanT"/>
2610 <Name textId="TN_PDin-Bool7"/>
2611 </RecordItem>
2612 <RecordItem subindex="8" bitOffset="87">
2613 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="BooleanT"/>
2614 <Name textId="TN_PDin-Bool8"/>
2615 </RecordItem>
2616 <!-- boolean octet 2 -->
2617 <!-- There may be no gaps between the booleans, but the last octet may contain less than eight booleans. -->
2618 <RecordItem subindex="9" bitOffset="72">
2619 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="BooleanT"/>
2620 <Name textId="TN_PDin-Bool9"/>
2621 </RecordItem>
2622 <RecordItem subindex="10" bitOffset="73">
2623 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="BooleanT"/>
2624 <Name textId="TN_PDin-Bool10"/>
2625 </RecordItem>
2626 <RecordItem subindex="11" bitOffset="74">
2627 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="BooleanT"/>
2628 <Name textId="TN_PDin-Bool11"/>
2629 </RecordItem>
2630 <RecordItem subindex="12" bitOffset="75">
2631 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="BooleanT"/>
2632 <Name textId="TN_PDin-Bool12"/>
2633 </RecordItem>
2634 <RecordItem subindex="13" bitOffset="76">
2635 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="BooleanT"/>
2636 <Name textId="TN_PDin-Bool13"/>
2637 </RecordItem>
2638 <!-- Integer (octets 3 and 4) -->
2639 <RecordItem subindex="14" bitOffset="56">
2640 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="IntegerT" bitLength="16"/>
2641 <Name textId="TN_PDin-Int1"/>
2642 </RecordItem>
2643 <!-- Status&DCnt and CRC has fixed subindex 127, octets 5-7 -->
2644 <RecordItem subindex="127" bitOffset="32">
2645 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="OctetStringT" fixedLength="3"/>
2646 <Name textId="TN_PD_FSTrailer"/>
2647 <Description textId="TD_PD_FSTrailer"/>
2648 </RecordItem>
2649 <!-- Non-safety process data has subindex 128..255 -->
2650 <!-- UInteger (octets 8-11) -->
2651 <RecordItem subindex="128" bitOffset="0">
2652 <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="UIntegerT" bitLength="32"/>
2653 <Name textId="TN_PD_Rev"/>
2654 <Description textId="TD_PD_Rev"/>

```

```

2655     </RecordItem>
2656   </Datatype>
2657   <Name textId="TN_ProcessDataIn"/>
2658 </ProcessDataIn>
2659 <ProcessDataOut bitLength="24" id="PO_ProcessDataOut">
2660   <Datatype xsi:type="RecordT" bitLength="24">
2661     <!-- Control&MCnt and CRC -->
2662     <RecordItem subindex="1" bitOffset="0">
2663       <SimpleDatatype xsi:type="OctetStringT" fixedLength="3"/>
2664       <Name textId="TN_PD_FSTrailer"/>
2665       <Description textId="TD_PD_FSTrailer"/>
2666     </RecordItem>
2667   </Datatype>
2668   <Name textId="TN_ProcessDataOut"/>
2669 </ProcessDataOut>
2670 </ProcessData>
2671 </ProcessDataCollection>
2672 <EventCollection>
2673 <!-- SCL (Safety Communication Layer) EventCodes. See chapter B.1. -->
2674 <Event code="45056" type="Warning">
2675   <Name textId="TN_TransmissionError_CRCSignature"/>
2676 </Event>
2677 <Event code="45057" type="Warning">
2678   <Name textId="TN_TransmissionError_Counter"/>
2679 </Event>
2680 <Event code="45058" type="Error">
2681   <Name textId="TN_TransmissionError_Timeout"/>
2682 </Event>
2683 <Event code="45059" type="Error">
2684   <Name textId="TN_UnexpectedAuthenticationCode"/>
2685 </Event>
2686 <Event code="45060" type="Error">
2687   <Name textId="TN_UnexpectedAuthenticationPort"/>
2688 </Event>
2689 <Event code="45061" type="Error">
2690   <Name textId="TN_IncorrectFSP_AuthentCRC"/>
2691 </Event>
2692 <Event code="45062" type="Error">
2693   <Name textId="TN_IncorrectFSP_ProtParCRC"/>
2694 </Event>
2695 <Event code="45063" type="Error">
2696   <Name textId="TN_IncorrectFSP_TechParCRC"/>
2697 </Event>
2698 <Event code="45064" type="Error">
2699   <Name textId="TN_IncorrectFSP_IO_StructCRC"/>
2700 </Event>
2701 <Event code="45065" type="Error">
2702   <Name textId="TN_WatchdogTimeOutOfSpec"/>
2703 </Event>
2704 <Event code="6200" type="Error">
2705   <!-- for device test -->
2706   <Name textId="TN_Event1"/>
2707 </Event>
2708 <Event code="6201" type="Error">
2709   <!-- for device test -->
2710   <Name textId="TN_Event2"/>
2711 </Event>
2712 </EventCollection>
2713 <UserInterface>
2714   <MenuCollection>
2715     <Menu id="M_Identification">
2716       <VariableRef variableId="V_VendorName"/>
2717       <VariableRef variableId="V_VendorText"/>
2718       <VariableRef variableId="V_ProductName"/>
2719       <VariableRef variableId="V_ProductID"/>
2720       <VariableRef variableId="V_ProductText"/>
2721       <VariableRef variableId="V_SerialNumber"/>
2722       <VariableRef variableId="V_HardwareRevision"/>
2723       <VariableRef variableId="V_FirmwareRevision"/>
2724     </Menu>
2725     <Menu id="M_OR_Parameter">
2726       <RecordItemRef variableId="V_DeviceAccessLocks" subindex="1" accessRightRestriction="ro"/>
2727       <VariableRef variableId="V_ApplicationSpecificTag"/>
2728       <VariableRef variableId="V_NonSafetyParameter" accessRightRestriction="ro"/>
2729     </Menu>
2730     <Menu id="M_MR_Param_Standard">
2731       <Name textId="TN_MR_Param_Standard"/>

```

```

2732     <RecordItemRef variableId="V_DeviceAccessLocks" subindex="1"/>
2733     <VariableRef variableId="V_ApplicationSpecificTag"/>
2734     <VariableRef variableId="V_NonSafetyParameter"/>
2735 </Menu>
2736 <Menu id="M_MR_Param_FST">
2737     <Name textId="TN_MR_Param_FST"/>
2738     <VariableRef variableId="V_FST_DiscrepancyTime" unitCode="1056" accessRightRestriction="ro"/>
2739     <VariableRef variableId="V_FST_Filter" unitCode="1056" accessRightRestriction="ro"/>
2740 </Menu>
2741 <Menu id="M_MR_Param_FSP">
2742     <Name textId="TN_MR_Param_FSP"/>
2743     <VariableRef variableId="V_FSP_Authenticity" accessRightRestriction="ro"/>
2744     <VariableRef variableId="V_FSP_Protocol" accessRightRestriction="ro"/>
2745 </Menu>
2746 <Menu id="M_SR_Param_Standard">
2747     <Name textId="TN_SR_Param_Standard"/>
2748     <RecordItemRef variableId="V_DeviceAccessLocks" subindex="1"/>
2749     <VariableRef variableId="V_ApplicationSpecificTag"/>
2750     <VariableRef variableId="V_NonSafetyParameter"/>
2751 </Menu>
2752 <Menu id="M_SR_Param_FST">
2753     <Name textId="TN_SR_Param_FST"/>
2754     <VariableRef variableId="V_FST_DiscrepancyTime" unitCode="1056"/>
2755     <VariableRef variableId="V_FST_Filter" unitCode="1056"/>
2756 </Menu>
2757 <Menu id="M_SR_Param_FSP">
2758     <Name textId="TN_SR_Param_FSP"/>
2759     <VariableRef variableId="V_FSP_Authenticity"/>
2760     <VariableRef variableId="V_FSP_Protocol"/>
2761     <VariableRef variableId="V_FSP_Password"/>
2762     <VariableRef variableId="V_FSP_Reset_Password"/>
2763 </Menu>
2764 <Menu id="M_MR_Parameter">
2765     <MenuRef menuId="M_MR_Param_Standard"/>
2766     <MenuRef menuId="M_MR_Param_FST"/>
2767     <MenuRef menuId="M_MR_Param_FSP"/>
2768 </Menu>
2769 <Menu id="M_SR_Parameter">
2770     <MenuRef menuId="M_SR_Param_Standard"/>
2771     <MenuRef menuId="M_SR_Param_FST"/>
2772     <MenuRef menuId="M_SR_Param_FSP"/>
2773 </Menu>
2774 <Menu id="M_StandardProcessData">
2775     <Name textId="TN_StandardProcessData"/>
2776     <RecordItemRef variableId="V_ProcessDataInput" subindex="128"/>
2777 </Menu>
2778 <Menu id="M_FS_ProcessData">
2779     <Name textId="TN_FS_ProcessData"/>
2780     <RecordItemRef variableId="V_ProcessDataInput" subindex="1"/>
2781     <RecordItemRef variableId="V_ProcessDataInput" subindex="2"/>
2782     <RecordItemRef variableId="V_ProcessDataInput" subindex="3"/>
2783     <RecordItemRef variableId="V_ProcessDataInput" subindex="4"/>
2784     <RecordItemRef variableId="V_ProcessDataInput" subindex="5"/>
2785     <RecordItemRef variableId="V_ProcessDataInput" subindex="6"/>
2786     <RecordItemRef variableId="V_ProcessDataInput" subindex="7"/>
2787     <RecordItemRef variableId="V_ProcessDataInput" subindex="8"/>
2788     <RecordItemRef variableId="V_ProcessDataInput" subindex="9"/>
2789     <RecordItemRef variableId="V_ProcessDataInput" subindex="10"/>
2790     <RecordItemRef variableId="V_ProcessDataInput" subindex="11"/>
2791     <RecordItemRef variableId="V_ProcessDataInput" subindex="12"/>
2792     <RecordItemRef variableId="V_ProcessDataInput" subindex="13"/>
2793     <RecordItemRef variableId="V_ProcessDataInput" subindex="14"/>
2794 </Menu>
2795 <Menu id="M_Observation">
2796     <MenuRef menuId="M_StandardProcessData"/>
2797     <MenuRef menuId="M_FS_ProcessData"/>
2798 </Menu>
2799 <Menu id="M_Diagnosis">
2800     <VariableRef variableId="V_ErrorCount"/>
2801     <VariableRef variableId="V_DeviceStatus"/>
2802     <VariableRef variableId="V_DetailedDeviceStatus"/>
2803 </Menu>
2804 </MenuCollection>
2805 <ObserverRoleMenuSet>
2806     <IdentificationMenu menuId="M_Identification"/>
2807     <ParameterMenu menuId="M_OR_Parameter"/>
2808     <ObservationMenu menuId="M_Observation"/>

```

```

2809     <DiagnosisMenu menuId="M_Diagnosis"/>
2810 </ObserverRoleMenuSet>
2811 <MaintenanceRoleMenuSet>
2812     <IdentificationMenu menuId="M_Identification"/>
2813     <ParameterMenu menuId="M_MR_Parameter"/>
2814     <ObservationMenu menuId="M_Observation"/>
2815     <DiagnosisMenu menuId="M_Diagnosis"/>
2816 </MaintenanceRoleMenuSet>
2817 <SpecialistRoleMenuSet>
2818     <IdentificationMenu menuId="M_Identification"/>
2819     <ParameterMenu menuId="M_SR_Parameter"/>
2820     <ObservationMenu menuId="M_Observation"/>
2821     <DiagnosisMenu menuId="M_Diagnosis"/>
2822 </SpecialistRoleMenuSet>
2823 </UserInterface>
2824 </DeviceFunction>
2825 </ProfileBody>
2826 <CommNetworkProfile xsi:type="IOLinkCommNetworkProfileT" iolinkRevision="V1.1">
2827 <TransportLayers>
2828     <PhysicalLayer bitrate="COM3" minCycleTime="2000" sioSupported="true" mSequenceCapability="43">
2829         <Connection xsi:type="M12-4ConnectionT" connectionSymbol="IO-Link-SafetyDevice-con-pic.png">
2830             <ProductRef productId="SafetyDeviceVariant"/>
2831             <Wire1 function="L+"/>
2832             <Wire2 function="Other"/>
2833             <Wire3 function="L-"/>
2834             <Wire4 function="C/Q"/>
2835         </Connection>
2836     </PhysicalLayer>
2837 </TransportLayers>
2838 <Test>
2839     <Config1 index="64" testValue="0x55,0x99"/>
2840     <Config2 index="1024" testValue="0x00"/>
2841     <Config3 index="24" testValue="0x20,0x20,0x20,0x20,0x20,0x20,0x20,0x20,0x20,0x20,0x20,0x20,0x20,0x20,0x20,0x20"/>
2842     <Config7 index="155">
2843         <EventTrigger disappearValue="2" appearValue="1"/>
2844         <EventTrigger disappearValue="4" appearValue="3"/>
2845     </Config7>
2846 </Test>
2847 </CommNetworkProfile>
2848 <ExternalTextCollection>
2849     <PrimaryLanguage xml:lang="en">
2850         <Text id="T_VendorText" value="Breakthrough in Communication"/>
2851         <Text id="T_VendorUrl" value="http://www.io-link.com"/>
2852         <Text id="T_DeviceName" value="Safety Device"/>
2853         <Text id="T_DeviceFamily" value="Safety Device Family"/>
2854         <Text id="TN_SafetyDeviceVariant" value="Safety Device"/>
2855         <Text id="TD_SafetyDeviceVariant" value="Sample for a device with IO-Link Safety"/>
2856         <!-- Non-Safety parameter -->
2857         <Text id="TN_NonSafetyParameter" value="Sample Parameter"/>
2858         <!-- FS Technology parameter -->
2859         <Text id="TN_FST_DiscrepancyTime" value="Discrepancy Time"/>
2860         <Text id="TN_FST_Filter" value="Filter"/>
2861         <!-- IO-Link Safety parameter -->
2862         <Text id="TN_FSP_Authenticity" value="Authenticity"/>
2863         <Text id="TD_FSP_Authenticity" value="Authenticity parameters"/>
2864         <Text id="TN_FSCP_Authenticity_1" value="FSCP_Authenticity_1"/>
2865         <Text id="TD_FSCP_Authenticity_1" value="&quot;A-Code&quot; from the upper level FSCP system"/>
2866         <Text id="TN_FSCP_Authenticity_2" value="FSCP_Authenticity_2"/>
2867         <Text id="TD_FSCP_Authenticity_2" value="Extended &quot;A-Code&quot; from the upper level FSCP system"/>
2868         <Text id="TN_FSP_Port" value="FSP_Port"/>
2869         <Text id="TD_FSP_Port" value="PortNumber identifying the particular FS-Device"/>
2870         <Text id="TN_FSP_AuthentCRC" value="FSP_AuthentCRC"/>
2871         <Text id="TD_FSP_AuthentCRC" value="CRC-16 across authenticity parameters"/>
2872         <Text id="TN_FSP_Protocol" value="Protocol"/>
2873         <Text id="TD_FSP_Protocol" value="Protocol parameters"/>
2874         <Text id="TN_FSP_ProtVer" value="FSP_ProtVer"/>
2875         <Text id="TD_FSP_ProtVer" value="Protocol version (0=current version)"/>
2876         <Text id="TN_FSP_ProtMode" value="FSP_ProtMode"/>
2877         <Text id="TD_FSP_ProtMode" value="Protocol mode (1=16 bit CRC, 2=32 bit CRC)"/>
2878         <Text id="TN_FSP_Watchdog" value="FSP_Watchdog"/>
2879         <Text id="TD_FSP_Watchdog" value="Monitoring of IO update"/>
2880         <Text id="TN_FSP_IO_StructCRC" value="FSP_IO_StructCRC"/>
2881         <Text id="TD_FSP_IO_StructCRC" value="CRC-16 across IO structure description block"/>
2882         <Text id="TN_FSP_TechParCRC" value="FSP_TechParCRC"/>
2883         <Text id="TD_FSP_TechParCRC" value="Securing code across FST (technology specific parameter)"/>
2884         <Text id="TN_FSP_ProtParCRC" value="FSP_ProtParCRC"/>
2885         <Text id="TD_FSP_ProtParCRC" value="CRC-16 across protocol parameters"/>

```



```

2886     <Text id="TN_FSP_Password" value="FS_Password"/>
2887     <Text id="TD_FSP_Password" value="Password for the access protection of FSP parameter and Dedicated Tools"/>
2888     <Text id="TN_FSP_Reset_Password" value="Reset_FS_Password"/>
2889     <Text id="TD_FSP_Reset_Password" value="Password to reset the FST parameter to factory settings and to reset implicitly
2890 the FS-Password"/>
2891     <Text id="TN_FSP_ParamDescCRC" value="FSP_ParamDescCRC"/>
2892     <Text id="TD_FSP_ParamDescCRC" value="A dummy variable to store the CRC across the safety parameters within the
2893 IODD in the defaultValue"/>
2894     <!-- Process data -->
2895     <Text id="TN_ProcessDataIn" value="Process Data In"/>
2896     <Text id="TN_PDin-Bool1" value="FS process data in Boolean 1"/>
2897     <Text id="TN_PDin-Bool2" value="FS process data in Boolean 2"/>
2898     <Text id="TN_PDin-Bool3" value="FS process data in Boolean 3"/>
2899     <Text id="TN_PDin-Bool4" value="FS process data in Boolean 4"/>
2900     <Text id="TN_PDin-Bool5" value="FS process data in Boolean 5"/>
2901     <Text id="TN_PDin-Bool6" value="FS process data in Boolean 6"/>
2902     <Text id="TN_PDin-Bool7" value="FS process data in Boolean 7"/>
2903     <Text id="TN_PDin-Bool8" value="FS process data in Boolean 8"/>
2904     <Text id="TN_PDin-Bool9" value="FS process data in Boolean 9"/>
2905     <Text id="TN_PDin-Bool10" value="FS process data in Boolean 10"/>
2906     <Text id="TN_PDin-Bool11" value="FS process data in Boolean 11"/>
2907     <Text id="TN_PDin-Bool12" value="FS process data in Boolean 12"/>
2908     <Text id="TN_PDin-Bool13" value="FS process data in Boolean 13"/>
2909     <Text id="TN_PDin-Int1" value="FS process data in Int 1"/>
2910     <Text id="TN_PD_FSTrailer" value="F-Message Trailer"/>
2911     <Text id="TD_PD_FSTrailer" value="Control/Status octet and CRC"/>
2912     <Text id="TN_PD_Rev" value="Revolutions"/>
2913     <Text id="TD_PD_Rev" value="Rotational speed"/>
2914     <Text id="TN_ProcessDataOut" value="Process Data Out"/>
2915     <!-- Events -->
2916     <Text id="TN_TransmissionError_CRCSignature" value="Transmission error (CRC signature)"/>
2917     <Text id="TN_TransmissionError_Counter" value="Transmission error (Counter)"/>
2918     <Text id="TN_TransmissionError_Timeout" value="Transmission error (Timeout)"/>
2919     <Text id="TN_UnexpectedAuthenticationCode" value="Unexpected authentication code"/>
2920     <Text id="TN_UnexpectedAuthenticationPort" value="Unexpected authentication port"/>
2921     <Text id="TN_IncorrectFSP_AuthentCRC" value="Incorrect FSP_AuthentCRC"/>
2922     <Text id="TN_IncorrectFSP_ProtParCRC" value="Incorrect FSP_ProtParCRC"/>
2923     <Text id="TN_IncorrectFSP_TechParCRC" value="Incorrect FSP_TechParCRC"/>
2924     <Text id="TN_IncorrectFSP_IO_StructCRC" value="Incorrect FSP_IO_StructCRC"/>
2925     <Text id="TN_WatchdogTimeOutOfSpec" value="Watchdog time out of specification"/>
2926     <!-- Menu -->
2927     <Text id="TN_MR_Param_Standard" value="Standard (non-safety) parameter"/>
2928     <Text id="TN_MR_Param_FST" value="Fail-safe technology parameter"/>
2929     <Text id="TN_MR_Param_FSP" value="Fail-safe protocol parameter"/>
2930     <Text id="TN_SR_Param_Standard" value="Standard (non-safety) parameter"/>
2931     <Text id="TN_SR_Param_FST" value="Fail-safe technology parameter"/>
2932     <Text id="TN_SR_Param_FSP" value="Fail-safe protocol parameter"/>
2933     <Text id="TN_StandardProcessData" value="Standard (non-safety) process data in"/>
2934     <Text id="TN_FS_ProcessData" value="Fail-safe process data in"/>
2935     <!-- for device test -->
2936     <Text id="TN_Event1" value="Event 1"/>
2937     <Text id="TN_Event2" value="Event 2"/>
2938     </PrimaryLanguage>
2939 </ExternalTextCollection>
2940 <Stamp crc="1946410459">
2941   <Checker name="IODD-Checker V1.1.3" version="V1.1.3.0"/>
2942 </Stamp>
2943 </IODevice>
2944
2945

```

2946  
2947  
2948  
2949

## **Annex F** (normative, non-safety related)

### **Device Tool Interface (DTI) for IO-Link**

2950

#### **F.1 Purpose of DTI**

2952 For integration of IO-Link Devices in a Master Tool, IODD files shall be used provided by the  
2953 Device manufacturer. Syntax and semantics of these files are standardized (see [9]) such that  
2954 the Devices can be integrated independently from the vendor/manufacturer.

2955 However, some applications/standards such as functional safety require a so-called  
2956 Dedicated Tool for e.g. parameter setting and validation, at least as a complement to the  
2957 IODD method. This Dedicated Tool shall communicate with its Device and is responsible for  
2958 the data integrity according to [3]. In the following, the term "Device Tool" is used within this  
2959 document. Without any additional standardized technology, such an IO-Link system would  
2960 force the user

- 2961 • to know which Device Tool is required for a particular Device,
- 2962 • to enter the communication parameters of the Device both in the Master Tool and in the  
2963 Device Tool and to keep the parameters consistent,
- 2964 • to store consistent configuration and parameterization data from both the Master Tool and  
2965 the Device Tool at one single place to archive project data.

2966 In addition, it would face the Device manufacturer

- 2967 • with the necessity to implement the communication functionality for each supported field  
2968 bus system, and
- 2969 • with the problem of nested communication whenever the target Device is located in a  
2970 different network and only a proprietary gateway interconnects the networks..

2971 A solution is the Device Tool Interface (DTI) technology specified herein after. It can be used  
2972 for safety (FS-Master/FS-Device) as well as for non-safety (Master/Device) IO-Link devices.

#### **F.2 Base model**

2974 The Device Tool Interface (DTI) comprises three main parts according to Figure 59:

- 2975 • An invocation interface between Master Tool and Device Tool
- 2976 • A backward interface between Master Tool and Device Tool ("Backchannel")
- 2977 • A communication interface between Device Tool and a Communication Server

2978 The combination of these three parts leads to the following user interaction.

2979 A Master Tool is supposed to be already installed on a PC running Microsoft Windows  
2980 operating system. A Device is configured with the help of the corresponding IODD file of the  
2981 Device manufacturer. This step includes assignment of port addresses and adjustment of the  
2982 Device parameters defined in the IODD.

2983 Now, the DTI standard allows for associating Device Tool identification with IO-Link Device  
2984 identification. The Master Tool uses DTI specific mechanisms to find the Device Tool for a  
2985 given Device. It provides for example in the context menu of a selected Device an entry that  
2986 can be used to invoke the Device Tool. As soon as the Device Tool is active, it identifies the  
2987 selected Device. The user can instantly establish a communication with the Device without  
2988 entering address information and alike and assign parameter values. Assigned values can be  
2989 returned to the Master Tool using the Backchannel.

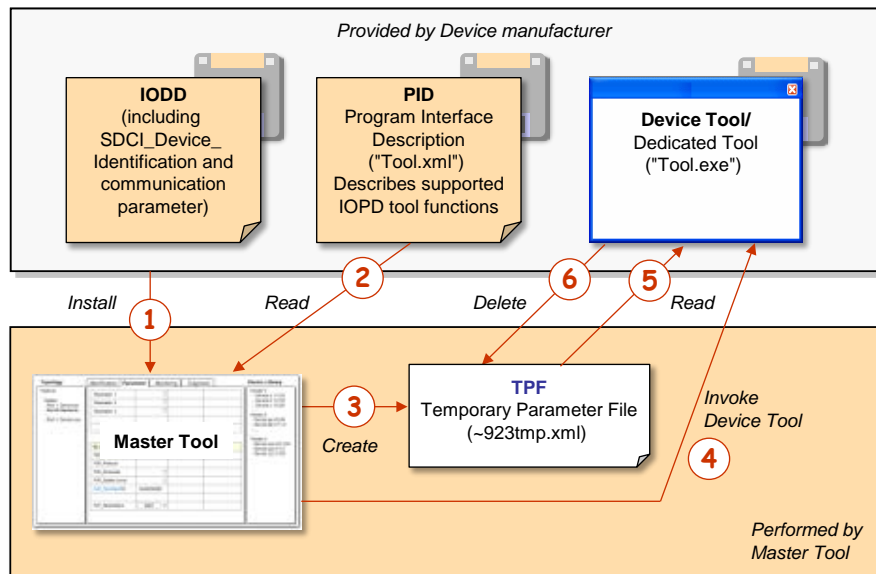
2990 For the communication server part, DTI relies on technology specified in [17]. DTI comprises  
2991 mechanisms to store and maintain Device data objects (project data).

## 2992 F.3 Invocation interface

### 2993 F.3.1 Overview

2994 The invocation interface is used to transfer information from the representation of the Device  
 2995 in the Master Tool to the Device Tool. In order to achieve a high flexibility and to be able to  
 2996 identify different versions of the interface, both the description of the Device Tool capabilities  
 2997 and the invocation parameters are stored in XML based documents. For the assignment from  
 2998 Master Tool to Device Tool the system registry of the Microsoft Windows operating system is  
 2999 used.

3000 Figure F.1 shows the principle of the DTI invocation interface part.



3001

3002

**Figure F.1 – Principle of DTI invocation interface**

3003 Precondition for the mechanism is the availability of the Master Tool and all used Device  
 3004 Tools on one and the same PC.

3005 For the Tool invocation the following steps are required:

- 3006 (1) As usual, the IODD file is imported into the Master Tool. The Device is configured and  
 3007 communication settings are made. With the help of (SDCI) Device Identification data the  
 3008 Master Tool is able to find the installed Device Tool and the directory path to the "Program  
 3009 Interface Description" (PID) file. Annex F.3.2 describes this procedure in detail.
- 3010 (2) The Master Tool reads the content of the PID file. This file contains information about the  
 3011 interface version and the supported Tool functions. The structure of the PID file is  
 3012 described in Annex F.3.3.
- 3013 (3) Before launching the Device Tool, the Master Tool creates a new "Temporary Parameter  
 3014 File" (TPF) that contains all invocation parameters. See F.3.4 for details.
- 3015 (4) The Master Tool launches the Device Tool and passes the name of the TPF. See F.3.4.
- 3016 (5) The Device Tool reads and interprets the content of the TPF file.
- 3017 (6) The Device Tool deletes the TPF file after processing. See F.3.4.

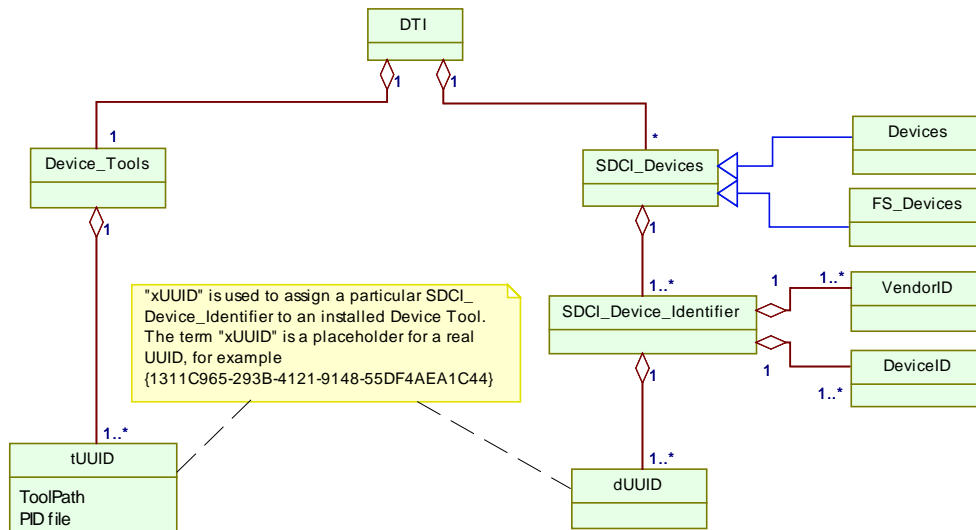
### 3018 F.3.2 Detection of Device Tool

#### 3019 F.3.2.1 Registry structure

3020 In order for DTI to identify the type of an IO-Link Device, a specific, unique, and unambiguous  
 3021 "SDCI\_Device\_Identifier" is used in the PC system registry and within the Temporary Para-  
 3022 meter File (TPF).



3023 Figure F.2 shows the structure of the DTI part of the registry. Each class in the diagram  
 3024 represents a registry key. Each attribute in the diagram represents a string value of the  
 3025 registry key. The semantics of the attributes is defined in Table F.1 and Table F.2.



3026

3027

**Figure F.2 – Structure of the registry**

3028 Since for an SDCI\_Device\_Identifier an unlimited number of "UUID" elements can be inserted,  
 3029 the Master Tool shall handle all Tools of these "UUID" elements.

3030 **F.3.2.2 Device Tool specific registry entries**

3031 Each version of a Device Tool is represented by one UUID in the system registry.

3032 The installation program of a Device Tool (32 bit or 64 bit) shall insert this UUID as key under  
 3033 its appropriate registry path:

3034 [HKEY\\_LOCAL\\_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\IO-Link Community\DTI\Device\\_Tools](#) or

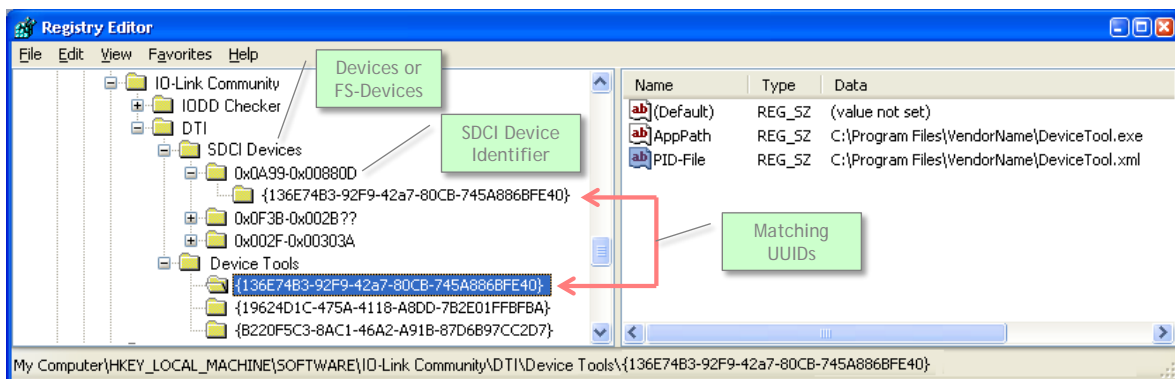
3035 [HKEY\\_LOCAL\\_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Wow6432Node\IO-Link Community\DTI\Device\\_Tools](#)

3036 A Master Tool shall check both registry paths.

3037 Within this key, two attributes with string values shall be used:

- 3038 • "PIDfile", containing the absolute path and name of the installed PID file, and
- 3039 • "ToolPath", containing the absolute path and name of the executable Device Tool file  
 3040 including its file extension (.exe)

3041 Figure F.3 illustrates registry entries for SDCI Devices and Device Tools.



3042

3043

**Figure F.3 – Example of a DTI registry**

3044 If different versions of a Device Tool for the same Device type exist (same  
3045 SDCI\_Device\_Identifier), each version requires a separate UUID in the registry. In the PID  
3046 files of the Device Tools, different version information shall be provided in the attribute  
3047 "ToolDescription" of the element "ToolDescription" (see Table F.1). This leads to multiple  
3048 items in the context menu of the Master Tool, differing in the description text.

3049 NOTE The advantage of a separate entry of the "ToolPath" keyword is a simpler installation procedure for the  
3050 Device Tool. It can install the PID file without a need to modify this file.

3051 The installation program of a Device Tool shall also insert each UUID as key under the  
3052 registry path

3053 [HKEY\\_LOCAL\\_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\IO-Link Community\DTI\SDCI Devices\<SDCI Device  
3054 Identifier>](#)

3055 IO-Link Devices are identified unambiguously via the following items:

- 3056 • VendorID (assigned by IO-Link Community)
- 3057 • DeviceID (assigned by Device/FS-Device manufacturer)

3058 This information is part of the IO-Link Device Description (IODD), which allows the Master  
3059 Tool to work with the Device (data, parameter) without establishing an online connection to  
3060 the Device. The IDs can be found at the following locations within an IODD:

3061 (1) //ISO15745Profile/ProfileBody/DeviceIdentity/@vendorId

3062 (2) //ISO15745Profile/ProfileBody/DeviceIdentity/@deviceId

3063 With the help of the registry, the Master Tool is able to read the required information about  
3064 the Device Tool (in case of safety: Dedicated Tool). Location and structure for the entries  
3065 shall be commonly agreed upon.

3066 All entries shall be provided by the Device Tool under the following registry path:

3067 [HKEY\\_LOCAL\\_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\IO-Link Community\DTI\SDCI Devices](#)

3068 Within this path one or more keys can be inserted with the following field structure:

3069 0xvvvv-0xddddd

3070 The meaning of the fields is:

3071 vvvv: Four-character VendorID in hexadecimal coding

3072 ddddd: Six-character DeviceID in hexadecimal coding.

3073 The question mark character "?" can be used in the DeviceID as wildcard to replace one  
3074 single character. The number of question marks is only limited by the size of the field. If  
3075 wildcards are used, the Device Tool is responsible for the check whether it supports the  
3076 selected object.

3077 The assignment to the Tool is made by a string value within this key. The UUID shall be used  
3078 as name for the string value. The number of string values is not limited, which in turn means  
3079 an unlimited number of Tools that can be assigned to the same Device.

3080 Examples for valid keys (see Figure F.3):

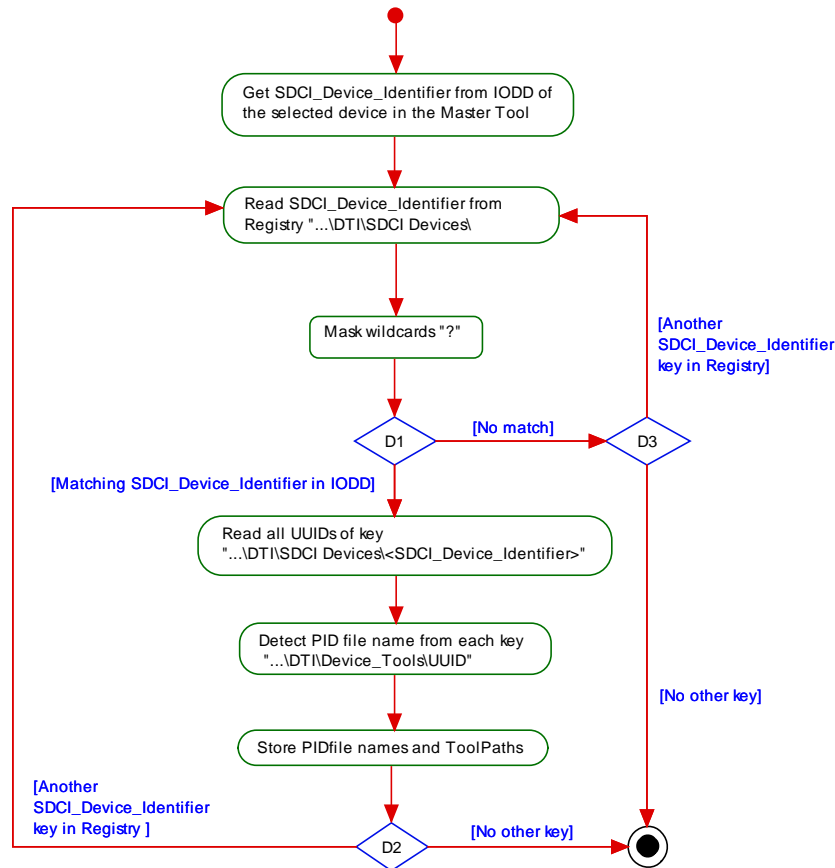
3081 0x0A99-0x00880D The Tool can be launched in the context of a Device with a DeviceID  
3082 0x00880D from the vendor with the VendorID 0x0A99.

3083 0x0F3B-0x002B?? The Tool can be started in the context of Devices with a DeviceID in the  
3084 range of 0x002B00 to 0x002BFF from the vendor with the VendorID  
3085 0x0F3B.

### 3086 F.3.2.3 Processing of the Registry Data

3087 The installation program of the Device Tool is responsible to insert the keys in the system  
3088 registry as defined in Annex F.3.2.2.

3089 Figure F.4 shows an activity diagram illustrating the detection of a Device Tool in the registry  
3090 via "SDCI\_Device\_Identifier".



3091

3092

**Figure F.4 – Detection of a Device Tool in registry**

3093 NOTE All registry keys in Figure F.4 are relative to the path HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\IO-Link  
3094 Community

3095 In a first step, the Master Tool gets the SDCI Device Identifier from the IODD of the selected  
3096 object in the Master Tool. Then all sub keys in the system registry path ...DTI\SDCI Devices  
3097 shall be compared with this SDCI Device Identifier. If a sub key matches (excepting  
3098 wildcards), the UUID sub key of this key is used to find the PID file name in the registry path  
3099 DTI\Device Tools\<UUID>. Since the same PID file name can be found in different locations in  
3100 the registry, the context menu of the Master Tool shall only show the Device Tools with  
3101 different PID file names. As a last step, the information in the PID file is used to build the  
3102 menu items of the Master Tool (Figure F.5).

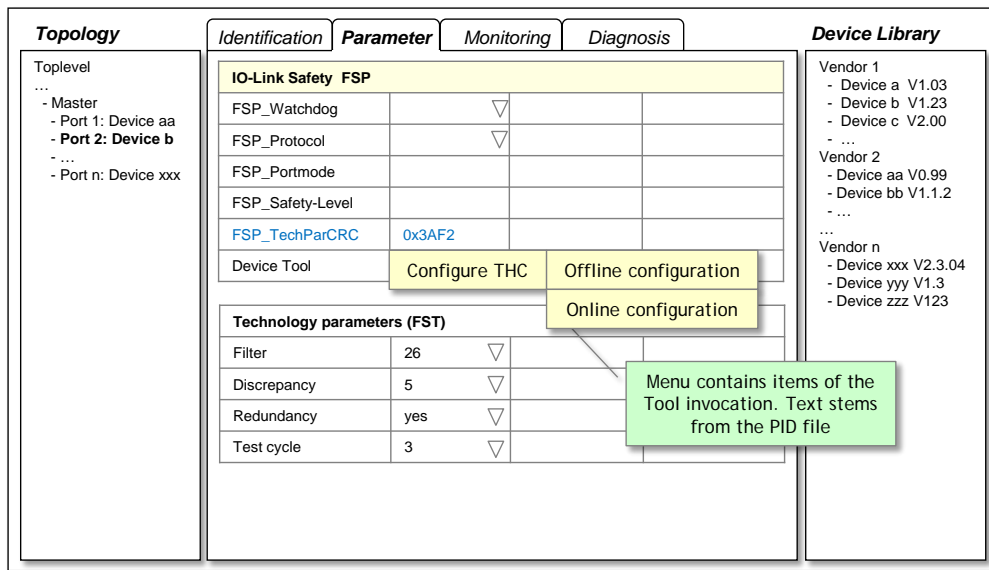
## 3103 F.3.3 Program Interface Description – PID

### 3104 F.3.3.1 General

3105 The Program Interface Description (PID) file describes the properties of the Device Tool and  
3106 contains data which are required by the Master Tool to build menu items in its graphical user  
3107 interface (GUI). The PID file is an XML document. The corresponding XML schema is defined  
3108 in F.9.2. UTF-8 shall be used for character encoding.

3109 This PID file shall be provided by the manufacturer of a Device/Device Tool and installed by  
3110 the installation program associated with the Device Tool. This installation program shall also  
3111 insert the name and installation path in the system registry (see F.3.2).

3112 The PID file allows the Master Tool to extend its GUI menu structure by the name of the  
 3113 Device Tool such that the user is able to launch the Device Tool for example from the context  
 3114 menu of a selected Device as illustrated exemplary in Figure F.5.



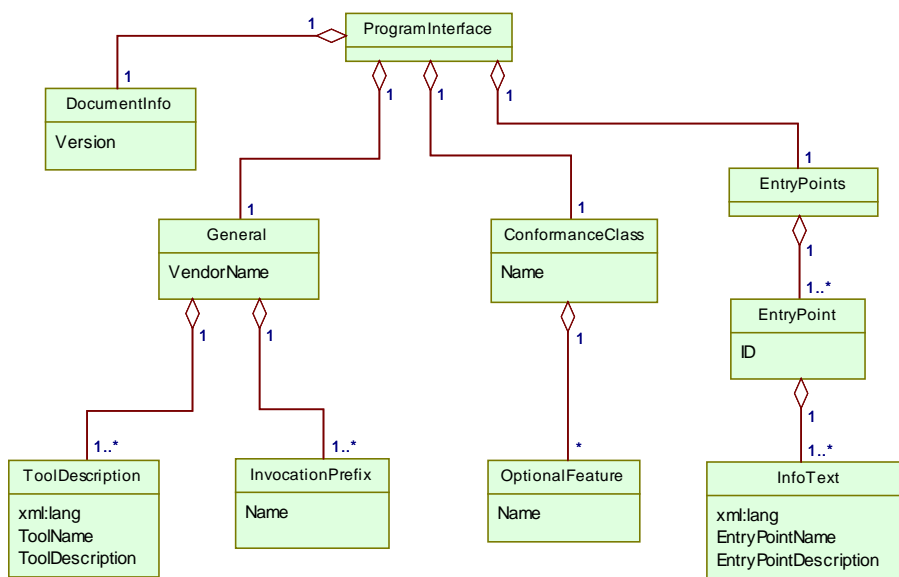
3115

3116

**Figure F.5 – Menu for Device Tool invocation**

3117 **F.3.3.2 Structure of the PID file**

3118 The PID file is an XML based document and structured as described in Figure F.6.



3119

3120

**Figure F.6 – Structure of the PID file**

3121 The corresponding XML schema can be found in F.9.2. Namespace URI for this file is  
 3122 "http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2016/06/PID".

3123 The elements of Figure F.6 are specified in Table F.1. The column "SV" indicates the schema  
 3124 version a particular attribute has been introduced.

3125

Table F.1 – Description of PID file elements

Element	Attribute	Type	M/O	SV	Description
ProgramInterface	–	–	–	1.0	Root element
DocumentInfo	Version	xsd:string	M	1.0	Contains the schema version of PID interface definition. Also determines the newest TPF version supported by this tool.  The value shall comply with the following regular expression: <code>\d+(\.\d+)*</code> In this version, the string "1.1" shall be used.
General	VendorName	xsd:string	M	1.0	Contains the name of the Device vendor
ToolDescription	xml:lang	xsd:language	M	1.0	Defines the language of the text. The "2-letter coding" or the "3-letter coding" as defined in ISO 639 shall be used.
	ToolName	xsd:string	M	1.0	Describes the function of the Device Tool. This text shall be used to extend the GUI menu items of the Master Tool. Default element in English language shall always be present.
	ToolDescription	xsd:string	O	1.0	Contains a short description of the Device Tool.
Invocation Prefix	–	–	–	1.0	With this element, the command line arguments of the called Device Tool can be modified. If a Device Tool is able to interpret different command line arguments, usually a prefix is used to define the semantic of an argument.  If an InvocationPrefix is present in the PID file, the Master Tool shall insert a blank character as delimiter between the InvocationPrefix string and the file name of the TPF.  To interpret the command line argument as a file name for a DTI call, a Device Tool shall be launched as follows: <i>DeviceTool.exe -i "c:\tmp\TPF01.xml"</i> In this case, the prefix "-i" shall be entered in the PID file.
	Name	xsd:string	O	1.0	Defines which command line prefix is used when the tool is launched. If this attribute is not present, only the file name of the TPF is used as command line argument.  NOTE Since the datatype "string" is used, blank characters (ASCII 32 dec) are allowed. XML Entities are allowed and shall be converted by the Master Tool.
ConformanceClass	Name	xsd:string	M	1.0	Contains the name of the conformance class (F.8.1). One of the following values is allowed: "C1", "C2", or "C3"
OptionalFeature	Name	xsd:string	M	1.0	Name of the implemented feature of the Master Tool as described in Table F.8.
EntryPoints	–	–	–	1.0	This optional element shall be used, if a Device Tool has more than one entry point.
EntryPoint	ID	xsd:string	M	1.0	This element represents an entry point of the Device Tool. Entry points are used to generate additional sub menu items in the "ToolDescription" context menu of the Master Tool. Using entry

Element	Attribute	Type	M/O	SV	Description
					points a Device Tool can provide direct access to Tool specific views or functions. The attribute "ID" identifies an Entry-Point. It shall be unique within a PID file.
InfoText	–	–	–	1.0	The element "InfoText" is used to define language dependent text information for description of the entry point. This information can be used to extend the GUI menu items of the Master Tool. An InfoText element in English language shall always be present here.
	xml:lang	xsd:string	M	1.0	Defines the language of the text. The "2-letter coding" or the "3-letter coding" as defined in ISO 639 shall be used.
	EntryPointName	xsd:string	M	1.0	Describes the function of the entry point. This text shall be used to extend the GUI menu items of the Master Tool.
	EntryPointDescription	xsd:string	O	1.0	Contains a short description of the entry point.

3126

### 3127 F.3.3.3 Example PID file

3128 The following XML code shows an example content of a PID file with EntryPoints.

```

3129 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
3130 <ProgramInterface xmlns="http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/PID" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
3131 xmlns:prim="http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/Primitives" xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/PID
3132 iosafe_pid_schema_20170225.xsd">
3133   <DocumentInfo version="V1.0"/>
3134   <General vendorName="IO-LinkCompany">
3135     <ToolDescription name="Configure THC" description="IO-Link-16 Safety Device" lang="en"/>
3136     <ToolDescription name="Konfiguriere THC" description="IO-Link-16 Safety Device" lang="de"/>
3137     <InvocationPrefix name=""/>
3138   </General>
3139   <EntryPoints>
3140     <EntryPoint id="1">
3141       <InfoText name="Offline Configuration" description="Offline Configuration" lang="en"/>
3142       <InfoText name="Offline Konfiguration" description="Offline Konfiguration" lang="de"/>
3143     </EntryPoint>
3144     <EntryPoint id="2">
3145       <InfoText name="Online Configuration" description="Online Configuration" lang="en"/>
3146       <InfoText name="Online Konfiguration" description="Online Konfiguration" lang="de"/>
3147     </EntryPoint>
3148   </EntryPoints>
3149   <ConformanceClass name="C3"/>
3150 </ProgramInterface>

```

## 3151 F.3.4 Temporary Parameter File – TPF

### 3152 F.3.4.1 General

3153 Due to the large number of parameters to be transferred from the Master Tool to the Device  
3154 Tool, a parameter transfer by command line arguments is not a good solution. The necessary  
3155 syntax would become too complex to cover all aspects.

3156 Instead, all required parameters are included into an XML file, called Temporary Parameter  
3157 File (TPF) by the Master Tool and thus, the name of the XML file is passed as the only  
3158 command line argument. If the Device Tool requires a command line switch, this information  
3159 can be extracted from the PID file. See "InvocationPrefix" in Table F.1 for details.

3160 The XML schema for the TPF is defined in F.9.3. For character encoding, UTF-8 shall be  
3161 used. The Master Tool shall use the newest TPF schema version supported by both the  
3162 Master Tool and the Device Tool.

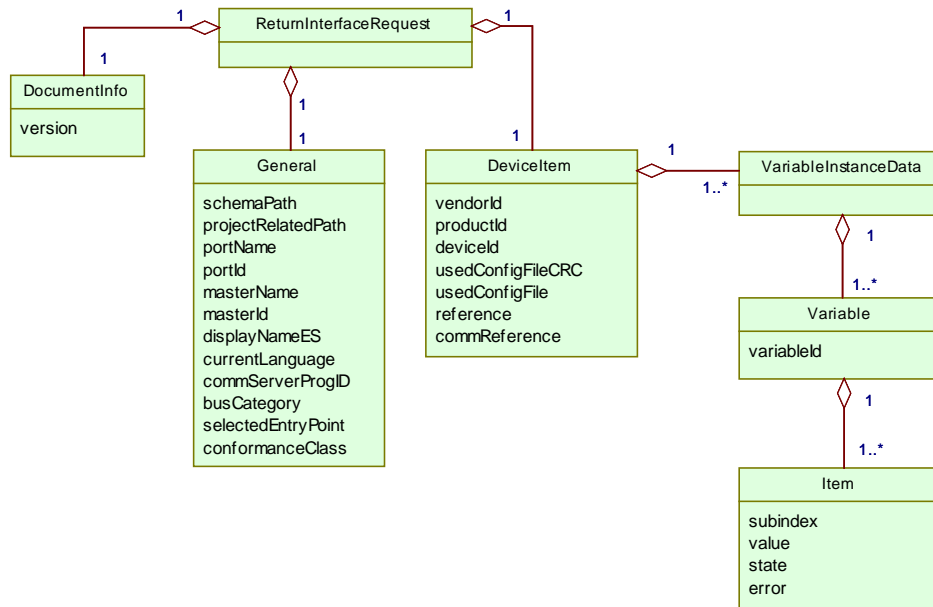
3163 After the TPF is interpreted, the Device Tool shall delete the TPF file.

3164 **F.3.4.2 Structure of a TPF**

3165 The structure of the TPF is defined by the XML schema shown in F.9.3. This schema is built  
 3166 in a generic manner, which means, a new parameter does not require the schema itself to be  
 3167 updated. Thus, new parameters can be introduced without a new definition of the TPF struc-  
 3168 ture.

3169 Namespace URI for this file is "http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/TPF".

3170 Figure F.7 shows the structure of a TPF.



3171

3172 **Figure F.7 – Structure of a TPF**

3173 The elements of Figure F.7 are specified in Table F.2. The column "SV" indicates the schema  
 3174 version a particular attribute has been introduced.

3175 **Table F.2 – Elements of a TPF**

Element	Attribute	Type	M/O	SV	Description
InvocationInterface	–	–	M	1.0	Root element
DocumentInfo	Version	xsd:string	M	1.0	Contains the schema version of the TPF interface definition. The value shall comply with the following regular expression: \\d+(\\.\\d+)* One of the following values is allowed: "1.0" Used for TPF based on version 1.0 schema files
General	schemaPath	xsd:string	M	1.0	This attribute defines the path where the schema files for FDT communication schemas and TPF/PID file are stored. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This schema files shall be installed on this path by the Master Tool</li> <li>The path does not change during runtime of the Master Tool</li> <li>The path can be used from a Device Tool to initialize the XML</li> </ul>

Element	Attribute	Type	M/O	SV	Description
					parser. NOTE Even if no schema validation is used, some XML parsers need the location of the schema files for initialization. In this case, a Device Tool does not need to install an own set of schema files – it should use the schema files in the path defined by this attribute.
	projectRelatedPath	xsd:string	M	1.0	The attribute "ProjectRelatedPath" contains information about a directory which is assigned to the project context of the Master Tool. A Device Tool should use this path for storage of its Device data. The format and structure of this data is defined by the Device Tool itself. Within this directory, additional subdirectories can be created. The Master Tool is responsible to keep all data in the directory tree in its project context. That means, if the project is copied or archived, also this data shall be copied or archived. The attribute "ProjectRelatedPath" contains a unique path (directory) for each combination of Master project and DTI Device Tool. For example, different directories are used for the same tool, if two Master Tool projects are used. The file name in "ProjectRelatedPath" shall consist of the drive letter and an absolute path expression. Alternatively the UNC notation can be used instead of the drive letter.
	portName	xsd:string	M	1.0	Name of used FS-Master port
	portId	xsd:string	M	1.0	ID of used FS-Master port 1 to n
	masterName	xsd:string	M	1.0	User defined name of FS-Master
	displayNameES	xsd:string	M	1.0	Display name of the Master Tool in the language specified in attribute "currentLanguage". The Device Tool can use this name in error messages or user dialogs to provide more understandable texts.
	currentLanguage	xsd:string	M	1.0	Defines which language shall be used by the Device Tool for TPF. The "2-letter coding" or the "3-letter coding" as defined in ISO 639 can be used. If a Device Tool does not support the selected language, the tool shall use its default language.
	commServerProgID	xsd:string	O	1.0	This attribute contains the ProgID of the Communication Server provided by the Master Tool manufacturer. It allows the Device Tool to use the Communication Server functionality. See F.5.6 for details. If this attribute is not provided, the Master Tool does not support a Communication Server.
	busCategory	xsd:string	M	1.1	This attribute is used to specify the used communication protocol. It also can be used to find a corresponding Communication Server.



Element	Attribute	Type	M/O	SV	Description
					Default value is "2C4CD8B8-D509-4ECB-94A7-019F12569C8B"
	selectedEntryPoint	xsd:string	O	1.0	<p>Defines, which entry point of the Device Tool was selected in the Master Tool when the Device Tool was launched. This attribute shall contain only values defined in the attribute "ID" of any element "EntryPoint" of the corresponding PID file.</p> <p>This attribute allows the Device Tool to show an entry point specific GUI when it was launched.</p> <p>If the PID file does not contain any EntryPoint elements, this attribute shall not be used in the TPF.</p>
	conformanceClass	xsd:string	M	1.0	Contains the name of the conformance class of the Master Tool. One of the following values is allowed: "C2" or "C3". See Table F.7.
DeviceItem	vendorId	xsd:string	M	1.0	See Table B.1 in [1]
	productId	xsd:string	M	1.0	See Table B.8 in [1]
	deviceId	xsd:string	M	1.0	See Table B.1 in [1]
	usedConfigFileCRC	xsd:string	M	1.0	IODD stamp
	usedConfigFile	xsd:string	M	1.0	<p>The keyword usedConfigFile contains the file name of the used description file (e.g. IODD). The file name shall consist of the drive letter, an absolute path expression and the file extension.</p> <p>Alternatively the UNC notation can be used instead of the drive letter.</p> <p>The Device Tool It is not allowed to modify the content of the description file.</p>
	reference	xsd:string	M	1.0	Used to identify FS-Device within engineering project
	commReference	xsd:string	M	1.0	<p>This attribute is used with the Communication Server (CS) to address a Device instance unambiguously within the PC.</p> <p>The unique nature of this attribute shall be ensured by the Master Tool. The structure of the attribute is only defined by the Master Tool. It is not allowed to interpret the syntax of this keyword in the Device Tool.</p> <p>LineFeed characters (ASCII 10 dec) are not allowed in the string.</p> <p>This attribute shall be provided for all Device instances of a TPF, if the Device Tool wants to use the CS interface (Conformance Class 3 (C3)) and the commReference is different from the DeviceReference.</p>
VariableInstanceData	–	–	M	1.0	Element "VariableInstanceData" is a container for "Variable" elements (= parameter).
Variable	variableId	xsd:string	M	1.0	Contains the parameter ID
Item	subindex	xsd:string	M	1.0	See [1]
	value	xsd:string	M	1.0	Contains the parameter value. In absence of a parameter-specific

Element	Attribute	Type	M/O	SV	Description
					rule for the representation of the value: Numerical values shall use the decimal coding without left-hand zeros. Negative values shall have a hyphen (ASCII 45 dec) prefix. Separator for floating point values is a dot (ASCII 46 dec). Other separators are not permitted.
	state	xsd:string	M	1.0	Contains parameter status
	error	xsd:string	M	1.0	Contains parameter error

3176

3177 **F.3.4.3 Example of a TPF**

3178 The following XML code shows the content of an exemplary TPF file.

```

3179 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
3180 <InvocationInterface xmlns="http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/TPF" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-
3181 instance" xmlns:prim="http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/Primitives" xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.io-
3182 link.com/DTI/2017/02/TPF IOsafe_TPF_Schema_20170225.xsd">
3183   <General currentLanguage="en" commServerProgID="DTI.MyCommunicationServer"
3184   projectRelatedPath="\ServerName\ShareName\Projects" masterId="444444" masterName="CPU-1" portId="0" portName="P1-
3185   4" schemaPath="d:\dti\schema" displayNameEs="MyMTName" busCategory="IOLink" selectedEntryPoint="1"
3186   conformanceClass="C3"/>
3187   <DeviceItem reference="Project1/Network2/Device3/1897212" commReference="Controller3/Gateway7/Unit4" vendorId="335"
3188   deviceId="6553616" productId="SafetyDeviceVariant" usedConfigFile="d:\IODDfiles\IO-Link-SafetyDevice-20170225-
3189   IODD1.1.xml" usedConfigFileCRC="1946410459">
3190     <VariableInstanceData>
3191       <Variable variableId="V_DirectParameters_1">
3192         <Item subindex="0" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3193         <Item subindex="1" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3194         <Item subindex="2" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3195         <Item subindex="3" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3196         <Item subindex="4" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3197         <Item subindex="5" state="initial" error="0" value="17"/>
3198         <Item subindex="6" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3199         <Item subindex="7" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3200         <Item subindex="8" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3201         <Item subindex="9" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3202         <Item subindex="10" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3203         <Item subindex="11" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3204         <Item subindex="12" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3205         <Item subindex="13" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3206         <Item subindex="14" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3207         <Item subindex="15" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3208       </Variable>
3209       <Variable variableId="V_DeviceAccessLocks">
3210         <Item subindex="1" state="initial" error="0" value="false"/>
3211         <Item subindex="2" state="initial" error="0" value="false"/>
3212       </Variable>
3213       <Variable variableId="V_VendorName">
3214         <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="IO-Link Community"/>
3215       </Variable>
3216       <Variable variableId="V_VendorText">
3217         <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="http://www.io-link.com"/>
3218       </Variable>
3219       <Variable variableId="V_ProductName">
3220         <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="SafetyDevice"/>
3221       </Variable>
3222       <Variable variableId="V_ProductID">
3223         <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="SafetyDeviceVariant"/>
3224       </Variable>
3225       <Variable variableId="V_ProductText">
3226         <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="Sample IO-Link Safety"/>
3227       </Variable>
3228       <Variable variableId="V_SerialNumber">
3229         <Item subindex="0" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3230       </Variable>
3231       <Variable variableId="V_HardwareRevision">
3232         <Item subindex="0" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3233       </Variable>
3234       <Variable variableId="V_FirmwareRevision">
3235         <Item subindex="0" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>

```

```

3236     </Variable>
3237     <Variable variableId="V_ApplicationSpecificTag">
3238       <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="IO-Link Safety"/>
3239     </Variable>
3240     <Variable variableId="V_ErrorCount">
3241       <Item subindex="0" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3242     </Variable>
3243     <Variable variableId="V_DeviceStatus">
3244       <Item subindex="0" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3245     </Variable>
3246     <Variable variableId="V_DetailedDeviceStatus">
3247       <Item subindex="1" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3248       <Item subindex="2" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3249       <Item subindex="3" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3250       <Item subindex="4" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3251       <Item subindex="5" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3252       <Item subindex="6" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3253       <Item subindex="7" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3254       <Item subindex="8" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3255     </Variable>
3256     <Variable variableId="V_ProcessDataInput">
3257       <Item subindex="1" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3258       <Item subindex="2" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3259       <Item subindex="3" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3260       <Item subindex="4" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3261       <Item subindex="5" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3262       <Item subindex="6" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3263       <Item subindex="7" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3264       <Item subindex="8" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3265       <Item subindex="9" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3266       <Item subindex="10" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3267       <Item subindex="11" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3268       <Item subindex="12" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3269       <Item subindex="13" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3270       <Item subindex="14" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3271       <Item subindex="127" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3272       <Item subindex="128" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3273     </Variable>
3274     <Variable variableId="V_NonSafetyParameter">
3275       <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3276     </Variable>
3277     <Variable variableId="V_FST_DiscrepancyTime">
3278       <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3279     </Variable>
3280     <Variable variableId="V_FST_Filter">
3281       <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3282     </Variable>
3283     <Variable variableId="V_FSP_Authenticity">
3284       <Item subindex="1" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3285       <Item subindex="2" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3286       <Item subindex="3" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3287       <Item subindex="4" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3288     </Variable>
3289     <Variable variableId="V_FSP_Protocol">
3290       <Item subindex="1" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3291       <Item subindex="2" state="initial" error="0" value="1"/>
3292       <Item subindex="3" state="initial" error="0" value="100"/>
3293       <Item subindex="4" state="initial" error="0" value="444"/>
3294       <Item subindex="5" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3295       <Item subindex="6" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3296     </Variable>
3297     <Variable variableId="V_FSP_ParamDescCRC">
3298       <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="444"/>
3299     </Variable>
3300   </VariableInstanceData>
3301 </DeviceItem>
3302 </InvocationInterface>

```

### 3303 F.3.5 Temporary Backchannel File – TBF

#### 3304 F.3.5.1 General

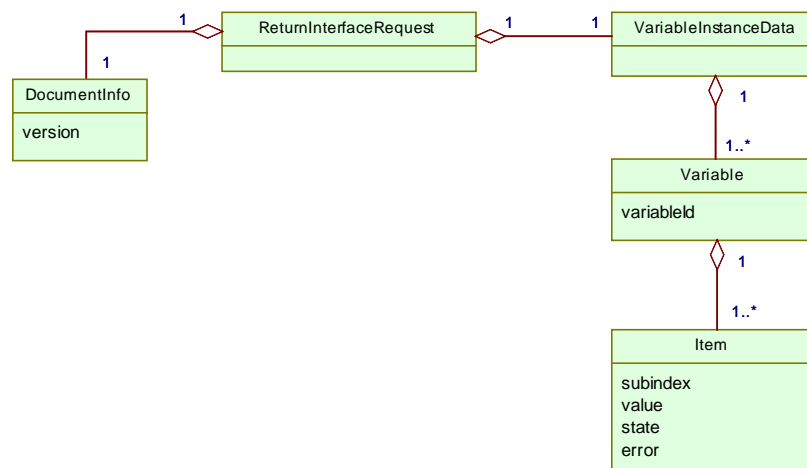
3305 The TBF should be transferred by a new transaction of the communication server. This  
3306 transaction is initiated by the Device Tool and can be performed automatically or upon user  
3307 request. Transaction acknowledgements (TAF) should be implemented indicating reception of  
3308 the instance values by the Master Tool or indicating a transaction fault (see F.3.6).

3309 **F.3.5.2 Structure of the TBF**

3310 The structure of the TBF is defined by the XML schema shown in F.9.4. This schema is built  
 3311 in a generic manner, which means, a new parameter does not require the schema itself to be  
 3312 updated. Thus, new parameters can be introduced without a new definition of the TBF  
 3313 structure.

3314 Namespace URI for this file is "http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/TBF".

3315 Figure F.8 shows the structure of the TBF.



3316

3317

**Figure F.8 – Structure of the TBF**

3318 The elements of Figure F.8 are specified in Table F.3. The column "SV" indicates the schema  
 3319 version a particular attribute has been introduced.

3320

**Table F.3 – Elements of the TBF**

Element	Attribute	Type	M/O	SV	Description
ReturnInterfaceRequest	–	–	M	1.0	Root element
DocumentInfo	version	xsd:string	M	1.0	Contains the schema version of the TBF interface definition. The value shall comply with the following regular expression: \ <code>\d+(\.\d+)*</code> One of the following values is allowed: "1.0" Used for TBF based on version 1.0 schema files
VariableInstanceData	–	–	M	1.0	The element "VariableInstanceData" is a container for "Variable" elements (= parameter).
Variable	variableId	xsd:string	M	1.0	Contains the parameter ID
Item	subindex	xsd:string	M	1.0	See [1]
	value	xsd:string	M	1.0	Contains the parameter value. In absence of a parameter-specific rule for the representation of the value: Numerical values shall use the decimal coding without left-hand zeros. Negative values shall have a hyphen (ASCII 45 dec) prefix. Separator for floating point values is a dot (ASCII 46 dec). Other separators are not permitted.
	state	xsd:string	M	1.0	Contains parameter status

Element	Attribute	Type	M/O	SV	Description
	error	xsd:string	M	1.0	Contains parameter error

3321

3322 **F.3.5.3 Example of a TBF**

3323 The following XML code shows the content of an exemplary TBF file.

```

3324 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
3325 <ReturnInterfaceRequest xmlns="http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/TBF" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-
3326 instance" xmlns:prim="http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/Primitives" xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.io-
3327 link.com/DTI/2017/02/TBF IOsafe_TBF_Schema_20170225.xsd">
3328   <VariableInstanceData>
3329     <Variable variableId="V_DeviceAccessLocks">
3330       <Item subindex="1" state="initial" error="0" value="false"/>
3331       <Item subindex="2" state="initial" error="0" value="false"/>
3332     </Variable>
3333     <Variable variableId="V_ApplicationSpecificTag">
3334       <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="IO-Link Safety"/>
3335     </Variable>
3336     <Variable variableId="V_NonSafetyParameter">
3337       <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3338     </Variable>
3339     <Variable variableId="V_FST_DiscrepancyTime">
3340       <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3341     </Variable>
3342     <Variable variableId="V_FST_Filter">
3343       <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3344     </Variable>
3345     <Variable variableId="V_FSP_Authenticity">
3346       <Item subindex="1" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3347       <Item subindex="2" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3348       <Item subindex="3" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3349       <Item subindex="4" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3350     </Variable>
3351     <Variable variableId="V_FSP_Protocol">
3352       <Item subindex="1" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3353       <Item subindex="2" state="initial" error="0" value="1"/>
3354       <Item subindex="3" state="initial" error="0" value="100"/>
3355       <Item subindex="4" state="initial" error="0" value="444"/>
3356       <Item subindex="5" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3357       <Item subindex="6" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3358     </Variable>
3359     <Variable variableId="V_FSP_ParamDescCRC">
3360       <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="444"/>
3361     </Variable>
3362   </VariableInstanceData>
3363 </ReturnInterfaceRequest>
3364

```

3365 **F.3.6 Temporary Acknowledgment File – TAF**3366 **F.3.6.1 General**

3367 Transaction acknowledgements should be implemented indicating reception of the instance  
3368 values by the Master Tool or indicating a transaction fault. The same mechanism is used as  
3369 with the TBF (see F.3.5).

3370 **F.3.6.2 Structure of the TAF**

3371 The structure of the TAF corresponds to the TBF structure in F.3.5.2. However, the root name  
3372 has changed to "ReturnInterfaceResponse".

3373 **F.3.6.3 Example of a TAF**

3374 The following XML code shows the content of an exemplary TAF file.

```

3375 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
3376 <ReturnInterfaceResponse xmlns="http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/TBF" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-
3377 instance" xmlns:prim="http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/Primitives" xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.io-
3378 link.com/DTI/2017/02/TBF IOsafe_TBF_Schema_20170225.xsd">
3379   <Response value="true"/>
3380 </ReturnInterfaceResponse>

```

3381 **F.3.7 Invocation behavior**3382 **F.3.7.1 Conventions on Device Tool invocation**

3383 Since the directory path of the TPF can contain "blank" characters, the Device Tool shall use  
 3384 the double quote character (") at the beginning and the end of the string when the ".exe" file is  
 3385 invoked.

3386 It is not required for the invoking Master Tool to monitor the status of the launched Device  
 3387 Tools. Even in case an instance of a Device Tool is already running, the Master Tool will  
 3388 generate a new Device Tool invocation whenever the user launches the same tool again.

3389 Therefore, it is the task of the Device Tool to handle multiple invocations. Table F.4 lists  
 3390 invocation cases and possible behaviors.

3391 **Table F.4 – Invocation cases and behaviors**

Case	Behavior
Device Tool is launched once	No conflicts
Device Tool is already running and works on the same Device instance as in a prior session.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– The Tool should be brought to the foreground of the GUI desktop</li> <li>– Invocation of another instance of the Device Tool shall be avoided</li> </ul>
Device Tool is already running and works on another Device instance as provided by the DTI call. The provided DeviceReference is <i>known</i> in the Device Tool.	The behavior depends on the design of the Device Tool: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Another Tool instance is launched and opens its Device data</li> <li>– The active GUI is brought to the foreground of the desktop in order to show the Device data of the selected Device</li> </ul>
Device Tool is already running and works on another Device instance as provided by the DTI call. The provided DeviceReference is <i>not known</i> in the Device Tool.	The behavior depends on the design of the Device Tool: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Another Tool instance is launched and creates a new Device instance</li> <li>– The active GUI is brought to the foreground of the desktop in order to create a new Device instance of the selected Device</li> </ul>

3392 If a Device Tool is invoked via DTI, this Tool should not call another Device Tool because the  
 3393 Communication Server cannot interconnect (no nested communication defined for a DTI  
 3394 Communication Server).

3395 **F.3.7.2 Handling of the TPF**

3396 The name of the TPF will be provided to the Device Tool as a command line parameter. This  
 3397 name shall consist of a drive letter, an absolute path expression and the file extension.  
 3398 Alternatively, the UNC notation can be used instead of the drive letter. The Master Tool is  
 3399 responsible to create the file and unlock it before the Device Tool is invoked in such a manner  
 3400 that the Device Tool has full access to the file. The file name itself is only temporary and a  
 3401 new file name is generated with each Tool invocation.

3402 After interpretation of the content of the TPF file, the Device Tool shall delete this file. Since  
 3403 the Master Tool can also delete this file when it is restarted, it is recommended for the Device  
 3404 Tool to make a "private" copy of the file when the Device Tool is launched.

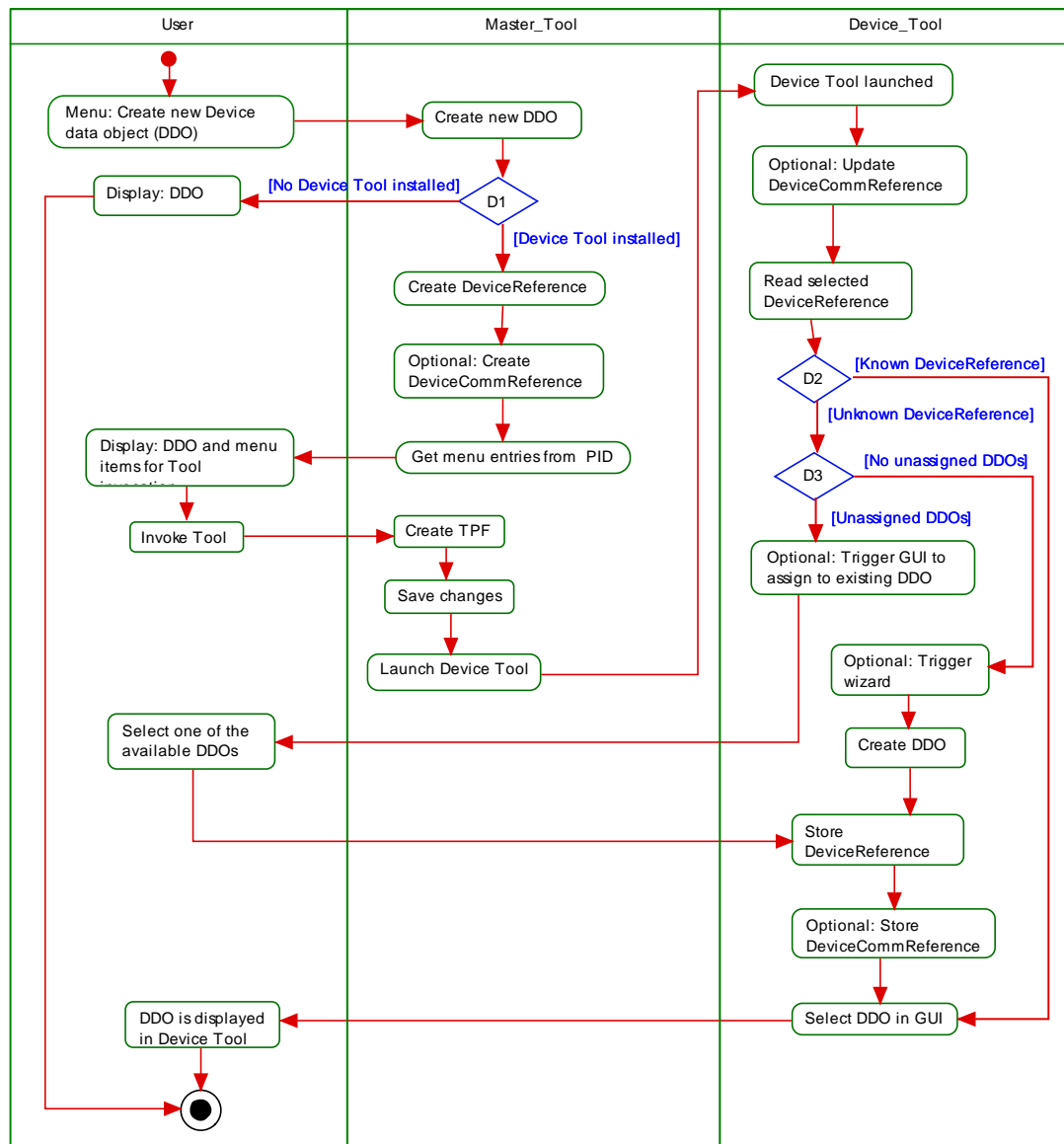
3405 **F.4 Device data objects (DDO)**3406 **F.4.1 General**

3407 There is no design goal for DTI, to harmonize the different object models of the Device Tools  
 3408 and the Master Tools as well as for engineering systems due to the tremendous variety and  
 3409 complexity. Instead of a common object model, the Device reference is the bridge between a  
 3410 DDO (e.g. parameter instance) in the Master Tool and a DDO in the Device Tool.

3411 **F.4.2 Creating DDOs**

3412 Since a Device Tool is invoked within the context of a Device in the Master Tool, the DDO  
 3413 shall be initially created in the Master Tool. This is performed via the IODD. For DTI, no  
 3414 extension in the description files is required. With the help of the system registry a Master  
 3415 Tool can find an appropriate Device Tool to handle the newly created DDO.

3416 Figure F.9 illustrates the activities during Device Tool invocation.



3417

3418

**Figure F.9 – Activity diagram for the DDO handling**

3419 The Master Tool shall generate a Device reference for each new instance of a Device, whose  
 3420 SDCI Device Identification is registered in the registry as described in Annex F.3.2. This  
 3421 reference shall be unique at least within the Master Tool project. It shall be used in the key-  
 3422 word “DeviceReference” of the TPF and shall not be changed for the lifetime of the Device.

3423 If the Master Tool supports Conformance Class 3 (see Annex F.8), it can additionally  
 3424 generate a Device communication reference for each new Device instance. This reference  
 3425 shall be unique within the PC. It shall be used in the keyword “DeviceCommReference” of the  
 3426 TPF and shall not be changed for the lifetime of the Device except when copying an entire  
 3427 Master Tool project or retrieving a Master Tool project. When the copying is done outside of  
 3428 the Master Tool (for example via the Windows Explorer), the Master Tool shall detect the copy  
 3429 when opening the project the next time and then issue new, unique Device communication  
 3430 references.

3431 It is the decision of the Master Tool whether the DDO reference is generated whenever a new  
 3432 instance is created or upon the first call of the Device Tool after the creation of the DDO.  
 3433 When a new instance of a DDO is created in the Master Tool, there is no corresponding DDO  
 3434 in the Device Tool at the first Tool invocation. In this case, the Device Tool shall create an  
 3435 own instance of the DDO in its own DDO administration. If the user must enter some more

3436 data, the Device Tool can start a wizard in order to guide the user. After this step, the  
3437 reference shall be stored in the Device Tool project so that the Tool can select the right DDO  
3438 when it is launched again with the same reference.

3439 If a DDO is created initially in the Device Tool, the corresponding DDO in the Master Tool  
3440 cannot be created automatically. In this case, the user shall create a new DDO in the Master  
3441 Tool manually. If the Device Tool is now launched in the context of the Master Tool, the  
3442 Device Tool can show a list of unassigned DDOs of the same type and let the user decide  
3443 which DDO of the Device Tool corresponds to the newly created DDO in the Master Tool.

#### 3444 **F.4.3 Copying DDOs**

3445 When a DDO is copied in the Master Tool, only the IODD parameter settings are copied. For  
3446 the new DDO instance, a new DDO reference (DeviceReference, DeviceCommReference)  
3447 shall be generated by the Master Tool. The DDO is not copied in the Device Tool. At the next  
3448 invocation, a Device Tool can react on this new DDO reference. From the point of view of the  
3449 Device Tool, there is no difference between a copied DDO and a newly created DDO.

3450 If a complete project is copied in the Master Tool, the DDO references shall not change. Only  
3451 the DeviceCommReferences will be changed by the Master Tool to enable different routing  
3452 info. The Master Tool shall copy all files in the "ProjectRelatedPath" directory to the new  
3453 destination. If a Device Tool is launched from a copied project, it will find all Device Tool  
3454 specific data as within the original project.

#### 3455 **F.4.4 Moving DDOs**

3456 If a DDO is moved in the Master Tool to another location within the same project, the Device  
3457 reference shall not change.

3458 In order to react in the Device Tool upon moved Devices besides the selected Device, the  
3459 option "UsesMultipleDeviceInformation" shall be used.

#### 3460 **F.4.5 Deleting DDOs**

3461 If a DDO is deleted in the Master Tool, the corresponding DDOs in the Device Tool should  
3462 normally also be deleted. This cannot be done automatically due to a missing unique storage  
3463 model (save, undo...) for all Tools (see Annex F.4.1).

3464 The Master Tool provides a list of used Device references in the TPF. This list can be  
3465 interpreted by the Device Tool to find out, which DDOs of the same PLC in the Device Tool  
3466 project are no more part of the TPF. If one or more DDOs are missing in the TPF, the Device  
3467 Tool can now ask the user which DDOs to delete automatically or to keep internally as  
3468 unassigned DDOs for a later reuse. Since this behavior of the Device Tool is optional, it shall  
3469 be described in its PID file with feature name "SupportsObjectDeletion".

3470 If a Device Tool does not implement this functionality, the Master Tool shall display a  
3471 message informing the user that these changes shall be made manually in the Device Tool.

### 3472 **F.5 Communication Interface**

#### 3473 **F.5.1 General**

3474 As already explained in Annex F.1, there is no seamless communication solution for stand-  
3475 alone Device Tools such as "Dedicated Tools" for functional safety in IO-Link so far. The only  
3476 possibility in the past has been a separate point-to-point communication connection, for  
3477 example RS232, USB, or alike, between a Device and a PC running the Device Tool software.  
3478 Each of these connections requires appropriate driver software with different programming  
3479 API for the Device and for the different PC communication interfaces.

3480 This leads to the problem that a Device Tool either can work only with one particular  
3481 communication interface or that the Device Tool has to implement different APIs for Device  
3482 driver integration.

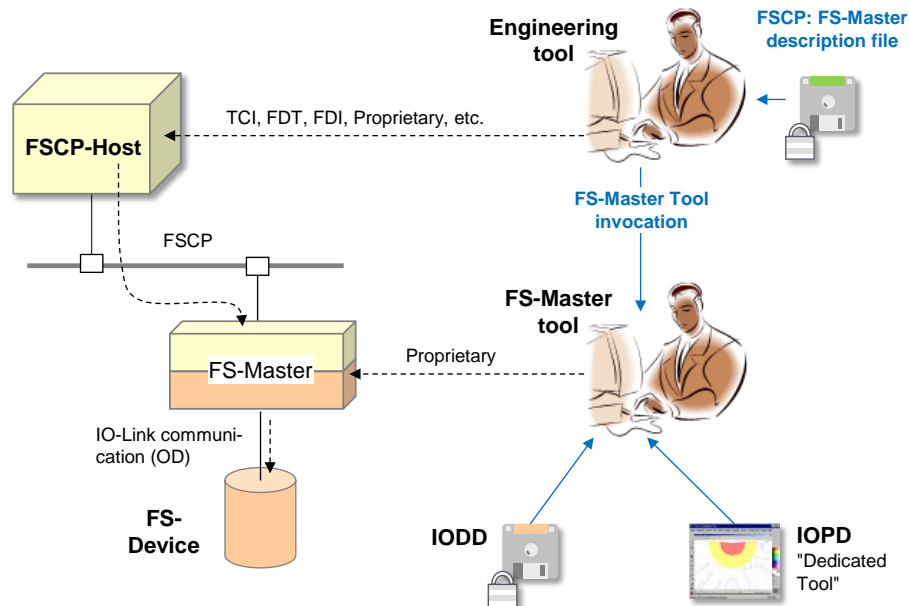
3483 Another problem in a plant is that the network structure often requires communication across  
3484 network boundaries (Routing). Due to the many fieldbuses and different communication



3485 protocols, it is very cumbersome to achieve an integrated network with routing functions for  
 3486 Device Tools down to the associated Device (see Figure F.10).

3487 The second major part of DTI solves two problems:

- 3488 • All Devices/FS-Devices and their Device Tools/Dedicated Tools can rely on one particular  
 3489 communication interface.
- 3490 • The chosen communication technology is standardized in IEC 62453 and solves the  
 3491 routing problem across network boundaries.

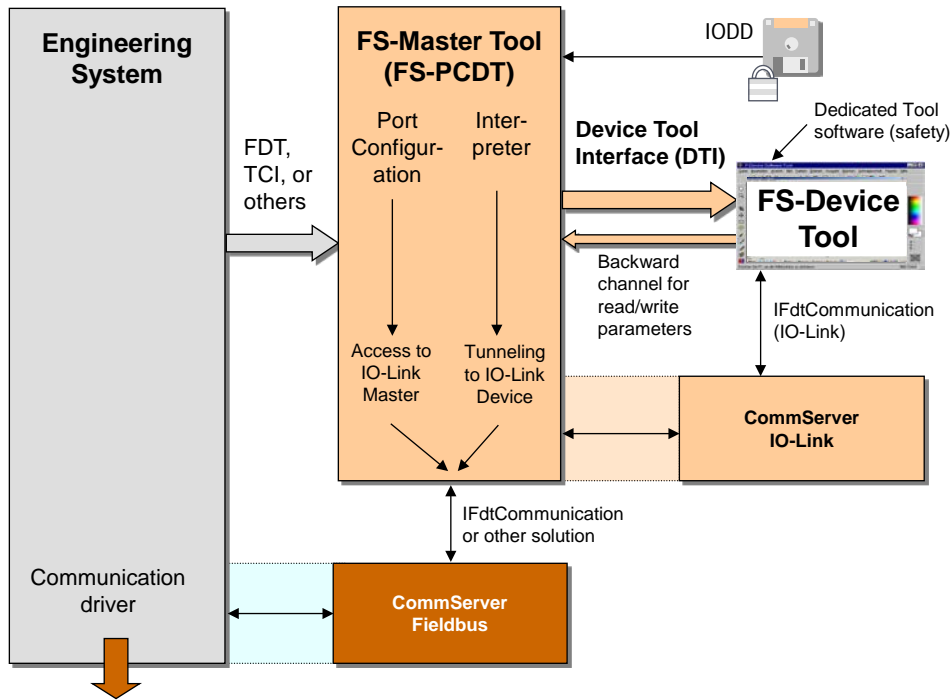


3492

3493 **Figure F.10 – Communication routes between Device Tool and Device**

### 3494 **F.5.2 Principle of DTI communications**

3495 The communication interface consists of a component which provides a unique interface (API)  
 3496 to the Device Tool. This component is able to provide communication functionality for different  
 3497 field busses and also proprietary network protocols. The communication parameters which are  
 3498 necessary to establish a connection are entered in the Master Tool and passed to the Device  
 3499 Tool when it is launched.



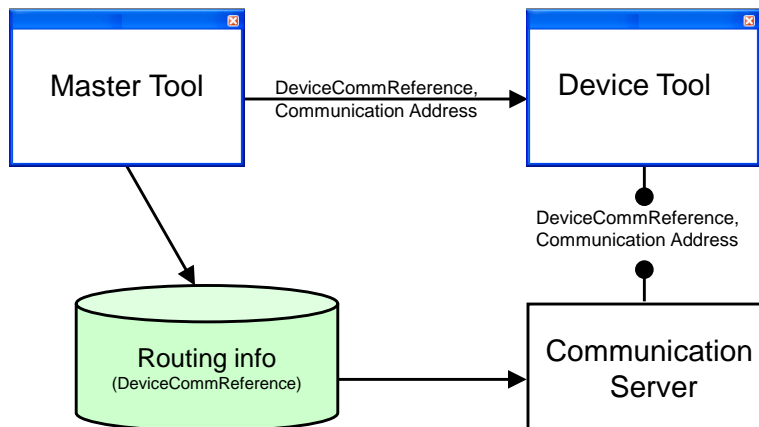
3500

3501

**Figure F.11 – Routing across networks and IO-Link**

3502 Figure F.10 shows fieldbus or proprietary networks between the PC and the Device. Figure  
 3503 F.11 shows the mapping to software and Communication Servers. In this case, the  
 3504 Communication Server (Fieldbus) requires information about the network protocol. This  
 3505 routing information is generated by the Engineering System and transferred to the  
 3506 Communication Server (Fieldbus). Due to the fact that manufacturer specific data has to be  
 3507 exchanged, the Communication Server and the Engineering System must be provided by the  
 3508 same manufacturer.

3509 The routing information for the second Communication Server (IO-Link) is generated by the  
 3510 Master Tool and transferred to this CS. When the Device Tool is started, only a  
 3511 communication reference to the Device is passed. This reference is forwarded from the  
 3512 Device Tool to the Communication Server. With the help of the routing information from the  
 3513 Engineering System, the Communication Server is able to create physical network addresses  
 3514 and to establish a connection to the Device. Figure F.12 shows the relationships between the  
 3515 components involved.



3516

3517

**Figure F.12 – Communication Server**

3518 It is always possible for a Device Tool to use its native communication interfaces (for example  
 3519 serial RS232) as an alternative besides the Communication Server.

### 3520 **F.5.3 Gateways**

3521 A Communication Server allows a communication connection across network boundaries (see  
3522 Figure F.11).

3523 The Engineering System, all Device Tools and the Communication Server are located on the  
3524 same PC which is connected e.g. via an Ethernet adapter to a network. The target Devices  
3525 can be found behind a gateway which can work in different ways. From the Device Tool point  
3526 of view, it is irrelevant where the Device is located because the network structure is handled  
3527 by the Communication Server.

3528 The Communication Server is potentially able to manage all gateway types which are  
3529 supported by the Engineering System itself. The gateway functionalities itself are  
3530 encapsulated by the Communication Server. Only gateway types known by the  
3531 Communication Server can be supported (no nested communication).

3532 If a device can be reached through multiple paths in the network, it is up to the Engineering  
3533 System to decide, which network path is used for communication.

### 3534 **F.5.4 Configuration of the Communication Server**

3535 In order to build the network communication addresses from the Device communication  
3536 reference, the Communication Server requires configuration data from the Engineering  
3537 System/Master Tool. The structure of configuration data itself and the way how the data is  
3538 sent to the Communication Server is manufacturer specific and will not be standardized.

### 3539 **F.5.5 Definition of the Communication Interface**

3540 The Communication Server implements the interface "IFdtCommunication" and uses the  
3541 "IFdtCommunication-Events" and "IFdtCommunicationEvents2" as described in IEC 62453. All  
3542 other DTM interfaces which are described in IEC 62453 are not relevant for the Communi-  
3543 cation Server. Due to this constraint, a Communication Server cannot be used in an FDT en-  
3544 vironment as communication DTM.

### 3545 **F.5.6 Sequence for establishing a communication relation**

3546 An interaction of Engineering System/Master Tool, Device Tool and Communication Server  
3547 (CS) is required to establish a communication relation.

3548 The sequence is as follows:

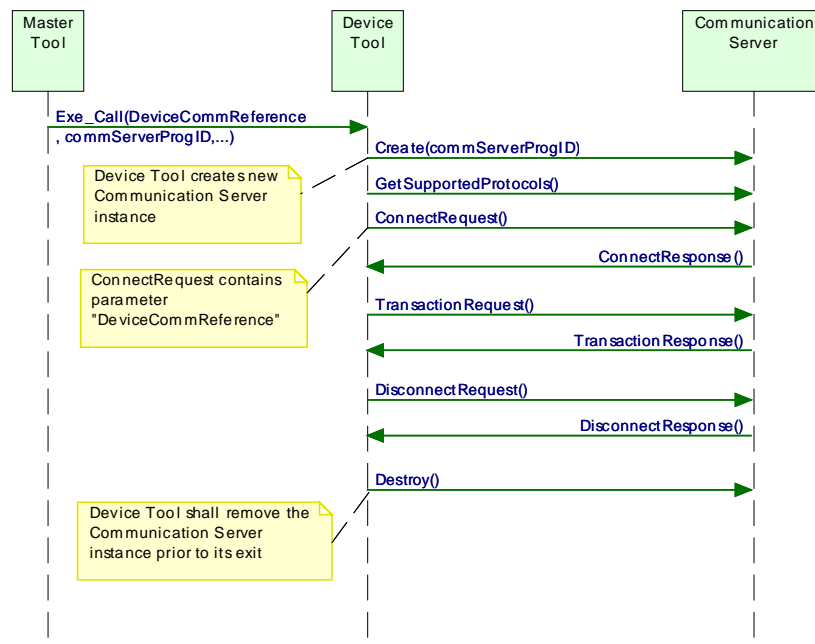
3549 At first, a Device is integrated into the Master Tool with the corresponding configuration file  
3550 (IODD). Within the Engineering System, communication addresses and bus parameter are  
3551 adjusted. Together with other network data, topology data for the network is the result.

3552 Furthermore, the Master Tool shall build a unique Device communication reference. This  
3553 reference is passed to the Device Tool when it is launched with the help of the TPF (keyword  
3554 "DeviceCommReference"). The Device Tool is now able to establish a connection to the  
3555 Device using the Communication Server and Device communication reference.

3556 The Communication Server itself interprets the Device communication reference and converts  
3557 it to network addresses. Therefore it uses the configuration data from the Master Tool.  
3558 Because it is up to the CS to decide if the Device communication reference or the  
3559 communication address itself is used, the Device Tool shall always pass both attributes in the  
3560 ConnectRequest XML document.

3561 If no routing functionality is required, the CS does not require the proprietary configuration. In  
3562 order to connect, the CS can use the communication address itself from the Master Tool.

3563 Figure F.13 shows how a communication connection is established.



3564

3565

**Figure F.13 – Sequence chart for establishing communication**

3566 The passed ProgID (Keyword `commServer-ProgID`) can be used to create a new instance of  
 3567 the Communication Server by the Device Tool. There is a 1:1 relationship between Device  
 3568 Tool and Communication Server instance. The Communication Server instance is able to  
 3569 connect to one or more Devices.

3570 Figure F.14 shows a code fragment in C++ as an example on how to create a new instance.

```

    commServer-ProgID of TPF
  
```

```

r1 = CLSIDFromProgID(L"TCI.MyCommunicationServer", &clsid);
r1 = CoCreateInstance (clsid, NULL, CLSCTX_INPROC_SERVER,
    __uuidof (IFdtCommunication), (void*)&m_pITciCommunicationServer);
  
```

3571

3572

**Figure F.14 – Create Communication Server instance**

3573 It is recommended to create the Communication Server instance as "in process server"  
 3574 (`CLSCTX_INPROC_SERVER`) due to performance issues.

3575 After a new instance of the Communication Server is created, all methods of the interface  
 3576 "IFdtCommunication" can be called. At first a Device Tool shall call the  
 3577 "GetSupportedProtocols" method to find out if the required protocol is supported by the CS. If  
 3578 not, the Device Tool shall inform the user. A new connection is established with help of the  
 3579 function "ConnectRequest". Among others, as invocation parameter a pointer to the callback  
 3580 interface (Interface `IFdtCommunicationEvents`) is passed. This means that a Device Tool shall  
 3581 implement this interface.

3582 The Device Tool is responsible to release the Communication Server instance when the Tool  
 3583 exits. If the Communication Server instance was created in the process of the Device Tool, as  
 3584 recommended before, this is done automatically since the instance is terminated with the  
 3585 process of the Device Tool.

### 3586 **F.5.7 Usage of the Communication Server in stand-alone mode**

3587 If a Device Tool is not called from a Master Tool with DTI, it shall find out the ProgID of the  
 3588 Communication Server by itself. In this case the "Component Categories" of the system  
 3589 registry can be used (`HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\Component Categories`).

3590 The following values are defined for the DTI Communication Server:

3591 Symbolic Name of CatID: `CATID_DTI_CS`

3592 UUID of CatID: `{7DDC60A6-1FD4-45a2-917F-0F8FC371BC57}`

3593 A Device Tool is able to find out the ProgID of the Communication Server with the help of the  
3594 Standard Component Categories Manager. If more than one component is assigned to this  
3595 category, the user of the Device Tool shall select one of the Communication Servers.

3596 If a Communication Server does not support the "Stand-Alone" mode (i.e. a Communication  
3597 Server instance cannot be created by a Device Tool), a system registry entry should not be  
3598 made.

3599 A Device Tool that supports Conformance Class 3 and is intended for "Stand-Alone" mode  
3600 shall store the DeviceCommReferences together with its DDOs. Whenever the  
3601 DeviceCommReference is changed by the Master Tool while copying the entire project or  
3602 while retrieving the project, the Device Tool shall check and – if changed – update the  
3603 DeviceCommReference when called from the Master Tool with DTI. There are two general  
3604 possibilities:

3605 1) The Device Tool checks and updates the DeviceCommReference of a particular Device  
3606 immediately before connection.

3607 NOTE After copy/retrieval of a Master Tool project, the user should call the Device Tool via DTI and connect to  
3608 the particular Device(s) prior to the connection to this/these Device(s) later on in "Stand-Alone" mode.

3609 2) The Device Tool checks and updates the DeviceCommReferences of all Devices  
3610 immediately after being called by the Master Tool via DTI.

3611 NOTE After copy/retrieval of a Master Tool project, the user should call the Device Tool via DTI. Then, all  
3612 Devices can be connected later in "Stand-Alone" mode.

### 3613 F.5.8 IO-Link specifics

3614 The IO-Link schema defined in [16] shall be used as communication schema.

3615 Table F.5 shows the mapping between the TPF keywords and the attributes in the communi-  
3616 cation schema.

3617 **Table F.5 – Communication Schema mapping**

Attribute of ConnectRequest element (FDTIOLinkCommunicationSchema.xml)	Parameter Keyword in TPF file	Remarks
fdt:nodeld	–	Unused
systemTag	"DeviceCommReference" attribute of element "Device".	

3618

3619 The communication parameters passed during the Device Tool invocation shall be used as  
3620 input for the Connect Request XML document to be used in the connect method. Additionally,  
3621 the device communication reference (Keyword "DeviceCommReference" in Table F.5) shall be  
3622 entered in the Connect Request XML document as attribute "systemTag". Figure F.15 shows  
3623 an example.

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<FDT xmlns="x-schema:FDTIOLinkCommunicationSchema.xml"
      xmlns:fdt="x-schema:FDTDataTypesSchema.xml">
  <ConnectRequest systemTag="Controller3/Gateway2/Unit1"/>
</FDT>

```

DeviceCommReference of TPF

3624

3625 **Figure F.15 – Example of a Connect Request XML document for IO-Link**

### 3626 **F.5.9 Changing communication settings**

3627 If it is necessary to change the communication address (Master, port?) in the Master Tool, the  
 3628 Device Tool needs information about the new communication address. This shall be done via  
 3629 relaunching the Device Tool by the user of the Master Tool. During relaunch, the new  
 3630 communication parameters are passed to the Device Tool. With these communication para-  
 3631 meters a new communication relation can be established to the Device.

3632 If the Device communication reference is used instead of the communication address between  
 3633 Device Tool and Communication Server, no relaunch of the Tool is required, because the  
 3634 Device communication reference does not change whenever the communications address  
 3635 changes. In this case, the Communication Server itself can reconnect to the Device with the  
 3636 new communication address (Master, port).

3637 For an existing connection, changed communication parameters in the Master Tool project  
 3638 shall not have any impact. Changed communication parameters shall be used when a  
 3639 connection is (re)established.

### 3640 **F.6 Reaction on incorrect Tool behavior**

3641 Table F.6 describes the system reaction if a Master Tool or Device Tool works incorrectly.

3642

**Table F.6 – Reaction on incorrect Tool behavior**

Fault	Description	System reaction
XML structure of PID file not valid	The PID file of a Device Tool does not validate with the XML Schema in Annex F.9.1	The Master Tool should only show an error message if required schema elements or attributes are missing. All unknown elements or attributes shall be ignored.
XML structure of TPF file not valid	The TPF file generated by the Master Tool does not validate with the XML Schema in Annex F.9.3	The Device Tool should only show an error message if required schema elements or attributes are missing. All unknown elements or attributes shall be ignored.
Device Tool cannot be invoked	When the operation system is instructed to create a new process (Tool invocation) the function returns an error code. Reason could be that the path of the exe file in the system registry is incorrect.	Master Tool shall show an error message (Tool cannot be invoked) with the name and path of the exe file.
CommunicationServer object cannot be created. See F.5.6	The "CoCreateInstance" function returns an error code when an object with the ProgID of the TPF should be instantiated.	The Device Tool should show an error message.
TPF file not deleted by the Device Tool	The TPF file was not removed by the Device Tool as described in Annex F.3.1	Master Tool should delete the TPF file when it is launched (garbage collection). If the file cannot be deleted, the Master Tool should not show an error message.
DeviceCommReference not valid (Communication channel cannot be established). See Annex F.5.	Device Tool is using a not existing DeviceCommReference in the Master Tool.	The Device Tool should show an error message.

3643

### 3644 **F.7 Compatibility**

#### 3645 **F.7.1 Schema validation**

3646 XML documents can easily be validated with the help of standard parsers and schema files. If  
 3647 the structure of an XML document does not follow the rules defined in the corresponding  
 3648 schema, the XML parser rejects the document. This is not very practical if Tools with different  
 3649 versions of DTI files shall work together since a newer XML document cannot be processed  
 3650 by previous software.

3651 In order to implement a robust model, the Master Tool and the Device Tools shall ignore any  
 3652 XML attributes or elements not recognizable in a valid XML document. This means that XML  
 3653 schema validation shall not be used. The schema files in Annex F.9 are for information  
 3654 purposes only.

3655 The installation program of the Device Tool can always install the newest PID file version. The  
 3656 Master Tool shall ignore any unknown XML attributes or elements.

### 3657 **F.7.2 Version policy**

3658 If it is necessary to modify the structure definition of a TPF with the result that a new version  
 3659 of the invocation interface is defined, the Master Tool shall ensure that the right version of the  
 3660 TPF is created. That means it shall use an earlier version of the structure if the Device Tool is  
 3661 only able to support the earlier version.

3662 The PID file version of the Device Tool determines the newest supported version of the  
 3663 corresponding Device Tool. See Annex F.3.3 for details.

3664 If a Device Tool supports a newer version than the Master Tool, the Master Tool uses its  
 3665 newest TPF version. In this case the Device Tool shall work with the old schema version.

## 3666 **F.8 Scalability**

### 3667 **F.8.1 Scalability of a Device Tool**

3668 The manufacturer of a Device Tool can choose to support different function levels of DTI as  
 3669 shown in Table F.7.

3670 **Table F.7 – DTI conformance classes**

Conformance Class	Description
C1 (Navigation)	Setup program creates system registry entries as described in Annex F.3.2. This allows the user to invoke the Device Tool from the context of a selected Device in the Master Tool without any impact on an existing Device Tool itself.
C2 (Parameter transfer)	The Device Tool uses the information of the TPF. In this case, for example, the Tool is able to read FST parameter instances or to use a communication address for its proprietary communication channel. This way, the user can be relieved from multiple entries. The implementation effort is limited to evaluation of the TPF file for internal initialization of the Device Tool.
C3 (DTI communication with optional backchannel)	The full functionality is available if the Device Tool uses the DTI Communication Server. This component enables the Tool to manage all network boundaries implemented by the Master Tool. In this case the Device Tool shall support the IFdtCommunication/IFdtCommunicationEvents/IFdtCommunicationEvents2 interface. In case of the backchannel option, the Master Tool uses the information of the TBF. In this case, for example, the Tool is able to read FST parameter instances or to use the I/O Process Data description. This way, the user can be relieved from multiple entries. The implementation effort is limited to evaluation of the TBF file for internal processing of the Master Tool.

3671

3672 Table F.8 shows the DTI relevant features of a Device Tool.

3673

**Table F.8 – DTI feature levels of Device Tools**

Function	Annex	Conformance Class	Feature Name for PID file
Make system registry entries	F.3.2	C1	–
Provide PID file during installation procedure	F.3.3	C1	–
Avoid multiple program instances		C2	–
Interpret TPF	F.3.4	C2	–
Delete TPF	F.3.7.2	C2	–
Supports deletion of DDOs not	F.4.5	C2 – optional feature	SupportsObjectDeletion

Function	Annex	Conformance Class	Feature Name for PID file
in TPF			
Use the Communication Server interface		C3	-

3674

3675 **F.8.2 Scalability of a Master Tool**

3676 A Master Tool shall support all DTI feature levels/conformance classes.

3677

3678 **F.8.3 Interactions at conformance class combinations**

3679 Table F.9 defines how a Master Tool and a Device Tool shall interact depending on their  
3680 conformance class.

3681 **Table F.9 – Interactions at conformance class combinations**

Master Tool	Device Tool	Interaction
C2 or C3	C1	Device Tool is launched, no parameters are passed. The Master shall not generate a TPF because it would not be deleted by the Device Tool.
C2 or C3	C2	Device Tool is launched, Parameters are passed through TPF.
C2	C3	Device Tool is launched, Parameters are passed through TPF.
C3	C3	Device Tool is launched, Parameters are passed through TPF. Communication via Communication Server is possible.

3682

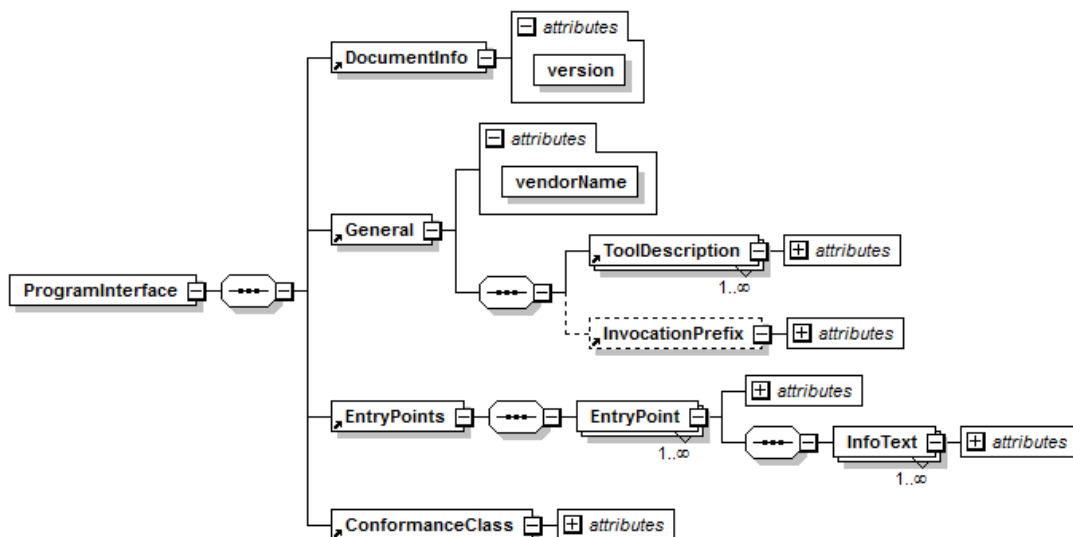
3683 **F.9 Schema definitions**

3684 **F.9.1 General**

3685 The schema definitions in this Annex F.9 are for information only (see Annex F.7.1).

3686 **F.9.2 Schema of the PID**

3687 Figure F.16 shows the XML schema of the Program Interface Description file.



3688

3689 **Figure F.16 – XML schema of the PID file**

3690 Figure F.16 is based on the XML code as follows:

3691 `<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>`



```
3692 <xsd:schema xmlns="http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/PID" xmlns:prim="http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/Primitives"
3693 xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema" targetNamespace="http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/PID"
3694 elementFormDefault="qualified" attributeFormDefault="unqualified" version="1.0">
3695   <xsd:import namespace="http://www.w3.org/XML/1998/namespace"/>
3696   <xsd:import namespace="http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/Primitives" schemaLocation="DTI-Primitives1.0.xsd"/>
3697   <xsd:element name="DocumentInfo">
3698     <xsd:complexType>
3699       <xsd:attribute name="version" use="required">
3700         <xsd:simpleType>
3701           <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
3702             <xsd:pattern value="\d+(\.\d+){1,7}"/>
3703           </xsd:restriction>
3704         </xsd:simpleType>
3705       </xsd:attribute>
3706     </xsd:complexType>
3707   </xsd:element>
3708   <xsd:element name="ToolDescription">
3709     <xsd:complexType>
3710       <xsd:attribute name="lang" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
3711       <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
3712       <xsd:attribute name="description" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
3713     </xsd:complexType>
3714   </xsd:element>
3715   <xsd:element name="InvocationPrefix">
3716     <xsd:complexType>
3717       <xsd:attribute name="name" use="required">
3718         <xsd:simpleType>
3719           <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string"/>
3720         </xsd:simpleType>
3721       </xsd:attribute>
3722     </xsd:complexType>
3723   </xsd:element>
3724   <xsd:element name="General">
3725     <xsd:complexType>
3726       <xsd:sequence>
3727         <xsd:element ref="ToolDescription" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
3728         <xsd:element ref="InvocationPrefix" minOccurs="0"/>
3729       </xsd:sequence>
3730       <xsd:attribute name="vendorName" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
3731     </xsd:complexType>
3732   </xsd:element>
3733   <xsd:element name="EntryPoints">
3734     <xsd:complexType>
3735       <xsd:sequence>
3736         <xsd:element name="EntryPoint" maxOccurs="unbounded">
3737           <xsd:complexType>
3738             <xsd:complexContent>
3739               <xsd:extension base="prim:ObjectT">
3740                 <xsd:sequence>
3741                   <xsd:element name="InfoText" maxOccurs="unbounded">
3742                     <xsd:complexType>
3743                       <xsd:attribute name="lang" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
3744                       <xsd:attribute name="name" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
3745                       <xsd:attribute name="description" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
3746                     </xsd:complexType>
3747                   </xsd:element>
3748                 </xsd:sequence>
3749                 <xsd:attribute name="id" type="prim:IdT" use="required"/>
3750               </xsd:extension>
3751             </xsd:complexContent>
3752           </xsd:complexType>
3753         </xsd:element>
3754       </xsd:sequence>
3755     </xsd:complexType>
3756   </xsd:element>
3757   <xsd:element name="ConformanceClass">
3758     <xsd:complexType>
3759       <xsd:attribute name="name" use="required">
3760         <xsd:simpleType>
3761           <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
3762             <xsd:enumeration value="C1"/>
3763             <xsd:enumeration value="C2"/>
3764             <xsd:enumeration value="C3"/>
3765           </xsd:restriction>
3766         </xsd:simpleType>
3767       </xsd:attribute>
3768     </xsd:complexType>
```

```

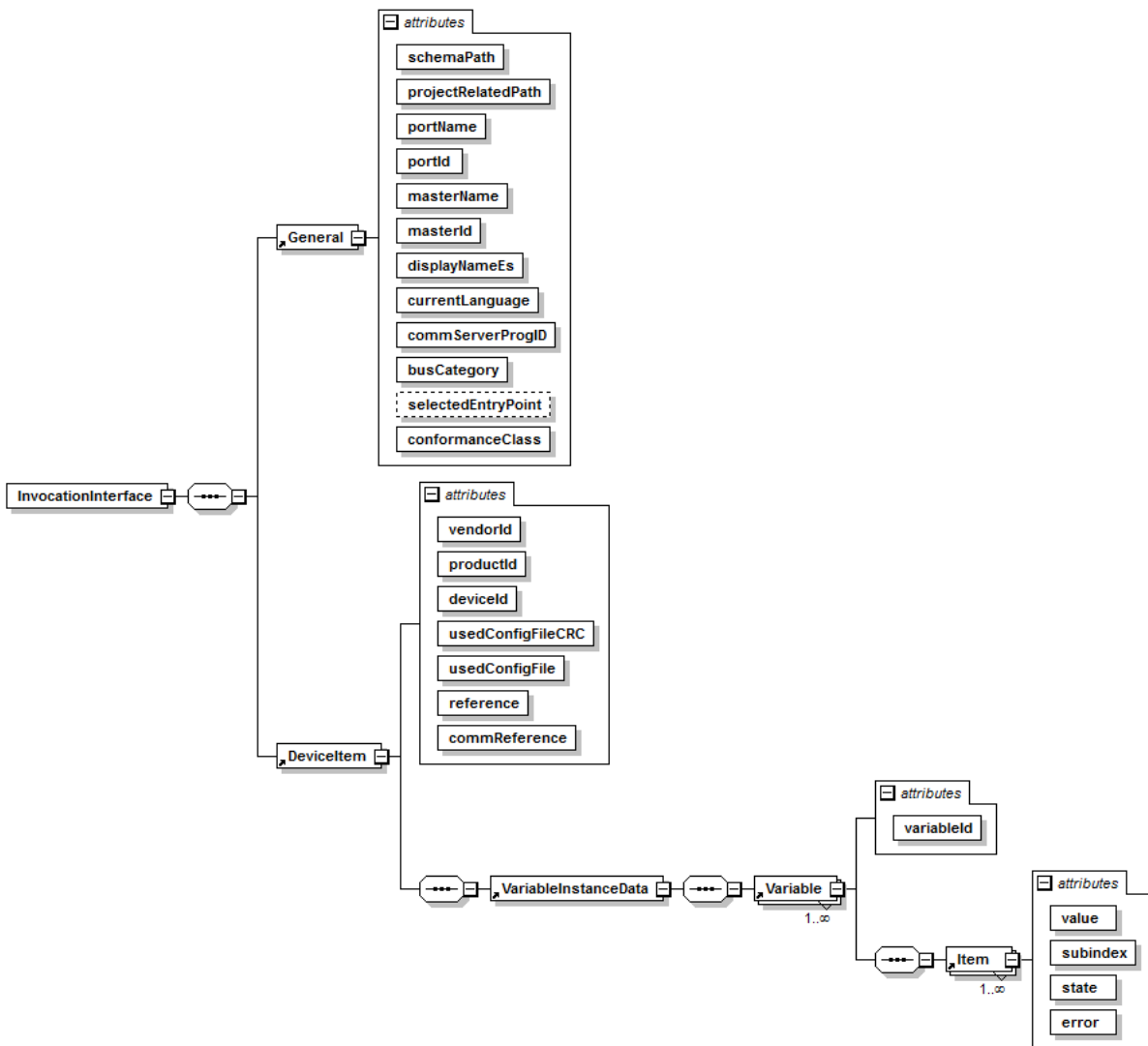
3769 </xsd:element>
3770 <xsd:element name="ProgramInterface">
3771 <xsd:complexType>
3772 <xsd:sequence>
3773 <xsd:element ref="DocumentInfo"/>
3774 <xsd:element ref="General"/>
3775 <xsd:element ref="EntryPoints"/>
3776 <xsd:element ref="ConformanceClass"/>
3777 </xsd:sequence>
3778 </xsd:complexType>
3779 </xsd:element>
3780 </xsd:schema>

```

3781

3782 **F.9.3 Schema of the TPF**

3783 Figure F.17 shows the XML schema of the Temporary Parameter File.



3784

3785 **Figure F.17 – XML schema of the TPF**

3786 Figure F.17 is based on the XML code as follows:

```

3787 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
3788 <InvocationInterface xmlns="http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/TPF" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-
3789 instance" xmlns:prim="http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/Primitives" xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.io-
3790 link.com/DTI/2017/02/TPF IOsafe_TPF_Schema_20170225.xsd">
3791 <General currentLanguage="en" commServerProgID="DTI.MyCommunicationServer"
3792 projectRelatedPath="\\ServerName\ShareName\Projects" masterId="444444" masterName="CPU-1" portId="0" portName="P1-
3793 4" schemaPath="d:\dti\schema" displayNameEs="MyMTName" busCategory="IOLink" selectedEntryPoint="1"
3794 conformanceClass="C3"/>

```

```
3795 <DeviceItem reference="Project1/Network2/Device3/1897212" commReference="Controller3/Gateway7/Unit4" vendorId="335"  
3796 deviceId="6553616" productId="SafetyDeviceVariant" usedConfigFile="d:\IODDfiles\IO-Link-SafetyDevice-20170225-  
3797 IODD1.1.xml" usedConfigFileCRC="1946410459">  
3798 <VariableInstanceData>  
3799 <Variable variableId="V_DirectParameters_1">  
3800 <Item subindex="0" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3801 <Item subindex="1" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3802 <Item subindex="2" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3803 <Item subindex="3" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3804 <Item subindex="4" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3805 <Item subindex="5" state="initial" error="0" value="17"/>  
3806 <Item subindex="6" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3807 <Item subindex="7" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3808 <Item subindex="8" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3809 <Item subindex="9" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3810 <Item subindex="10" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3811 <Item subindex="11" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3812 <Item subindex="12" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3813 <Item subindex="13" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3814 <Item subindex="14" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3815 <Item subindex="15" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3816 </Variable>  
3817 <Variable variableId="V_DeviceAccessLocks">  
3818 <Item subindex="1" state="initial" error="0" value="false"/>  
3819 <Item subindex="2" state="initial" error="0" value="false"/>  
3820 </Variable>  
3821 <Variable variableId="V_VendorName">  
3822 <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="IO-Link Community"/>  
3823 </Variable>  
3824 <Variable variableId="V_VendorText">  
3825 <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="http://www.io-link.com"/>  
3826 </Variable>  
3827 <Variable variableId="V_ProductName">  
3828 <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="SafetyDevice"/>  
3829 </Variable>  
3830 <Variable variableId="V_ProductID">  
3831 <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="SafetyDeviceVariant"/>  
3832 </Variable>  
3833 <Variable variableId="V_ProductText">  
3834 <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="Sample IO-Link Safety"/>  
3835 </Variable>  
3836 <Variable variableId="V_SerialNumber">  
3837 <Item subindex="0" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3838 </Variable>  
3839 <Variable variableId="V_HardwareRevision">  
3840 <Item subindex="0" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3841 </Variable>  
3842 <Variable variableId="V_FirmwareRevision">  
3843 <Item subindex="0" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3844 </Variable>  
3845 <Variable variableId="V_ApplicationSpecificTag">  
3846 <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="IO-Link Safety"/>  
3847 </Variable>  
3848 <Variable variableId="V_ErrorCount">  
3849 <Item subindex="0" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3850 </Variable>  
3851 <Variable variableId="V_DeviceStatus">  
3852 <Item subindex="0" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3853 </Variable>  
3854 <Variable variableId="V_DetailedDeviceStatus">  
3855 <Item subindex="1" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3856 <Item subindex="2" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3857 <Item subindex="3" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3858 <Item subindex="4" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3859 <Item subindex="5" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3860 <Item subindex="6" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3861 <Item subindex="7" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3862 <Item subindex="8" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3863 </Variable>  
3864 <Variable variableId="V_ProcessDataInput">  
3865 <Item subindex="1" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3866 <Item subindex="2" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3867 <Item subindex="3" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3868 <Item subindex="4" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3869 <Item subindex="5" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3870 <Item subindex="6" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>  
3871 <Item subindex="7" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
```

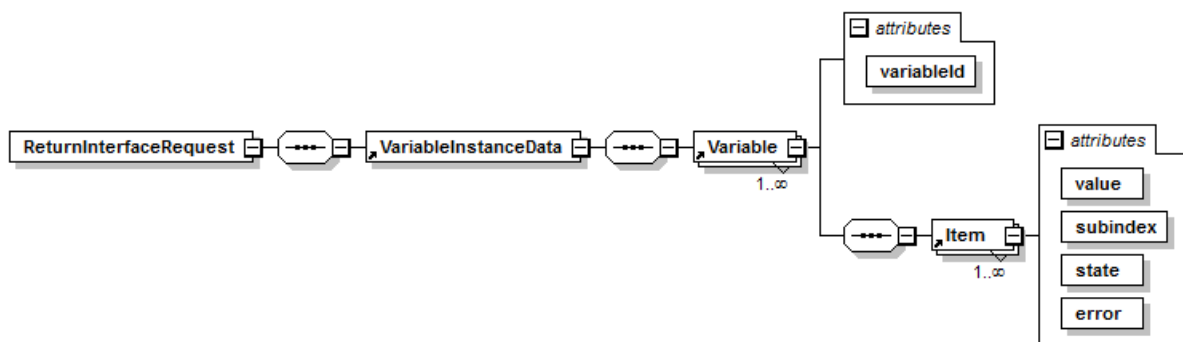
```

3872     <Item subindex="8" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3873     <Item subindex="9" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3874     <Item subindex="10" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3875     <Item subindex="11" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3876     <Item subindex="12" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3877     <Item subindex="13" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3878     <Item subindex="14" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3879     <Item subindex="127" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3880     <Item subindex="128" state="empty" error="0" value=""/>
3881   </Variable>
3882   <Variable variableId="V_NonSafetyParameter">
3883     <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3884   </Variable>
3885   <Variable variableId="V_FST_DiscrepancyTime">
3886     <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3887   </Variable>
3888   <Variable variableId="V_FST_Filter">
3889     <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3890   </Variable>
3891   <Variable variableId="V_FSP_Authenticity">
3892     <Item subindex="1" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3893     <Item subindex="2" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3894     <Item subindex="3" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3895     <Item subindex="4" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3896   </Variable>
3897   <Variable variableId="V_FSP_Protocol">
3898     <Item subindex="1" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3899     <Item subindex="2" state="initial" error="0" value="1"/>
3900     <Item subindex="3" state="initial" error="0" value="100"/>
3901     <Item subindex="4" state="initial" error="0" value="444"/>
3902     <Item subindex="5" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3903     <Item subindex="6" state="initial" error="0" value="0"/>
3904   </Variable>
3905   <Variable variableId="V_FSP_ParamDescCRC">
3906     <Item subindex="0" state="initial" error="0" value="444"/>
3907   </Variable>
3908 </VariableInstanceData>
3909 </DeviceItem>
3910 </InvocationInterface>
3911

```

#### 3912 F.9.4 Schema of the TBF

3913 Figure F.18 shows the XML schema of the Temporary Backchannel File.



3914

3915

**Figure F.18 – XML schema of a TBF**

3916 Figure F.18 is based on the XML code as follows:

```

3917 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
3918 <xsd:schema xmlns="http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/TBF" xmlns:prim="http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/Primitives"
3919   xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema" targetNamespace="http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/TBF">
3920   <xsd:import namespace="http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/Primitives" schemaLocation="DTI-Primitives1.0.xsd"/>
3921   <xsd:element name="VariableInstanceData">
3922     <xsd:complexType>
3923       <xsd:sequence>
3924         <xsd:element ref="Variable" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
3925       </xsd:sequence>
3926     </xsd:complexType>
3927   </xsd:element>
3928   <xsd:element name="Variable">

```

```

3929 <xsd:complexType>
3930 <xsd:sequence>
3931 <xsd:element ref="Item" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
3932 </xsd:sequence>
3933 <xsd:attribute name="variableId" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
3934 </xsd:complexType>
3935 </xsd:element>
3936 <xsd:element name="Item">
3937 <xsd:complexType>
3938 <xsd:attribute name="value" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
3939 <xsd:attribute name="subindex" use="required">
3940 <xsd:simpleType>
3941 <xsd:restriction base="xsd:unsignedShort">
3942 <xsd:maxInclusive value="255"/>
3943 </xsd:restriction>
3944 </xsd:simpleType>
3945 </xsd:attribute>
3946 <xsd:attribute name="state" use="required">
3947 <xsd:simpleType>
3948 <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
3949 <xsd:enumeration value="empty"/>
3950 <xsd:enumeration value="initial"/>
3951 <xsd:enumeration value="device"/>
3952 <xsd:enumeration value="read error"/>
3953 <xsd:enumeration value="write error"/>
3954 <xsd:enumeration value="valid"/>
3955 <!--xsd:enumeration value="changed"/-->
3956 <!-- should be transferred to device or stored in database before DTI invocation -->
3957 <!-- could be changed to empty before DTI invocation -->
3958 <!-- could be changed to empty or valid before DTI invocation -->
3959 </xsd:restriction>
3960 </xsd:simpleType>
3961 </xsd:attribute>
3962 <xsd:attribute name="error" type="xsd:integer" use="required"/>
3963 </xsd:complexType>
3964 </xsd:element>
3965 <xsd:element name="Response">
3966 <xsd:complexType>
3967 <xsd:attribute name="value" type="xsd:boolean" use="required"/>
3968 </xsd:complexType>
3969 </xsd:element>
3970 <xsd:element name="ReturnInterfaceRequest">
3971 <xsd:complexType>
3972 <xsd:sequence>
3973 <xsd:element ref="VariableInstanceData"/>
3974 </xsd:sequence>
3975 </xsd:complexType>
3976 </xsd:element>
3977 <xsd:element name="ReturnInterfaceResponse">
3978 <xsd:complexType>
3979 <xsd:sequence>
3980 <xsd:element ref="Response"/>
3981 </xsd:sequence>
3982 </xsd:complexType>
3983 </xsd:element>
3984 <xsd:group name="ReturnInterface">
3985 <xsd:choice>
3986 <xsd:element ref="ReturnInterfaceRequest"/>
3987 <xsd:element ref="ReturnInterfaceResponse"/>
3988 </xsd:choice>
3989 </xsd:group>
3990 </xsd:schema>
3991

```

## 3992 F.9.5 Schema of the TAF

3993 The schema of the TAF corresponds to the schema of the TBF in F.9.4.

## 3994 F.9.6 Schema of DTI primitives

3995 The DTI primitives are defined in the XML code as follows:

```

3996 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
3997 <xsd:schema xmlns="http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/Primitives" xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
3998 targetNamespace="http://www.io-link.com/DTI/2017/02/Primitives">
3999 <xsd:annotation>

```

```

4000     <xsd:documentation>In this schema, only the necessary types and attributes for DTI are used from the Common Primitives
4001 Schema.</xsd:documentation>
4002     <xsd:appinfo>
4003       <schemainfo versiondate="20170225"/>
4004     </xsd:appinfo>
4005   </xsd:annotation>
4006   <!-- SIMPLE TYPES -->
4007   <xsd:simpleType name="IdT">
4008     <xsd:annotation>
4009       <xsd:documentation>Base Type for Object identifiers</xsd:documentation>
4010     </xsd:annotation>
4011     <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string"/>
4012   </xsd:simpleType>
4013   <xsd:simpleType name="GuidT">
4014     <xsd:annotation>
4015       <xsd:documentation>GUID</xsd:documentation>
4016     </xsd:annotation>
4017     <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
4018       <xsd:pattern value="\{[0-9A-Fa-f]{8}\-[0-9A-Fa-f]{4}\-[0-9A-Fa-f]{4}\-[0-9A-Fa-f]{4}\-[0-9A-Fa-f]{12}\}"/>
4019       <xsd:pattern value="[0-9A-Fa-f]{8}\-[0-9A-Fa-f]{4}\-[0-9A-Fa-f]{4}\-[0-9A-Fa-f]{4}\-[0-9A-Fa-f]{12}"/>
4020     </xsd:restriction>
4021   </xsd:simpleType>
4022   <!-- _____ -->
4023   <!-- COMPLEX TYPES -->
4024   <!-- Main Types -->
4025   <xsd:complexType name="DocumentT">
4026     <xsd:annotation>
4027       <xsd:documentation>Type for all top level elements</xsd:documentation>
4028     </xsd:annotation>
4029     <xsd:sequence>
4030       <xsd:element name="DocumentInfo" type="DocumentInfoT"/>
4031     </xsd:sequence>
4032   </xsd:complexType>
4033   <xsd:complexType name="DocumentInfoT">
4034     <xsd:attribute name="Version" type="xsd:string" use="required" fixed="1.1"/>
4035   </xsd:complexType>
4036   <!-- ELEMENT DECLARATIONS -->
4037   <!-- _____ -->
4038   <!-- Text Definition Elements-->
4039   <xsd:complexType name="ObjectT">
4040     <xsd:annotation>
4041       <xsd:documentation>Base type</xsd:documentation>
4042     </xsd:annotation>
4043   </xsd:complexType>
4044   <xsd:complexType name="FeatureT">
4045     <xsd:annotation>
4046       <xsd:documentation>Base type</xsd:documentation>
4047     </xsd:annotation>
4048     <xsd:attribute name="Name" type="xsd:string" use="optional"/>
4049   </xsd:complexType>
4050   <xsd:complexType name="ParameterT" mixed="true">
4051     <xsd:attribute name="Name" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
4052   </xsd:complexType>
4053   <!-- _____ -->
4054   <!-- Specialized Parameters-->
4055   <xsd:complexType name="StringParameterT">
4056     <xsd:complexContent>
4057       <xsd:extension base="ParameterT">
4058         <xsd:attribute name="Value" type="xsd:string" use="required"/>
4059       </xsd:extension>
4060     </xsd:complexContent>
4061   </xsd:complexType>
4062   <!-- ELEMENT DECLARATIONS -->
4063   <xsd:element name="Document" type="DocumentT">
4064     <xsd:unique name="OBJ-ID">
4065       <xsd:selector xpath="./*/">
4066         <xsd:field xpath="@ID"/>
4067     </xsd:unique>
4068   </xsd:element>
4069   <xsd:element name="Object" type="ObjectT"/>
4070   <xsd:element name="Parameter" type="ParameterT"/>
4071   <xsd:element name="StringParameter" type="StringParameterT" substitutionGroup="Parameter"/>
4072   <xsd:element name="Feature" type="FeatureT"/>
4073   <xsd:simpleType name="ConformanceClassEnumT">
4074     <xsd:restriction base="xsd:string">
4075       <xsd:enumeration value="C1"/>
4076       <xsd:enumeration value="C2"/>

```

```
4077     <xsd:enumeration value="C3"/>
4078   </xsd:restriction>
4079 </xsd:simpleType>
4080 </xsd:schema>
4081
```

4082  
4083  
4084  
4085

## Annex G (normative)

### Main scenarios of IO-Link Safety

4086 Table G.1 shows main scenarios, the initial key parameters and the associated system  
4087 activities. Its purpose is to provide a brief overview and it contains references to clauses with  
4088 detailed descriptions.

4089

**Table G.1 – Main scenarios of IO-Link Safety**

Scenario	Initial parameters	System activities
OSSD operation	Authenticity = 0 Port = 0 FSP_TechParCRC ≠ 0	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Modify FST parameter via "USB Master" (option; see 9.4.4.2);</li> <li>2. Adapt FSP_TechParCRC (see 11.7.8)</li> <li>3. Plug, validate &amp; play (default)</li> </ol>
Commissioning (Test = monitored operation)	Authenticity = 0 Port = 0 FSP_TechParCRC ≠ 0	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Set FSP_TechParCRC = 0 temporarily (FS-Device and FSP record)</li> <li>2. Assign Authenticity and Port (FS-Device and FSP record)</li> <li>3. Assign protocol parameter and FST parameter</li> <li>4. Run in test mode (Write FSP record: Authenticity + FSP_TechParCRC not evaluated; other protocol parameters adopted; Data Storage upload not required)</li> <li>5. FS-Master Tool responsible to indicate test mode or to prevent from running in test mode without Tool connection.</li> </ol>
Commissioning (Arm and validate)	Authenticity = FSCP code Port = port number FSP_TechParCRC = 0	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Assign actual FSP_TechParCRC (FS-Device and FSP record)</li> <li>2. Upload parameters to Data Storage (FSP and FST), see clause 9.4.5.4</li> <li>3. Run in armed mode (Write FSP record: Authenticity + FSP_TechParCRC compared but not adopted; other protocol parameters adopted), see 11.7.6</li> <li>4. Validate according to safety manual of FS-Device.</li> </ol>
Replacement by FS-Device with factory settings w/o tools	Authenticity = 0 Port = 0 FSP_TechParCRC ≠ 0	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Download and adopt parameters from Data Storage (FSP and FST) if Authenticity and Port = 0, see 9.4.6.1 and 9.4.6.2</li> <li>2. Run in armed mode (Write FSP record: Authenticity + FSP_TechParCRC compared but not adopted; other protocol parameters adopted), see 11.7.6</li> <li>3. Validate according to safety manual of FS-Device.</li> </ol>
Misconnection of configured FS- Devices	Authenticity = FSCP code Port = port number FSP_TechParCRC ≠ 0	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. No adoption of downloaded parameters from Data Storage (FSP and FST) since Authenticity and Port ≠ 0</li> <li>2. Run in armed mode (Write FSP record: Authenticity + FSP_TechParCRC compared; nothing adopted), see 11.7.6</li> <li>3. Error message: "Misconnection" (0xB003 or 0xB004, see Annex B)</li> <li>4. Other protocol parameters not adopted.</li> </ol>

4090

4091 "Local modification" of FST parameters as described in 9.4.5.4 and Table 13 is possible.  
4092 However, the FSP\_TechParCRC shall be assigned with the help of FS-Master Tool.



4093  
4094  
4095  
4096

## Annex H (normative)

### System requirements

#### 4097 H.1 Indicators

##### 4098 H.1.1 General

4099 Indicators for FS-Devices are not mandatory since for example proximity sensors may be too  
4100 small for LEDs (light emitting diode).

4101 FS-Masters and FS-Devices may be used in a mix of different technologies such as

- 4102 • Fieldbus safety modules for inputs (e.g. F-DI module) or outputs (e.g. F-DO module);
- 4103 • Safety devices such as light curtains connected to fieldbuses via FSCPs;
- 4104 • IO-Link Masters and Devices.

4105 Thus, it is the designer's responsibility to layout the indication of the signal status, modes, or  
4106 operations for FS-Masters and FS-Devices.

##### 4107 H.1.2 OSSDe

4108 In case an FS-Master port is running in OSSDe mode it behaves similar to an F-DI module  
4109 port. One possibility of indication is using the same indication as with the SIO mode.

##### 4110 H.1.3 Safety communication

4111 In case an FS-Master port is running in SCL mode, the normal non-safety operation indication  
4112 can be used also.

##### 4113 H.1.4 Acknowledgment request

4114 A machine is not allowed to restart automatically after a stop. Usually, after repair or  
4115 clearance, the signal/service "ChFAckReq" is switched ON as specified in 11.10.4 and  
4116 11.10.5. It is highly recommended to indicate this signal on an FS-Master port and optionally  
4117 on FS-Devices where it is likely to cause a trip due to high frequency or duration of exposure  
4118 to a safety function.

#### 4119 H.2 Installation guidelines, electrical safety, and security

4120 IO-Link installation guidelines shall be considered (see [21]).

4121 Only FS-Masters and FS-Devices providing a short form functional safety assessment report  
4122 according to IEC 61508 or ISO 13849-1 together with a certificate of the assessment body are  
4123 permitted. The short form report shall indicate all considered clauses and paragraphs of the  
4124 used relevant standards and the corresponding assessment results.

4125 Wireless connection between FS-Master and FS-Device is only permitted if interdependency  
4126 with other wireless connections can be precluded, for example via inductive couplers.

4127 No components in the link between FS-Master and FS-Device are permitted that are storing,  
4128 inserting, or delaying messages.

4129 Manufacturer/vendor of FS-Masters and/or FS-Devices shall define installation constraints for  
4130 the operation of OSSD devices or FS-Devices in OSSDe mode within their safety manuals.

4131 Requirements of IEC 61010-2-201 (see [4]) and IEC 60204-1 with respect to electrical safety  
4132 (SELV/PELV) shall be observed.

4133 The zones and conduit concept of IEC 62443 applies for security and/or the rules of the  
4134 applicable FSCP system.

**4135 H.3 Safety function response time**

4136 Safety manuals of FS-Master shall provide information on how to determine the safety  
4137 function response time for OSSDe and for communication modes.

**4138 H.4 Duration of demands**

4139 Short demands of FS-Devices may not trip a safety function due to its chain of independent  
4140 communication cycles across the network. Therefore, a demand shall last for at least two SCL  
4141 (SPDU) cycles.

**4142 H.5 Maintenance and repair**

4143 FS-Devices can be replaced at runtime. Restart of the corresponding safety function is only  
4144 permitted if there is no hazardous process state and after an operator acknowledgment.

**4145 H.6 Safety manual**

4146 FS-Masters and FS-Devices shall provide safety manuals according to the relevant national  
4147 and international standards, for example IEC 61784-3-0, Edition 3.

4148 Manufacturer/vendor of FS-Masters and/or FS-Devices shall specify appropriate mitigation  
4149 means in the safety manual for the deployment of IO-Link Safety components in harsh  
4150 industrial environment such as in EMC zones B and C according to IEC 61131-2.

4151 Manufacturer/vendor of FS-Masters and/or FS-Devices shall define all constraints for the  
4152 operation of OSSD devices or FS-Devices in OSSDe mode within their safety manuals.

4153 Manufacturer/vendor of FS-Masters and/or FS-Devices shall define all constraints for the  
4154 operation of FS-Devices in communication mode within their safety manuals such as  
4155 limitations with respect to storing elements, inductive or optical couplers, and alike.

4156 Manufacturer/vendor of FS-Masters and/or FS-Devices shall define the maintenance rules  
4157 with respect to the PFH-Monitor (see Table 30).

4158  
4159  
4160  
4161

## **Annex I** **(normative)**

### **Assessment**

#### **I.1 General**

4163 Functional safety assessments can only be performed if hardware and software are provided.  
4164 Thus, the actual assessment of IO-Link Safety can only comprise a concept approval as a  
4165 precondition for the conformity of implementations. This can result in precertified development  
4166 kits to save time and effort.

#### **I.2 Safety policy**

4168 In order to prevent and protect the manufacturers and vendors of FS-Masters and FS-Devices  
4169 from possibly misleading understandings or wrong expectations and gross negligence actions  
4170 regarding safety-related developments and applications the following shall be observed and  
4171 explained in each training, seminar, workshop and consultancy.

- 4172 • Any non-safety-related device automatically will not be applicable for safety-related  
4173 applications just by using fieldbus or IO-Link communication and a safety communication  
4174 layer.
- 4175 • In order to enable a product for safety-related applications, appropriate development  
4176 processes according to safety standards shall be observed (see IEC 61508, IEC 60204-1,  
4177 IEC 62061, ISO 13849) and/or an assessment from a competent assessment body shall  
4178 be achieved.
- 4179 • The manufacturer of a safety product is responsible for the correct implementation of the  
4180 safety communication layer technology, the correctness and completeness of the product  
4181 documentation and information.
- 4182 • Additional important information about current corrigendums through concluded change  
4183 requests shall be considered for implementation and assessment. This information can be  
4184 obtained from the IO-Link Community.

#### **I.3 Obligations**

4186 As a rule, the international safety standards are accepted (ratified) globally. However, since  
4187 safety technology in automation is relevant to occupational safety and the concomitant  
4188 insurance risks in a country, recognition of the rules pointed out here is still a sovereign right.  
4189 The national "Authorities" decide on the recognition of assessment reports.

#### **I.4 Concept approval**

4191 For the approval of the safety concepts of IO-Link Safety the following has been provided by  
4192 the community:

- 4193 • This document (specification of IO-Link Safety)
- 4194 • Documentation of the modelling, the model checking, and the simulation including fault  
4195 injection of the IO-Link safety communication layer (SCL)
- 4196 • Document "Safety considerations" with Functional Safety Management, calculation of  
4197 relevant Residual Error Rates, and software tool chain FMEA
- 4198 • Document "Document Management and Working Group rules"

4199

## Annex J (normative)

### Details of "Classic" port class B

#### J.1 "Classic" power supply option

The IO-Link connection system provides dedicated power lines in addition to the signal line as shown in Figure J.1. The communication section of a Device/FS-Device shall always be powered by the Master/FS-Master using the power lines defined in the 3-wire connection system (Power1) in [1]. Its maximum supply current is defined in 5.9 and Table 7.

The technology/application part of a Device/FS-Device can be powered by one of three ways:

- via the power lines of the 3-wire connection system (class A ports), using Power1;
- via the extra power lines of the 5-wire connection system (class B ports), using an extra power supply (Power2) at the Master/FS-Master;
- via a power supply at the Device/FS-Device (design specific) that shall be nonreactive to Power 1.

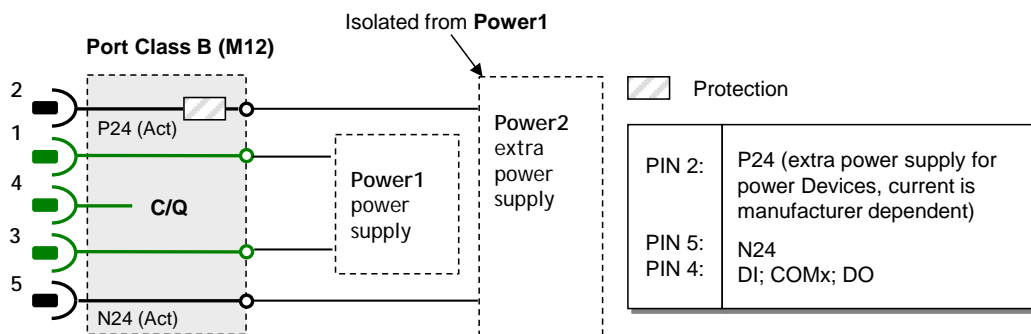


Figure J.1 – "Classic" port Class B definitions

Figure J.1 shows also an extra power supply (Power2) intended for Devices/FS-Devices requiring more supply current for their individual technology/application such as actuators. Class B ports shall be marked to distinguish from Class A ports due to risks deriving from incompatibilities on pin 2 and pin 5.

The maximum current available from this extra power supply is specified in Table J.1.

Table J.1 – Electric characteristic of Power2

Property	Designation	Minimum	Typical	Maximum	Unit	Remark
$VPN24_M$	Extra DC supply voltage for Devices	20 <sup>a)</sup>	24	30	V	
$IPN24_M$	Extra DC supply current for Devices	1,6 <sup>b)</sup>	n/a	3,5 <sup>c)</sup>	A	

a) A minimum voltage shall be guaranteed for testing at maximum recommended supply current. At the FS-Device side 18 V shall be available in this case.

b) Minimum current in order to guarantee a high degree of interoperability.

c) The recommended maximum current for a wire gauge of 0,34 mm<sup>2</sup> and standard M12 connector is 3,5 A. Maximum current depends on the type of connector, the wire gauge, maximum temperature, and simultaneity factor of the ports (check user manual of a Master).

## 4225 J.2 Rules

4226 As a general rule for non-safety Devices it is recommended not to consume more than the  
4227 minimum current a Master shall support (see Table 6 in [1]) in order to achieve easiest  
4228 handling ("plug & play") of IO-Link Master/Device systems without inquiries, checking, and  
4229 calculations.

4230 Whenever the Device requires more than the minimum current the capabilities of the  
4231 respective Master port and of the cabling shall be checked.

4232 FS-Devices should follow this recommendation also. However, 5.9 and Table 7 show mitiga-  
4233 tion means for FS-Devices and FS-Masters to certain extend.

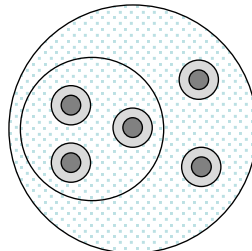
4234 In general, the requirements of Devices/FS-Devices shall be checked whether they meet the  
4235 available capabilities of the Master/FS-Master. The simultaneity factor for the Master/FS-  
4236 Master ports shall be observed.

4237 Power2 on port class B shall meet the following requirements

- 4238 • electrical isolation of Power2 from Power1;
- 4239 • degree of isolation according to IEC 60664 (clearance and creepage distances);
- 4240 • electrical safety (SELV) according to IEC 61010-2-201:2017;
- 4241 • direct current with P24 (+) and M24 (-);
- 4242 • EMC tests shall be performed with maximum ripple and load switching
- 4243 • Device shall continue communicating correctly even in case of failing Power2

4244

4245 Figure J.2 shows a possible layout of a cable for port Class B operation.



4246

4247 **Figure J.2 – Possible layout of cable with Power1 and Power2**

4248 In case of functional safety, the following standards shall be observed whenever applicable:

- 4249 • ISO 13849-2:2012
- 4250 • IEC 60204-1
- 4251 • VDE 0298, Part 4:2013 (Current ratings for flexible cables)
- 4252 • VDE 0891-1:1990 (Use of cables and insulated wires for telecommunication systems and  
4253 information processing systems; general directions)

4254

**Annex K**  
(normative)

4255

4256

4257

**Test of FS-Master and FS-Device**

4258 This part will be provided at a later date.

4259

4260

**Bibliography**

- 4261 [1] IO-Link Community, *IO-Link Interface and System*, V1.1.2, July 2013, Order No.  
4262 10.002
- 4263 [2] IEC 61131-9, *Programmable controllers – Part 9: Single-drop digital communication*  
4264 *interface for small sensors and actuators (SDCI)*
- 4265 [3] IEC 61784-3 Ed 3.0: *Industrial communication networks – Profiles – Part 3: Functional*  
4266 *safety fieldbuses – General rules and profile definitions*
- 4267 [4] IEC 61010-2-201:2017, *Safety requirements for electrical equipment for measurement,*  
4268 *control and laboratory use – Part 2-201: Particular requirements for control equipment*
- 4269 [5] ISO/IEC 19505-2:2012, *Information technology – Object Management Group Unified*  
4270 *Modeling Language (OMG UML) – Part 2: Superstructure*
- 4271 [6] Bruce P. Douglass, *Real Time UML – Advances in the UML for Real-Time Systems*, 3<sup>rd</sup>  
4272 Edition, Addison-Wesley, ISBN 0-321-16076-2
- 4273 [7] Chris Rupp, Stefan Queins, Barbara Zengler, *UML 2 glasklar – Praxiswissen für die*  
4274 *UML-Modellierung*. Hanser-Verlag, 2007, ISBN 978-3-446-41118-0
- 4275 [8] IEC/TR 62390, *Common Automation Device – Profile Guideline*
- 4276 [9] IO-Link Community, *IO Device Description (IODD)*, V1.1, July 2011, Order No. 10.012
- 4277 [10] IO-Link Community, *IO-Link Test*, V1.1.2, July 2014, Order No. 10.032
- 4278 [11] IO-Link Community, *IO-Link Safety (Single Platform) – Requirements, Use Cases, and*  
4279 *Concept Baseline*, V1.0, November 2014, Order No. 10.062
- 4280 [12] Position Paper CB24I, *Classification of Binary 24V Interfaces – Functional Safety*  
4281 *aspects covered by dynamic testing*, Edition 2.0.1:  
4282 [https://www.zvei.org/verband/fachverbaende/fachverband-automation/schaltgeraete-](https://www.zvei.org/verband/fachverbaende/fachverband-automation/schaltgeraete-schaltanlagen-industriesteuerungen/)  
4283 [schaltanlagen-industriesteuerungen/](https://www.zvei.org/verband/fachverbaende/fachverband-automation/schaltgeraete-schaltanlagen-industriesteuerungen/)
- 4284 [13] IO-Link Community, *IO-Link Profile BLOB & FW-Update*, V1.0, June 2016, Order No.  
4285 10.082
- 4286 [14] Klaus Grimmer, *AIDA\_IP-67-Safety\_Positionspapier*, June 27th, 2013
- 4287 [15] FDT Joint Interest Group, *FDT 2.0 – Specification*, V1.0, Order No. 0001-0008-000
- 4288 [16] FDT Joint Interest Group, *FDT for IO-Link – Annex to FDT Specification – Based on*  
4289 *FDT Specification Version 1.2.1*, V1.0, Order No. 0002-0013-000
- 4290 [17] IEC 62453 series: *Field device tool (FDT) interface specification*
- 4291 [18] CRC signature calculator for a seed value of "0":  
4292 [https://www.ghsi.de/CRC/index.php?Polynom=10100111010101011&Message=1%0D](https://www.ghsi.de/CRC/index.php?Polynom=10100111010101011&Message=1%0D%0A)  
4293 [%0A](https://www.ghsi.de/CRC/index.php?Polynom=10100111010101011&Message=1%0D%0A) (Date: 29-Jan-2017)
- 4294 [19] Philip Koopman, *Cyclic Redundancy Code (CRC) Polynomial Selection For Embedded*  
4295 *Networks*, The International Conference on Dependable Systems and Networks, DSN-  
4296 2004.
- 4297 [20] Philip Koopman, *Best CRC Polynomials*, <https://users.ece.cmu.edu/~koopman/crc/>  
4298 (Date: 29-Jan-2017)
- 4299 [21] IO-Link Community, *IO-Link Design Guideline*, V1.0, November 2016, Order No.  
4300 10.912

4301

© Copyright by:

IO-Link Community  
Haid-und-Neu-Str. 7  
76131 Karlsruhe  
Germany

Phone: +49 (0) 721 / 96 58 590

Fax: +49 (0) 721 / 96 58 589

e-mail: [info@io-link.com](mailto:info@io-link.com)

<http://www.io-link.com/>



**IO-Link**